**For information only**

**NorDig Unified Requirements v. 3.2 markup version**
This document illustrates difference between NorDig Unified Requirements ver. 3.2 and ver. 3.1.2

**Yellow highlight marking marks changes in text compared to NorDig Test Plan ver. 3.1.2.**

Note: links to referencelist are not updated in this diff. version.

# NorDig Unified Requirements

for

## Integrated Receiver Decoders

for use in

cable, satellite, terrestrial and managed IPTV based networks

version 3.2

Date: May 2022

# 1 Introduction

### 1.1 Scope

This document specifies a set of minimum equipment requirements for reception of DVB-based and related services from cable, satellite and/or terrestrial broadcast networks; in addition, it includes requirements for reception via IP-based networks. This NorDig specified receiver is hereafter denoted as an IRD (Integrated Receiver Decoder) and targets home / domestic usage.

The NorDig IRD technical specifications are established with the aim to ensure that IRDs in the Nordic and Irish market satisfy a common set of minimum requirements, independent of operator/service provider and transmission media.

The specifications cover all kinds of IRD types, such as separate units (set-top-boxes) and as relevant parts of integrated digital TV-sets.

A NorDig IRD may be implemented in different IRD **variants**:

| | |
|---|---|
| FrontEnd variants | satellite, cable, terrestrial or IPTV IRD, see section 3 |
| Implementation type variants | STB or iDTV (IRD refers both STB and iDTV) |

The NorDig IRD may be implemented with minimum of capability, NorDig **Basic IRD**, or implemented with one or several optional capabilies in addition to the minimum. See section 1.3 for defintions of NorDig variants (IRD, STB, iDTV…).

NorDig has following optional additional IRD **capabilities**:

| | |
|---|---|
| HEVC | a NorDig IRD with UHDTV HEVC HDR&WCG SFR capability |
| HbbTV | a NorDig IRD with HbbTV capability according to section 15. An HbbTV IRD has (Internet access) connectable capability. Observe, HbbTV mandatory for NorDig HEVC iDTVs. |
| PVR | a NorDig IRD with capability for recording services and later playback of them, according to section 14 (also referred to as NorDig PVR). |

A **NorDig IRD** requirement refers to a requirement that is applicable for all IRD capability and variant types. All NorDig IRDs **shall** support reception of MPEG-2 and MPEG-4/AVC based services, while MPEG-H/HEVC based services at present specification is optional for the basic IRD profile.

HbbTV is optional for NorDig Basic (MPEG4/AVC only) IRDs and NorDig HEVC STBs but is mandatory for NorDig HEVC iDTVs.

Figure 1.1 indicates the relationship between the NorDig basic and additional optional capability building blocks.

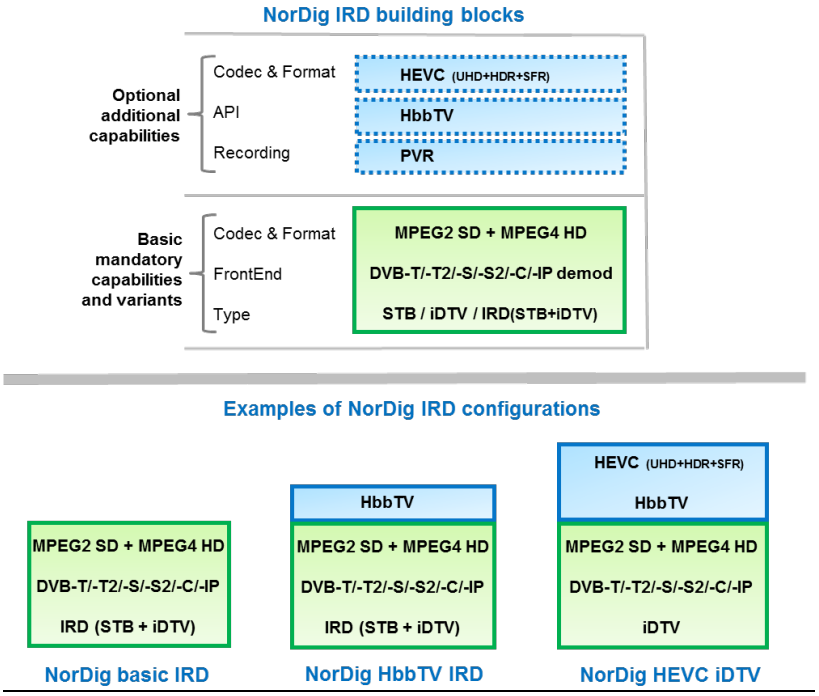



*Figure 1.1 The NorDig IRD main building blocks and examples of configurations.*

NorDig has also specified NorDig Rules of Operation for NorDig compliant networks [61], and the Unified NorDig Test Specifications [62], in order to verify compliance with the NorDig Unified Requirements for new IRDs. These Rules of Operation and Test Specifications cover all NorDig profiles.

It should be noted that the **NorDig Rules of Operation [61]** and the **NorDig Test [62]** may provide additional detail to the specified requirements (in this specification), and should be used when additional background is needed in order to interpret the specified requirements.

The specifications of the NorDig IRDs are divided into two parts.

- Part A: Hardware and firmware
- Part B: The Software system and Application Programming Interfaces (API) as relevant.

The specification parts A and B outline the desired hardware and software architectures. Based on this framework the mandatory interfaces, functionality and performance requirements of the IRD are specified. Part B deals also with requirements to the operating system. Optional requirements are specified for recommended, but not mandatory functions.

The NorDig group represents broadcasters, operators and service providers in the Nordic countries, see Annex A.

The various members of NorDig are independent of each other but intend to transmit to IRDs that satisfy the specified common requirements. In order to ensure compliance with the NorDig requirements, the NorDig IRDs will be subject to a set of verification tests, based on **NorDig Test [62]**.

### *Document History*

Overview:

The NorDig I specification was first issued in 1998 when the common DVB API solution had not taken specific direction and based on the technical status of that time.

The NorDig Unified Requirements were updated in 2003, in 2004/2005 (Version 1.0.2) and in 2006 (version 1.0.3) when the IPTV-Addendum was merged into the text; in addition, some new requirements were introduced as mandatory after a specified grace period.

Version 2.0 was established in 2008 and includes the NorDig HDTV-Addendum.

Version 2.1 includes updates to version 2.0 up to July 2009 and the addition of basic requirements for NorDig PVR, which were available as an Addendum to NorDig Unified 2.0.

Version 2.2 includes updates to version 2.1 up to July 2010, including requirements for an enhanced terrestrial front-end (T2) and updates to the PVR requirements. All NorDig IRDs **shall** now support advanced codecs. The T2-front-end is mandatory for IRDs that target NorDig compliant signals based on the DVB-T2 specification.

The version 2.3 includes updates to version 2.2 up to May 2012, including updates to the terrestrial front-end (T2), the PVR and audio requirements. The version 2.3 included as an Addendum HbbTV as NorDig's new API (replacing MHP)

The version 2.4 includes updates to version 2.3 up to November 2012. The main changes are inclusion of HbbTV requirements and removal of MPEG2 only IRD alternative "M2 Level". All NorDig IRDs **shall** support both MPEG2 and MPEG4.

The version 2.5 and 2.5.1 was published in August 2014 and among things included updates for change of audio priority, Common Interface from CI+ v1.2 to v1.3, adding requirements for verification testing of HbbTV.

The version 2.6 was published January 2017 and main updates are adding 700 MHz LTE immunity for terrestrial IRDs, for Remote Control changing to require functions instead of keys and notification alternative for SSU etc.

The version 3.0 was published November 2017 and main updates is the adding of requirements for HEVC capable IRDs (NorDig HEVC IRDs).

The version 3.1 was published October 2018 and main updates is the adding of requirements for NGA.

The version 3.1.1 was published September 2019 and main updates is mandation of Audio Preselection Descriptor for NGA/AC-4 audio for NorDig HEVC IRDs and updates of the Service Information chapter.

The version 3.1.2 was published April 2021 and main updates is reference list, FE Terrestrial 700-800 Mhz, 800MHz removal, dynamic metadata HDR, HEVC video frame rates, Audio NGA prioritisation, Supplementary Audio (legacy audio), HbbTV v2.0.3, new Annex K Audio prioritisation flowchart and update of grace periods / sunrise periods.

The version 3.2 was published May 2022 and main updates is refermce list, Audio Preselection Descriptor (NGA services only), Multi languages in EIT data.

Details:

| Version | Date | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| NorDig I ver. 1.1 | 12.05.98 | This is the first approved version of the complete NorDig I specification |
| NorDig I ver. 1.3 | 01.03.01 | Some editorial changes are performed, to bring the text in line with NorDig II (ver. 0.9). Some requirements are relaxed, when relaxed in NorDig II (ver. 0.9). Some new optional requirements are introduced in NorDig I that are mandatory requirements to NorDig II. References are updated to reflect the present status of the original references. |
| NorDig I ver. 1.4 | 01.10.2002 | This update of the NorDig I specification is contained in the NorDig Unified, ver 1.0, see below. This update includes relaxation of some specifications, partly due to experience from testing of IRDs, but mainly in order to keep the same minimum requirements for non-interactive services as for the Basic TV profile. Some text is modified, in order to improve clarity and unify text for identical requirements in the NorDig I and NorDig II specifications. Furthermore, some additional parameters/descriptors are specified in sections 12 and 13, in order to bring the specification in line with NorDig II, ver.1.1. Some requirements will be increased to mandatory after a grace period; these increases are due to technical progress and satisfied by most IRDs sold in 2002. |
| NorDig II ver. 0.9 | 08.06.2000 | This is the first approved version of the NorDig II specification, based on DVB-MHP-ver.1.0 until ver.1.1 becomes available |
| NorDig II ver. 1.0 | 13.06.2001 | This version includes an update to reflect the changes in DVB-MHP-ver1.1 compared to MHP-ver1.0, and some clarifications of the text. Furthermore, some additional parameters/descriptors are specified in sections 12 and 13 and the text is modified for better clarity. In addition, some relaxations in line with the NorDig I ver. 1.3 specification have been included. |
| NorDig II ver. 1.1 | 01.10.2002 | This update of the NorDig II specification is contained in the NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0, see below.<br>This update includes relaxation of some requirements, partly due to experience from testing of IRDs, but mainly in order to keep the same minimum requirements for non-interactive services as for the Basic TV profile. Some text is modified, in order to improve clarity. Some requirements, mainly related to the terrestrial front-end will be increased to mandatory after a grace period; these increases are due to technical progress and operational experience. |
| NorDig Basic TV | 01.10.2002 | This is the first approved version of the NorDig Basic TV profile. The specification text is based on NorDig II, ver 1.0 and harmonised with NorDig II, ver. 1.1 when relevant. The specification text is a subset of the NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0; see below. |
| NorDig Internet | 01.10.2002 | This is the first approved version of the NorDig Internet Access profile. It is based on the specification text for NorDig II, ver. 1.1, with necessary additions to include the DVB-MHP-Internet Access profile. The specification text is included in the NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0; see below. |
| NorDig Enhanced | 16.10.2002 | This is the first approved version of the NorDig Enhanced profile. The specification text is based on NorDig II, ver 1.1 and harmonised with NorDig Basic TV when relevant. The specification text is a subset of the NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0; see below. |
| NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0 | 16.10.2002 | This is the first approved version of the NorDig Unified requirements for IRDs and includes requirements for all NorDig profiles; including Basic, Enhanced, NorDig I, Interactive (NorDig II) and Internet. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0.1 | 01.07.2003 | This version includes updates of requirements that were introduced in version 1.0 with a grace period, and some new requirements with corresponding grace periods, mainly related to the terrestrial front-end, SI (chapters 12 and 13) and the user interface (chapters 16 and 17). Some text is modified in order to improve clarity. |
| NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0.2 | 30.4.2005 | This version includes updates of requirements that were introduced in version 1.0.1 with a grace period, some new requirements and modifications of the mandatory CA-requirements (see section 15.1). The specification is also expanded to include requirements for IP-front-ends (provided as a separate addendum to this specification) and requirements for terrestrial front-ends in the VHF-band. |
| NorDig Unified, ver. 1.0.3 | 28.2.2007 | This version includes updates of requirements that were introduced in version 1.0.2 with a grace period, while the NorDig I profile and requirements for Controllers and Memory are removed. Requirements for the IP based front-end are included (previously available as a separate addendum). |
| NorDig Unified ver. 2.0 | 01.07.2008 | This version includes NorDig Unified ver. 1.0.3 plus NorDig HDTV-Addendum ver 1.0 (previously available as a separate document). In addition, it includes some updates to the existing requirements and introduction of some new requirements with a grace period. Some editorial changes are made, including change of chapter order compared with earlier versions. |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.1 | 01.07.2009 | This version includes NorDig Unified ver 2.0 plus the Additional requirements for NorDig PVR (previously available as a separate document). In addition, it includes some updates to the existing requirements, including enhancements to the terrestrial and cable front-ends. Minimum requirements for reception of DVB-T2 signals are issued as an Addendum to this specification. New requirements are introduced with a grace period. |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.2 | 01.07.2010 | This version includes NorDig Unified ver. 2.1 plus the Additional Requirements for NorDig T2 IRDs (previously available as a separate document). In addition, it includes some updates to the existing requirements, including enhancements to the front-ends and the PVR functions. All IRDs shall now support the MPEG 4-video compression. New requirements are introduced with a grace period |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.2.1 | 1.11.2010 | This version includes NorDig Unified ver. 2.2 requirements and corrections to the DVB-T2 FE and audio requirements. Also, some references are updated. |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.3 | 15.5.2012 | This version includes NorDig Unified ver. 2.2 plus additional requirement for the PVR functionality and new requirements for the Audio functionality. |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.4 | 16.01.2013 | This version 2.4 includes updates to version 2.3 up to November 2012, including updates to the API (HbbTV), video and audio requirements. Most important changes are:<br>- removal of MPEG2 only IRD profile<br>- HbbTV requirement, v1.5 (ETSI 102 796 v1.2.1).<br>- Ch 3.4.10 Terrestrial – inclusion of immunity requirement against other signals, 800MHz LTE signals.<br>- Ch 6 audio – update audio priority handling and supplementary audio<br>- Ch 7 Teletext and Subtitling – coexist handling for subtitling and HbbTV |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| NorDig Unified ver 2.5 | 07.07.2014 | This version 2.5 includes updates of version 2.4 and the most important changes are:<br>- Ch 6.5 Audio prioritising, change of audio priority from language highest priority to instead audio type highest priority.<br>- 6.14 Loudness Levels, inclusion of DRC presentation mode 1 and 2 according to DVB ETSI TS 101 154.<br>- Ch 7.1 Teletext and Subtitling, only display subtitling matching preferences and handling of temporary settings.<br>- Ch 9 Conditional Access, change from CI+ v1.2 to CI+ v1.3.<br>- Ch 10 SSU, complete restructure of text. Opens for more implementation alternatives.<br>Ch 15.2 API HbbTV, add requirements on testing according with HbbTV test suits |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.5.1 | 25.08.2014 | "Typo" corrections of the version 2.5 includes:<br>- Ch 3.4.10.7, important correction for second bullet<br>- correction of time for grace period and added missing grace period for new mandatory requirements. |
| NorDig Unified ver 2.6 | 20.01.2017 | This version 2.6 includes updates of version 2.5.1 and the most important changes are:<br>- Removal of many grace periods that time has passed for<br>- Ch 1 Introduction, adding description of *connectable IRD*<br>- Ch 2.5.4, definition of Persistent and Temporary settings<br>- Ch 3.4.5 change of modulation<br>- Ch 3.4.10.7 update of requirements for 800MHz immunity and adding requirements for 700MHz immunity against LTE signals<br>- Ch 8.7 changing from Remote Control (specific dedicated keys) to instead require User Control Functions<br>- Ch 10 adding possibility for SSU Notification for Connectable IRDs and restructure of subchapter, moving/collecting broadcast specific requirements into ch 10.5<br>- Ch 12.7 adding descriptors for SSU Notification<br>- Ch 13.3.2.4 re-writing and adding explanations for handling of Parental Control<br>- Ch 15 migration to HbbTV v2.0.1 (with grace period until 1 July 2018) and test suite.<br>- Ch 16 correction for settings related to SSU |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| NorDig Unified ver 3.0 | 15.11.2017 | This version 3.0 includes updates of version 2.6 and the most important changes are:<br>- Inclusion of HEVC IRD requirements<br>- Ch 1 Definitions,<br>- Ch 3.2 satellite, inclusion of DVB-S2X<br>- Ch 3.4 terrestrial, DVB-T2 mandatory for all terrestrial IRDs.<br>- Ch 5 video, inclusion of MPEG-H HEVC video requirements for NorDig HEVC IRDs<br>- Ch 7 subtitling, inclusion of DVB TTML subtitling requirements for NorDig HEVC IRDs<br>- Ch 8, updates of HDMI requirements (e.g. for NorDig HEVC IRDs)<br>- Ch 10 SSU, allowing broadband SSU as alterantive for connactable IRDs (OTN search + OTN download),<br>- Ch 12 SI, adding SI for HEVC based services (video, audio, subtitling etc)<br>- Ch 14 PVR, adding PVR requirements NorDig HEVC PVRs<br>- Ch 15 API/HbbTV, updates of HbbTV specifications and HbbTV is mandatory requirements for NorDig HEVC iDTV's. |
| NorDig Unified ver. 3.1 | 27.10.2018 | This version 3.1 includes updates of version 3.0 and the most important changes are:<br>- Ch 6 audio, inclusion of NGA/AC-4 audio for NorDig HEVC IRDs<br>- Ch 9 CA/security, inclusion of optional CI+ ECP to handle HEVC/UHD scrambled content.<br>- Ch 12 SI, adding SI for NGA/AC-4 streams<br>- Ch 15 API, update of HbbTV requirements to version 2.0.2.<br>- Ch16 User preferences, update of requirements to handle NGA/AC-4 audio. |
| NorDig Unified ver. 3.1.1 | 03.09.2019 | This version 3.1.1 includes updates of version 3.1 and the most important changes are:<br>- Ch 6 audio, mandation of Audio Preselection Descriptor for NGA/AC-4 audio for NorDig HEVC IRDs<br>- Ch 12 SI updates |
| NorDig Unified ver. 3.1.2 | 13.04.2021 | The version 3.1.2 includes updates of version 3.1.1 and most important changes are:<br>- 1.4 reference list<br>- 3.4 FE Terrestrial 700-800 Mhz<br>- 3.4.10.7 800MHz removal<br>- 5 Video dynamic metadata HDR and HEVC video frame rates<br>- 6.5.6 Audio NGA prioritisation<br>- 6.11.4 Supplementary Audio (legacy audio)<br>- 15 HbbTV v2.0.3<br>- New Annex K Audio prioritisation flowchart<br>- Update of grace periods / sunrise periods |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| NorDig Unified ver. 3.2 | May 2022 | This version 3.2 includes updates from version 3.1.2 and most importen changes are:<br>- 1.4 Reference list<br>- 12.6.11 Audio Preselection Descriptor (NGA services only)<br>- 13.2.2.2 Multi languages in EIT data<br>Requirements for SCART and PAL support removed, and RCA requirements changes from **shall** to should. |

### *1.2 Terminology*

| | |
|---|---|
| **Shall** (Mandatory) | This word means that the item is mandatory |
| Should (Recommended) | This word means that this item is not mandatory but is highly recommended. |

### *1.3 Definitions*

NorDig is using the following terms to refer to a certain combination of capability and variant of IRD (including/excluding): InternetAcess (connectable/non-connectable) + Frontend (T/C/S/IP) + codec (HEVC/basic) + API (HbbTV/basic) + PVR (PVR/basic) + type (IRD/STB/iDTV). (A NorDig PVR IRD is often shortened to NorDig PVR).

Requirements that are only mandatory for NorDig IRDs that support an optional capability are written as for NorDig <capability> IRD, like NorDig HEVC IRD, NorDig PVR IRD or NorDig HbbTV IRD**.**

**Integrated Receiver Decoder (IRD):**
Refers to all implementation variants of IRDs like Set-top-box (STB) or relevant parts of integrated digital TV (iDTV)-set. Used for requirement which is applicable for all variants of IRDs.

**Set-top-box (STB):**
The NorDig STB is a NorDig IRD variant without display and output the decoded selected service to an external display via a video and audio interface (e.g. HDMI). The term NorDig STB is used for requirements which are mandatory only for STBs.

**integrated Digital TV set (iDTV):**
The NorDig iDTV (also denoted NorDig TV set) is a NorDig IRD variant which includes a display and normally output the decoded selected service to the internal display.
All other IRD variants which are not a STB variant are in NorDig treated as an iDTV. For example, a DVB receiver USB dongle with its associated software together with the display/computer/tablet **shall** fulfil the requirements for a NorDig iDTV.
The term iDTV (instead of IRD) is used for requirements which are mandatory only for iDTVs.

**NorDig IRD:**
The NorDig IRDs consist of a user terminal, including all possible low to high functionality implementations and its associated peripherals. The term NorDig IRD is used for all common / basic requirements that are applicable for all types of IRDs (STB, iDTV, basic, HEVC, PVR, HbbTV IRDs).

**NorDig Basic IRD (NorDig Basic):**
The NorDig Basic IRDs (NorDig Basic) is specified as a minimum NorDig IRD <u>without</u> any optional capability (e.g. without HEVC, PVR or HbbTV capability).

The NorDig Basic IRD **shall** satisfy all requirements specified for a NorDig IRD, unless stated otherwise. E.g. a requirement specified for NorDig HEVC IRDs is optional (or not applicable) for NorDig Basic IRDs.

**NorDig HEVC IRD (NorDig HEVC):**
The NorDig HEVC IRDs (NorDig HEVC) is a NorDig IRD with capability for reception of HEVC based services as defined by NorDig. The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** satisfy all requirements specified for a NorDig IRD (unless stated otherwise) plus all additional and specific requirements for the NorDig HEVC.

**NorDig HbbTV IRD (NorDig HbbTV):**
The NorDig HbbTV IRDs (NorDig HbbTV) is a NorDig IRD with capability for reception of HbbTV services as defined by NorDig. The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** satisfy all requirements specified for a NorDig IRD (unless stated otherwise) plus all requirements for NorDig HbbTV.

**NorDig PVR IRD (NorDig PVR):**
The NorDig PVR IRD (NorDig PVR**)** is a NorDig IRD with the capability to record to internal media (for example a built-in hard disk drive) or removable media (for example a DVD or Blu-ray disc). The NorDig PVR (Personal Video Recorder) **shall** satisfy all requirements specified for a NorDig IRD, unless stated otherwise.

**NorDig satellite, cable, terrestrial and IPTV IRD:**
The satellite/cable/terrestrial/IPTV NorDig IRD refers to an IRD with a front-end that is capable of receiving satellite/cable/terrestrial/IPTV DVB signals according with section 3. For example, the terrestrial NorDig IRD refers to an IRD with a front-end that is capable of receiving DVB-T and DVB-T2 signals.

A NorDig IRD may support multiple Frontend variants (e.g. satellite, cable and terrestrial) and in this case the IRD **shall** support all the relevant requirements for all the supported Frontends as stated in section 3.

**Connectable/non-connectable IRD:**
An IRD may and in some cases, **shall** include a two-way interface (e.g. WiFi, Ethernet, Eurodocsis etc, see section 8.3) typically with access to Internet, here referred to as a *connectable IRD* type (e.g. NorDig HbbTV IRD (NorDig HbbTV) is a connectable IRD with HbbTV API according to NorDig requirements in section 15, or a “Smart TV” using techniques other than HbbTV). A connectable IRD that has connected and activated the two-way interface is here referred to as *connected IRD* (i.e. a *connected connectable IRD*), while a connectable IRD that has not connected or activated the two-way interface is referred to as *non-connected connectable IRD*.

**Example multiple capabilities:**
*One example of naming for an IRD that supports multiple capabilities is a **NorDig terrestrial HbbTV PVR**, which refers to all terrestrial type variants of IRDs (STB and iDTV) that includes HbbTV and PVR capability (independently on other additional optional capabilities like HEVC).*

### 1.4 References

| | |
|---|---|
| [1] Void | Void |
| [2] Void | Void |
| [3] DVB CSA | For signalling, refer to ETSI TS 100 289, Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Support for use of the DVB Scrambling Algorithm version 3 within digital broadcasting systems.<br><br>For the DVB Common Scrambling Algorithm (CSA) version 2 (DVB-CSA2) or version 3 (DVB-CSA3), contact the custodian Sisvel for more information:<br><br>https://www.sisvel.com/licensing-programs/digital-video-display-technology/dvb-csa/introduction<br><br>https://www.etsi.org/security-algorithms-and-codes/dvb-csa-licences |
| [4] Void ~~EN 50049-1~~ | Void ~~SCART: Domestic and similar electronic equipment interconnection requirements: Peritelevision Connector.~~ |
| [5] EN 60728-1 and 50083-9 | Cenelec EN 60728-1, Cable networks for television signals, sound signals and interactive services - Part 1: System performance of forward paths.<br><br>Cenelec EN 50083-9, Cabled distribution systems for television, sound and interactive multimedia signals – Part 9: Interfaces for CATV/SMATV headends and similar professional equipment for DVB/MPEG-2 transport streams. |
| [6] Void ~~EN 50157-2-1~~ | Void ~~SCART: Domestic and similar equipment interconnection requirements: AVlink Part 2-1: Signal quality matching and automatic selection of source devices.~~ |
| [7] EN 50221 | Common Interface specification for Conditional Access and other Digital Video Broadcasting Decoder Applications. |
| [8] EN 50494 | Satellite signal distribution over a single coaxial cable in single dwelling installations. |
| [9] EN 55013 | Limits and methods of measurements of radio disturbance characteristics of broadcast receive equipment and associated equipment. |
| [10] EN 61319-1 | Interconnections of satellite receiving equipment – Part 1: Europe. |
| [11] ETSI EN 300 421 V1.1.2 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Digital broadcasting systems for television, sound and data services: Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for 11/12 GHz Satellite services. (DVB-S). |
| [12] ETSI EN 300 429 V1.2.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Digital Broadcasting Systems for Television, Sound and Data Services; Framing Structure, Channel Coding and Modulation for Cable Systems (DVB-C). |

| | |
|---|---|
| [13] ETSI EN 300 468 V1.16.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Specification for Service Information (SI) in (DVB) systems. |
| [14] ETSI EN 300 472 V1.4.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Digital Broadcasting Systems for Television, Sound and Data Services; Specification for Conveying ITU-R System B Teletext in Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) Bitstreams. |
| [15] ETSI EN 300 473 V1.1.2 | Digital Satellite Master Antenna Television Distribution System (SMATV). |
| [16] ETSI EN 300 706 V1.2.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Enhanced Teletext specification. |
| [17] ETSI EN 300 743 V1.3.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): DVB Subtitling Systems. |
| [18] ETSI EN 300 744 V1.6.2 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); DVB Framing structure, channel coding and modulation for digital terrestrial television (DVB-T). |
| [19] ETSI EN 302 755 V1.4.1 | Frame structure channel coding and modulation for a second-generation digital terrestrial television broadcasting system (DVB-T2). |
| [20] ETSI EN 302 307 V1.2.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB): Second generation framing structure, channel coding and modulation systems for Broadcasting, Interactive Services, News Gathering and other broadband satellite applications (2009-08) (DVB-S2). |
| [21] ETSI TS 101 162 V1.9.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Allocation of identifiers and codes for Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB) systems. |
| [22] ETSI TS 100 289 V1.2.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Support for use of the DVB Scrambling Algorithm version 3 within digital broadcasting systems. |
| [23] HbbTV Test Suite | HbbTV Test Suite (see details of version in NorDig Test Plan related to HbbTV). |
| [24] ETSI TR 101 202 V1.2.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Implementation guidelines for Data Broadcasting. |
| [25] ETSI TS 101 211 V1.13.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Guidelines on the Implementation and Usage of DVB Service Information (SI). |
| [26] ETSI TS 101 154 V2.6.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Specification for the use of Video and Audio Coding in Broadcast and Broadband Applications. |
| [27] ETSI ES 102 796 V1.6.1 | Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV (HbbTV), (referring to HbbTV version 2.0.3 functionality). |
| [28] ETSI TS 102 006 V1.4.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Specification for System Software Update (SSU) in DVB Systems. |
| [29] ETSI TS 102 034 V1.4.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Transport of MPEG-2 Based DVB Services over IP based Networks. |

| | |
|---|---|
| [30] ETSI TS 102 114 V1.4.1 | ETSI Technical Specification (TS): DTS coherent acoustics; Core and Extensions with Additional Profiles. |
| [31] Void | Void |
| [32] ETSI TS 102 323 V1.5.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Carriage and signalling of TV-Anytime information in DVB transport streams. |
| [33] ETSI TS 102 366 V1.4.1 | ETSI Technical Specification (TS): Digital Audio Compression (AC-3, Enhanced AC-3) Standard. |
| [34] ETSI TS 102 822-4 V1.7.1 | Broadcast and On-line Services: Search, select, and rightful use of content on personal storage systems ("TV-Anytime"); Part 4: Phase 1 – Content referencing. |
| [35] HDCP rev. 1.4 | Digital Content Protection LLC, "High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System", Revision 1.4, July 8, 2009. |
| [36] HDMI Version 1.4b | HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc, "High-Definition Multimedia Interface Specification", Version 1.4b, October 11, 2011. |
| [37] IEC 61169-2 | Radio-frequency connectors – Part 2: Sectional specification – Radio frequency coaxial connectors of type 9,52. |
| [38] ISO/IEC 61169-24 (ISO 169-24) | Radio-frequency connectors – Part 24: Radio-frequency coaxial connectors with screw coupling, typically for use in 75 Ω cable distribution systems (Type F). |
| [39] IEC 60603-14 | Connectors for frequencies below 3 MHz for use with printed boards – Part 14: Detail specification for circular connectors for low-frequency audio and video applications such as audio, video and audio-visual equipment. |
| [40] IEC 60958 | Digital audio interface – Part 3: Consumer applications. |
| [41] IEC 61937 | Digital audio – Interface for non-linear PCM encoded audio bitstreams applying IEC 60958. |
| [42] IEEE 802.11 | The Working Group for Wireless Local Area Networks (WLANs). |
| [43] IEEE 802.3 | IEEE Standard for Information Technology-Telecommunications and information exchange between systems-Local and metropolitan area networks–Specific requirements Part 3: Carrier Sense Multiple Access with Collision Detection (CSMA/CD) Access Method and Physical Layer Specifications. |
| [44] IETF RFC 2131 | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol, March 1997. |
| [45] IETF RFC 2132 | DHCP Options and BOOTP Vendor Extensions, March 1997. |
| [46] IETF RFC 3203 | DHCP reconfigure extension, December 2001. |

| | |
|---|---|
| [47] ISO 3166 – Part 1-3 | Codes for the representation of names of countries and their subdivisions:<br>Part 1: Country codes<br>Part 2: Country subdivision code<br>Part 3: Code for formerly used names of countries |
| [48] ISO 8859-1 | Information technology – 8-bit single-byte coded graphic character sets – Part 1: Latin alphabet No. 1, 1998. |
| [49] ISO/IEC 11172-3 | ISO/IEC: Information technology – Coding of moving pictures and associated audio for digital storage media at up to about 1,5 Mbit/s – Part 3: Audio. |
| [50] ISO/IEC 13818-1 | Information Technology – Generic Coding of Moving Pictures and Associated Audio Information. Part 1: Systems. ISO/IEC International Standard IS 13818. |
| [51] ISO/IEC 13818-2 | Information technology – Generic coding of moving pictures and associated audio information: Video, ISO/IEC International Standard IS 13818. |
| [52] ISO/IEC 13818-3 | Information Technology – Generic Coding of Moving Pictures and Associated Audio Information. Part 3: Audio. ISO/IEC International Standard IS 13818. |
| [53] ISO/IEC 14496-3:2009 | ISO/IEC: Information technology – Coding of audio-visual objects – Part 3: Audio, 2009. |
| [54] ISO/IEC 14496-10:2014 / Rec. ITU-T H.264 | ISO/IEC 14496-10 / Recommendation ITU-T H 264: Information technology – Coding of audio-visual objects – Part 10: Advanced Video Coding, 2014. |
| [55] ISO/IEC 60958-3 Ed.3.0 | ISO/IEC: Digital audio interface – Part 3: Consumer applications, May 25, 2006. |
| [56] ISO/IEC 7816, 1-3 | Identification cards – Integrated circuit cards with contacts, Parts 1-3. ISO/IEC International Standard IS 7816. |
| [57] ITU-J.122 | (EuroDocsis 2.0): Second-generation Transmission Systems for Interactive Cable Television Services – IP Cable Modems. |
| [58] ITU-J.222.1 | (EuroDocsis 3.0): Third-generation Transmission Systems for Interactive Cable Television Services – IP Cable Modems: Physical Layer Specifications (Annex B). |
| [59] ITU/R Report 624-4 | ITU-R Report 624-4:1990, Characteristics of Television Systems. |
| [60] ITU-R BT.653-3 | ITU-R Recommendation BT653-2:1993, Teletext systems. <latest 1998, propose to replace 1993 by 1998> |
| [61] NorDig RoO | NorDig Rules of Operation ver. 3.2, May 2022. |
| [62] NorDig Test | NorDig Test Specification ver. 3.2 May 2022. |
| [63] Universal Serial Bus 2.0 | Universal Serial Bus (USB) Specification, Revision 2.0, April 27, 2000. |

| | |
|---|---|
| [64] CI Plus Specification | CI Plus Specification.<br>Content Security Extensions to the Common Interface.<br>Version 1.4.3 (2017-11) from CI Plus LLP.<br>Note: Version 1.4.4 (2021-09) from CI Plus LLP becomes mandatory from July 20th 2023, see Change Notice 49 http://www.ci-plus.com/documentation/#notice |
| [65] UK DTG D-Book | Digital Terrestrial Television (DTG), Requirements for Interoperability, The D-Book 7 Part A, Version 1, March 2011. |
| [66] ETSI TS 102 831 V1.2.1 | Implementation guidelines for a second-generation digital terrestrial television broadcasting system (DVB-T2). |
| [67] ETSI TS 102 822-3-1 V1.11.2 | Broadcast and On-line Services: Search, select, and rightful use of content ("TV-Anytime"); Part 3: Metadata; Sub-part 1: Phase 1 - Metadata schemas. |
| [68] ISO 639-2 | Codes for the Representation of Names of Languages Part 2: Alpha-3 Code. |
| [69] ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 V1.6.1 | Broadcast and On-line Services: Search, select, and rightful use of content on personal storage systems ("TV-Anytime"); Part 3: Metadata; Sub-part 2: System aspects in a uni-directional environment. Version 1.6.1 (2010-07). |
| [70] ETSI TS 102 851 V1.3.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI) for DVB Systems. |
| [71] EBU R 095 | EBU R 95, Recommendation for Safe areas for 16:9 television production June 2017 (or later). |
| [72] EBU R 128 | EBU R 128, Loudness normalisation and permitted maximum level of audio signals. |
| [73] EBU TECH 3344 | EBU – TECH 3344, guidelines for distribution systems in accordance with EBU R 128. |
| [74] EBU R 068 | EBU Technical Recommendation R68-2000, Alignment level in digital audio production equipment and in digital audio recorders, revised year 2000. |
| [75] EBU TECH 3341 | EBU – TECH 3341, Loudness Metering: 'EBU Mode' metering to supplement loudness normalisation in accordance with EBU R 128. |
| [76] ITU-R BS.1770 | ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.1770, Algorithms to measure audio programme loudness and true-peak audio level. |
| [77] ITU-R BS.1771 | ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.1771, Requirements for loudness and true-peak indicating meters. |
| [78] IEC 62731 | IEC 62731, edition 2.0 (2018-01-10), Text-to-speech for television - General requirements. |
| [79] HbbTV Test Specification | Test Specification for HbbTV (latest version), note: Available at http://www.hbbtv.org/resource-library/#testing-information-and-support |

| | |
|---|---|
| [80] ETSI TS 102 796 V1.5.1 | Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV (HbbTV) v2.0.2 (allowed option for NorDig HbbTV IRD instead of v2.0.3 [27] until January 1, 2023). |
| [81] ETSI EN 302 307-2 V1.1.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); Second generation framing structure, channel coding and modulation systems for Broadcasting, Interactive Services, News Gathering and other broadband satellite applications; Part 2: DVB-S2 Extensions (DVB-S2X). |
| [82] ISO/IEC 23008-2 / Rec. ITU-T H.265 | ISO/IEC 23008-2 / Recommendation ITU-T H.265: Information technology — High efficiency coding and media delivery in heterogeneous environments Part 2: High efficiency video coding. |
| [83] ITU-R BT.601 | Studio encoding parameters of digital television for standard 4:3 and wide-screen 16:9 aspect ratios. |
| [84] ITU-R BT.709 | Parameter values for the HDTV standards for production and international programme exchange. |
| [85] ITU-R BT.1700 | Characteristics of composite video signals for conventional analogue television systems. |
| [86] ITU-R BT.1847 | 1 280 × 720, 16:9 progressively-captured image format for production and international programme exchange in the 50 Hz environment. |
| [87] ITU-R BT.1886 | Reference electro-optical transfer function for flat panel displays used in HDTV studio production. |
| [88] ITU-R BT.2020 | Parameter values for ultra-high definition television systems for production and international programme exchange. |
| [89] ITU-R BT.2100 | Image parameter values for high dynamic range television for use in production and international programme exchange. |
| [90] ITU-R BT.2390 | High dynamic range television for production and international programme exchange. |
| [91] HDCP rev. 2.3 | Digital Content Protection LLC, “High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection System, Mapping HDCP to HDMI”, Revision 2.3, February 28, 2018 and “Errata to HDCP on HDMI Specification Revision 2.3”, July 1, 2021. |
| [92] ANSI/CTA-861-H | A DTV Profile for Uncompressed High Speed Digital Interfaces. |
| [93] HDMI Version 2.1 | HDMI Licensing Administrator, Inc, “High-Definition Multimedia Interface Specification”, Version 2.1, November 13, 2017 and errata. |

| | |
|---|---|
| [94] ETSI EN 303 560 V1.1.1 | Digital Video Broadcasting (DVB); TTML Subtitling Systems Version 1.1.1 (2018-05). |
| [95] ITU-R BT.2408 | ITU-R, Report; Operational practises in HDR television production. |
| [96] CI Plus ECP Specification | CI Plus Specification. Extensions for Enhanced Content Protection, Version 1.2 (2019-05), from CI Plus LLP. Note: Version 1.3 (2021-09) from CI Plus LLP becomes mandatory from July 20th 2023, see Change Notice 51 http://www.ci-plus.com/documentation/#notice |
| [97] ETSI TS 103 190-1 V1.3.1 | Digital Audio Compression (AC-4) Standard; Part 1: Channel based coding. |
| [98] ETSI TS 103 190-2 V1.2.1 | Digital Audio Compression (AC-4) Standard, Part 2: Immersive and personalized audio. |
| [99] IEC 61937-9:2017 | Digital audio - Interface for non-linear PCM encoded audio bitstreams applying IEC 60958 - Part 9: Non-linear PCM bitstreams according to the MAT format. |
| [100] ETSI TS 103 420 V1.2.1 | Backwards-compatible object audio carriage using Enhanced AC-3. |
| [101] IETF BCP 47 | Tags for Identifying Languages (https://tools.ietf.org/html/bcp47). |
| [102] Void | Void |
| [103] ITU-R BS.2051 | Advanced sound system for program production. |

### *1.5 List of Abbreviations*

| | |
|---|---|
| 0b | values written in binary (ie with base 2) |
| 0x | values written in hexadecimal (ie with base 16) |
| AAC | Advanced Audio Codec |
| AAC-LC | Advanced Audio Codec Low Complexity |
| AC-3 | Audio Codec 3 |
| AC-4 | Audio Codec 4, a codec for NGA |
| ac4_toc | AC-4 Table of Contents |
| ACE | Active Constellation Extension |
| AD | Audio Description |
| AFC | Automatic Frequency Control |
| AFNOR | Association Francaise de Normalisation |
| APD | Audio Preselection Descriptor |
| API | Application Programming Interface |
| ARC | Audio Return Channel (regarding HDMI) |
| AV | Audio (and) Video |

| | |
|---|---|
| AVC | Advanced Video Coding (MPEG-4 p.10/H.264) |
| BAT | Bouquet Association Table |
| BCP | Best Current Practice (IETF) |
| BER | Bit Error Ratio |
| BOOTP | Bootstrap Protocol |
| bslbf | bit string, left bit first |
| C/N | Carrier to Noise ratio |
| CA | Conditional Access |
| CAM | Conditional Access Module |
| CAT | Conditional Access Table |
| CATV | Community Antenna Television |
| CEA | Consumer Electronics Association (North American Association) |
| CENELEC | Comité Européen de Normalisation Electrotechnique |
| CI | Common Interface |
| CI- CAM | CA-module that complies with the basic Common Interface specification [7] |
| CID | Content Identifier descriptor |
| CIF | Common Intermediate Format |
| CIP- CAM | CA-module that complies with the Common Interface Plus specification [64] |
| CRID | Content Reference Identifier |
| CSO | Composite Second Order |
| CTB | Composite Triple Beat |
| CVBS | Composite Video Baseband Signal |
| DAD | Default Authority Descriptor |
| dB | decibel |
| dBFS | dB (relative to) Full Scale |
| DDS | Display definition segment |
| DE | Dialog Enhancement |
| DHCP | Dynamic Host Configuration Protocol |
| DMI | Dynamic Mapping Information |
| DSM-CC | Digital Storage Media Command and Control |
| DTS | Digital Theater System (audio codec) |
| DVB | Digital Video Broadcasting |
| DVB-C | Digital Video Broadcasting – Cable |
| DVB-C2 | Digital Video Broadcasting – Cable system, second generation system |
| DVB-CAM | CA-module that complies with the DVB Common Interface specification |
| DVB-S | Digital Video Broadcasting – Satellite |
| DVB-S2 | Digital Video Broadcasting – Satellite system, second generation system |
| DVB-T | Digital Video Broadcasting – Terrestrial system |
| DVB-T2 | Digital Video Broadcasting – Terrestrial system, second generation system |
| E-AC-3 | Enhanced Audio Codec 3 |
| E-EDID | Enhanced Extended Display Identification Data (regarding HDMI) |
| eARC | Enhanced Audio Return Channel (regarding HDMI) |
| EBU | European Broadcasting Union |
| ECCA | European Cable Communications Association |
| EIT | Event Information Table |
| EITp/f | Event Information Table, present/following tables |
| EPT | Effective Protection Target |
| EPG | Electronic Program Guide (based on API) |
| ESG | Event Schedule Guide (without any API) |
| FDD | (Mobile communication network) Frequency Division Duplex |
| FEF | Future Extension Frame |
| FFT | Fast Fourier Transform |
| GOP | Group Of Pictures |

| | |
|---|---|
| GS | Generic Stream |
| HbbTV | Hybrid Broadcast Broadband TV |
| HDCP | High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection |
| HDMI | High-Definition Multimedia Interface |
| HDMI ARC | HDMI Audio Return Channel |
| HDMI eARC | HDMI enhanced Audio Return Channel |
| HDR | High Dynamic Range |
| HDTV | High Definition Television |
| HEVC | High Efficiency Video Coding (MPEG-H p.2/H.265) |
| HE-AAC | High Efficiency Advanced Audio Coding |
| HFR | High Frame Rate (here >60 frames/s) |
| HW | Hardware |
| iDTV | integrated Digital TV (IRD with display) |
| IEC | International Electrotechnical Commission |
| IEEE | Institute for Electrical and Electronic Engineers |
| IETF | Internet Engineering Task Force |
| IMI | Instant Metadata Identifier |
| IP | Internet Protocol |
| IRD | Integrated Receiver Decoder |
| ISO | International Organisation for Standardisation |
| JOC | Joint Object Coding (extension for E-AC-3) |
| LCD | Logical Channel Descriptor |
| LCN | Logical Channel Number |
| LTE | (Mobile communication network) Long Term Evolution |
| LUFS | Loudness Units (relative to) Full Scale |
| MAC | Medium Access Control |
| MAT | Metadata-enhanced Audio Transmission |
| MPEG | Moving Pictures Expert Group |
| MPTS | Multi Programme Transport Stream |
| NIT | Network Information Table |
| NGA | Next Generation Audio |
| OSD | On Screen Display |
| PAL | Phase Alternating Line |
| PAPR | Peak-toAverage-Power Ratio |
| PAT | Program Association Table |
| PCM | Pulse Code Modulation |
| PCR | Programme Clock Reference |
| PES | Programme Elementary Stream (regarding MPEG) |
| PLP | Physical Layer Pipe |
| PID | Packet Identifier |
| PMT | Program Map Table |
| PSI | Program Specific Information |
| PTS | Presentation Time Stamp |
| PVR | Personal Video Recorder, (same as PDR, Personal Digital Recorder, or DVR) |
| QAM | Quadrature Amplitude Modulation |
| QEF | Quasi Error Free |
| QPSK | Quaternary Phase Shift Keying |
| RF | Radio Frequency |
| RFC | Request For Comments |
| RMS | Root Mean Square |
| RoO | Rules of Operation |
| RTCP | Real-Time Transport Control Protocol |
| RTP | Real-Time Transport Protocol |

| | |
|---|---|
| S/PDIF | Sony Philips Digital Interface (for digital audio) |
| SA | Supplementary Audio |
| SBR | Spectral Band Replication (regarding HE-AAC audio) |
| ~~SCART~~ | ~~Syndicat des Constructeurs d'Appareils Radiorécepteurs et Téléviseurs (video/audio interface)~~ |
| SD&S | Service Discovery and Selection |
| SDL | (Mobile communication network) Supplemental Downlink |
| SDR | Standard Dynamic Range |
| SDT | Service Description Table |
| SDTV | Standard Definition Television |
| SEI | Supplemental Enhancement Information |
| SFN | Single Frequency Network |
| SFR | Standard Frame Rate (here up to 50 frames/s) |
| SI | Service Information |
| SL-HDR | Single Layer High Dynamic Range |
| SMATV | Satellite Master Antenna Television |
| SNTP | Simple Network Time Protocol |
| SPTS | Single Programme Transport Stream |
| SpS | Spoken Subtitles |
| STB | Set-top box (IRD without display) |
| SW | Software |
| TDT | Time and Date Table |
| TFS | Time Frequency Slicing |
| TOT | Time Offset Table |
| TPS | Transmission Parameter Signalling |
| TR | Tone Reservation |
| TRS | Tip Ring Sleeve |
| TS | Transport Stream |
| TV | Television |
| TVA | TV Anytime |
| UHDTV | Ultra High Definition Television |
| UHF | Ultra-High Frequency |
| uimsbf | unsigned integer most significant bit first |
| UTC | Universal Time, Co-ordinated |
| VCR | Video Cassette Recorder |
| VHF | Very-High Frequency |
| VSB | Vestigial SideBand |
| XML | Extensible Markup Language |

# 2 General Features of the NorDig IRD

### 2.1 General

The NorDig Unified specification relates to all NorDig profiles and type of IRDs unless otherwise specified.

All requirements specified in this document are mandatory unless otherwise specified.

| |
|---|
| It should be noted that compliance with the NorDig requirements will require full compliance with at least one of the specified NorDig IRD configurations with a capability (Basic, HbbTV, PVR, or HEVC and a variant (frontend: (satellite, cable, terrestrial or IPTV and type: STB or iDTV). |

### 2.2 Introduction

This chapter describes the overall structure of the NorDig IRD specification. The detailed requirements are specified in chapters 3 – 16, except for general product requirements that are specified in section 2.5.

The IRD implements the services by a combination of hardware and software solutions. The IRD may correspond to a decoder (STB) or an integrated digital TV-set (iDTV), including a display. The main functional blocks are shown in Figure 2.1.

The IRD includes a bootloader as firmware. The bootloader can upgrade all resident system-software and application software in the IRD by new software loaded either via the distribution channel or locally.

The software solution is only restricted by the hardware programming interface, i.e. the hardware functionality, capacity and performance.

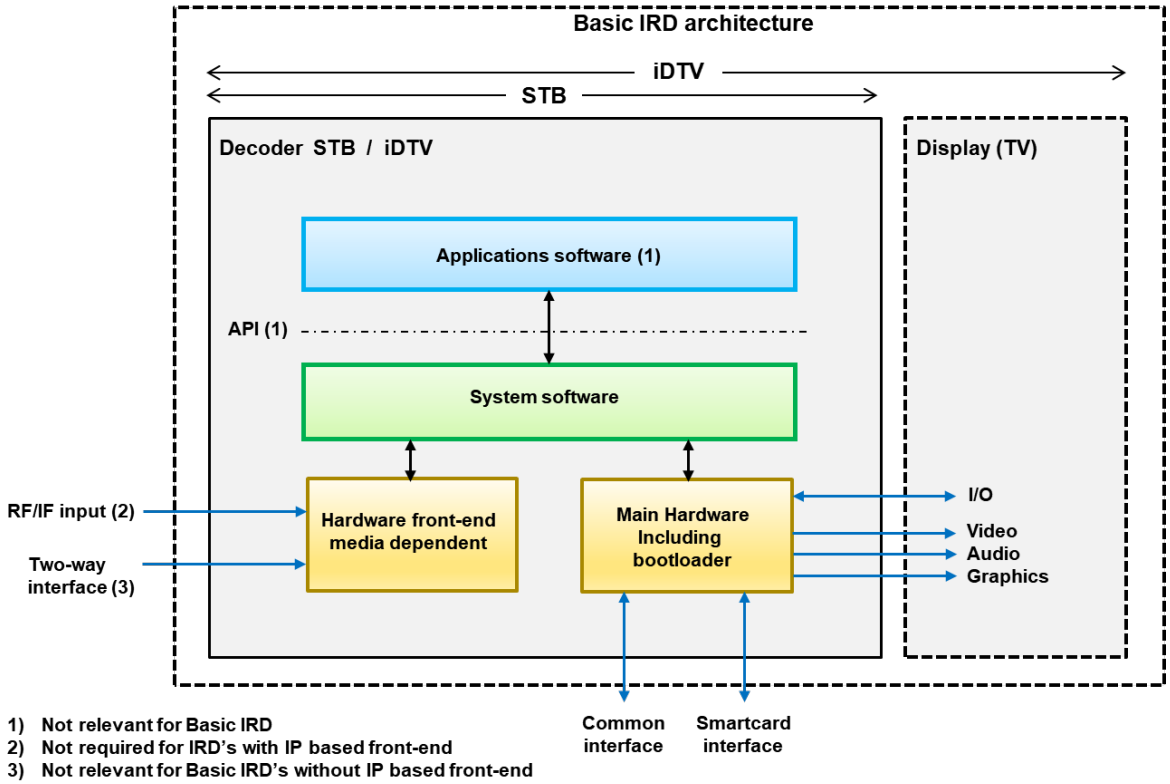



*Figure 2.1 Basic IRD architecture*

The IRD will be provided with an installed front-end, with a cable or satellite or terrestrial Tuner & Demodulator, and/or a front-end for IP-based networks, a Common Interface and/or a Smart Card Interface. The IP-based interface (two-way interface) may be used for reception of broadcast signals (managed network IPTV services) and and as an input/output for the interaction channel for example for HbbTV/OTT broadband services (not necessary for Basic IRDs), these and other external interfaces are shown in Figure 2.2.

The user **shall** be able to access the services from all the tuners by means of the remote control.

## *2.3 IRD Hardware and Firmware*

### 2.3.1 Overview

The IRD hardware and firmware consists of a number of functional blocks as outlined in Figure 2.2. The IRD developer is free to decide on the hardware architecture as long as it fulfils the NorDig requirements for the relevant profile.

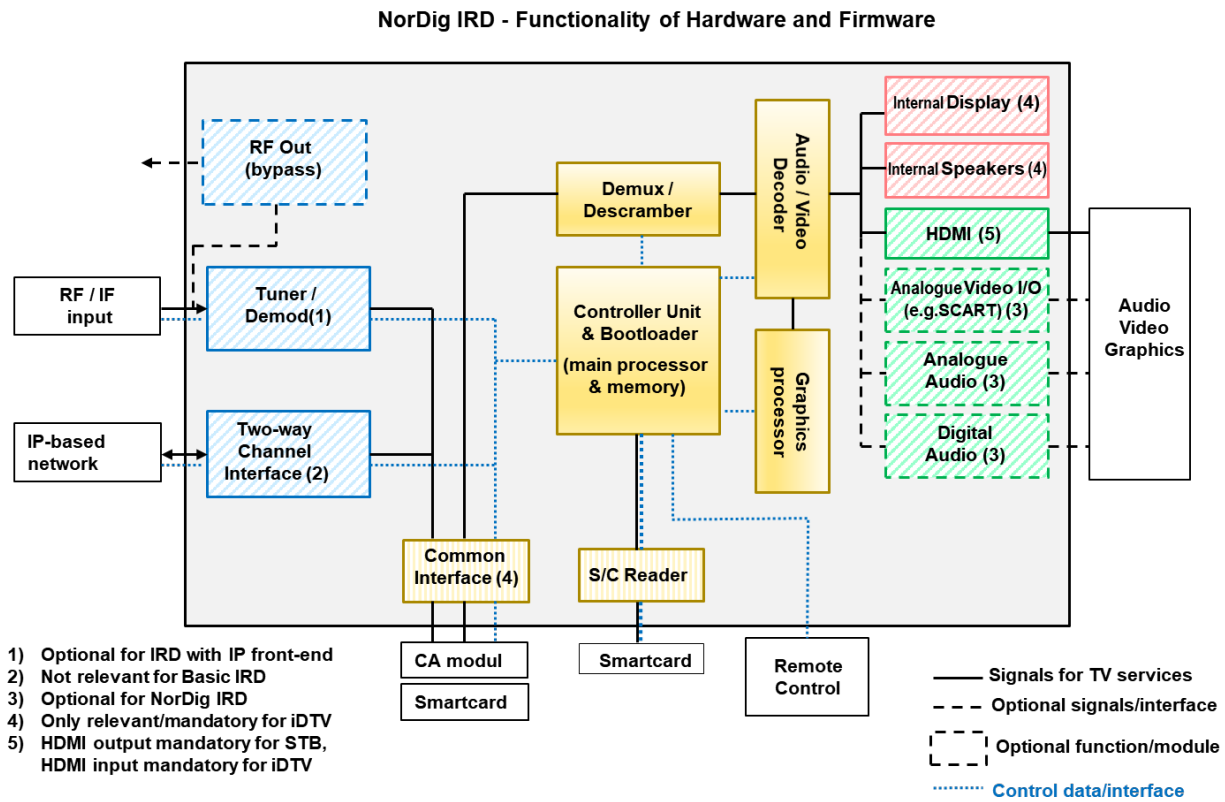



*Figure 2.2 Functionality of Hardware and Firmware for NorDig IRD*

### 2.3.2 RF Interface and Tuner/Demodulator

The RF interface connects to the incoming modulated signal. The tuner/demodulator block performs channel (frequency) selection, demodulation and error correction of the incoming signal. The output from the tuner/demodulator block is a transport stream that is fed to the demultiplexer block, or – if present – the external plug-in conditional access (CA) module. At least one embedded tuner/demodulator block is required, for cable, satellite or terrestrial input. A satellite tuner/demodulator block controls the frequency band selection of the external RF unit and supplies power to it. A terrestrial tuner/demodulator block may supply power to an external antenna amplifier.

The RF-interface is not relevant for IRDs intended for IP-based networks, where the front-end functions are performed by the Interaction Channel Interface, see below.

All channel selections in the tuner/demodulator blocks are controlled by the central Controller unit. See also
chapter 3.

### 2.3.3 $Rf_{in}$-$Rf_{out}$ Bypass (option)

$Rf_{in}$-$Rf_{out}$ is an internal bypass from input to output of IRD. See also section 8.2.

### 2.3.4 Two-way Interface

The two-way interface connects to the IP-based network. It allows the user to access (two-way) interactive services, (e.g. HbbTV services), see section 15 and IP-based services, see section 3.5.See also section 8.3.

The two-way interface is optional for a minimum satellite, cable or terrestrial NorDig Basic IRD. However, the two-way interface will act as front-end interface for reception of multicast signals in case of IPTV, where IPTV is defined as a DVB-transport stream encapsulated in IP packages multicasted or unicasted over a managed IP-network, see sections 3.5 and 8.3.

The two-way interface to the IP-based network may also be used by the NorDig IRD to download new software, see section 10. This is the most appropriate mechanism for software updates that are applicable to IP-based services, as they are immediately available to NorDig IRDs that are connected to the IP-based network.

### 2.3.5 Demultiplexer

The demultiplexer block synchronises with the transport stream coming from the tuner/demodulator, the interaction channel (in case of IP front-end) or the CA module, and selects the appropriate audio, video and/or private data elementary streams according to the service selections made by the user. The demultiplexer block also contains functions related to descrambling of services that are subject to conditional access data in the smart card. The private data streams are managed by the IRD controller unit (main processor), while the audio and video streams are output to the Video/Audio decoder block. See also chapter 4.

### 2.3.6 Video/Audio Decoding

The audio and video decoding units recover the audio and video signals from the input elementary packet streams. This involves processes like descrambling, de-packetisation, decompression, synchronisation with related services, digital to analogue conversion, etc. The digital signals are output to the HDMI/ S/PDIF interfaces while analogue signals are output to external baseband connectors. See also chapters 5 and 6 and clause 7.3.1 of HbbTV specification ETSI TS 102 796 [27].

### 2.3.7 Graphics processor

The graphics processor unit generates graphics and text to be displayed for the user, see chapters 7 and 15.

### 2.3.8 IRD Controller Unit and System Software Update (Bootloader)

The IRD controller unit is a microprocessor system that manages all the internal units, and all attached external plug-in units. See also chapter 10.

The Bootloader is a system software download capability, implemented as a firmware module independent of the system software. It can be initiated via the Navigator. See also chapter 13.

### 2.3.9 Common Interface and Plug-in CA Module

The Common Interface is a transport stream input/output.

The Plug-in CA module is an external plug-in conditional access (CA) module to be attached via the Common Interface. The main task of the CA module is to perform descrambling of services subject to conditional access. The CA module may be connected to an external smart card. See also section 9.2.

### 2.3.10 Smart Card Interface(s) and Smart Card Reader(s)

The smart card readers allow external smart card(s) to be connected to the Controller unit. See also section 9.3.

### 2.3.11 Remote Control

The remote control allows the user to remotely interact with the IRD and its applications such as for example move cursors and graphical pointers and to make selections in menus displayed by the graphics processor. See also section 8.7.

The remote keyboard (option) allows the user to enter alphanumeric symbols in addition to the functions provided by the remote controls.

### 2.3.12 Video/Audio Interfaces

HDMI output/input (1) ~~and SCART (2) interfaces~~. See section 8.4 and 8.6.

Note 1: HDMI output for STBs/PVRs and HDMI input for iDTV.
~~Note 2: Optional~~

### 2.3.13 Audio Output Interfaces (option)

Digital audio interface (s), based on HDMI ARC and/or S/PDIF, see also section 8.6.3 and 8.5.3.

Analogue stereo audio output interface(s), based on RCA ~~and/or SCART~~ connector, see also section 8.4.

### 2.3.14 Main hardware/firmware functions-Overview per configuration

Table 2.1 indicates some of the major hardware/firmware functions in the IRD. A more detailed overview, which also includes the NorDig profiles, is given in Annex J. Detailed requirements are specified in chapters 3-16.

| | | | HEVC IRD | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **NorDig IRD** | **STB** | **iDTV** | **STB** | **iDTV** |
| **Video decoding/processing** | | | | |
| MPEG-2 MP@ML SDTV video | M | M | M | M |
| MPEG-4 AVC HL@L4 SDTV + HDTV video | M | M | M | M |
| MPEG-H HEVC HDR SFR UHDTV (HLG10 + PQ10) | | | M | M |
| **Audio decoding/processing** | | | | |
| MPEG-1 Layer II audio decoding | M | M | M | M |
| HE-AAC Level 4, including downmix to stereo | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) |
| HE-AAC-to-AC-3 or DTS for digital output (1)(6) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) |
| AC-3 (AC-3 pass-through) digital output (1) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) |
| E-AC-3, including downmix to stereo | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) |
| E-AC-3 (E-AC-3 to AC-3) digital output (1) (3) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) | Alt (4) |
| AC-4 Audio, including downmix to stereo | O | O | M | M |
| AC-4 Audio-to-E-AC-3 or AC-3 for digital output (1) (7) | O | O | M | M |

| | | | HEVC IRD | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **NorDig IRD** | **STB** | **iDTV** | **STB** | **iDTV** |
| **Subtitling** | | | | |
| DVB Subtitling | M | M | M | M |
| EBU Teletext subtitling (subtitling pages) | M | M | M | M |
| TTML subtitling | O | O | M | M |
| **Teletext and API** | | | | |
| EBU Teletext (normal pages) | M | M | M | M |
| HbbTV | O (5) | O (5) | O (5) | M |
| **CA** | | | | |
| Embedded CA | (2) | (2) | (2) | (2) |
| **Interfaces** | | | | |
| DVB-C front-end for cable IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| DVB-S front-end for satellite IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| DVB-S2 front-end for satellite IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| DVB-T front-end for terrestrial IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| DVB-T2 front-end for terrestrial IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| Two-way interface for IPTV IRDs | M | M | M | M |
| ~~Analogue SD video output (SCART, component, composite, S-video)~~ | ~~R~~ | ~~O~~ | ~~R~~ | ~~O~~ |
| HDMI with HDCP | M | M | M | M |
| Digital Audio Output (e.g. SPDIF, HDMI ARC) (1) (3) | R/O | R/O | R/O | R/O |
| Analogue Audio Output | R/O | R/O | R/O | R/O |
| Common Interface Plus for CA | (2) | M(2) | (2) | M(2) |
| Smartcard Interface for embedded CA (2) | (2) | (2) | (2) | (2) |

M; Mandatory, R; (Highly) Recommended, O; Optional item to include, Alt; minimum one among several options

1) If IRD is equipped with a digital audio output (like S/PDIF), see section 8.5.

2) As specified by relevant network/CA-operator, see chapter 9. Common Interface Plus is mandatory for for iDTV-sets with screen diagonal larger than 30 cm and highly recommended for iDTV-sets with smaller screen diagonals, see section 9.2.

3) E-AC-3 is not defined for S/PDIF output, instead an 'E-AC-3 to AC-3' conversion is expected for the S/PDIF output to ensure interoperability with legacy A/V receivers. For newer A/V receivers supporting E-AC-3, where implemented, HDMI output **shall** be used for STBs, and HDMI ARC (or eARC) output **shall** be used for IDTVs.

4) See details in section 6.1

5) Optional for NorDig Basic IRDs mandatory for NorDig HbbTV IRDs

6) HE-AAC is not commonly available in A/V receivers, instead an 'HE-AAC to AC-3 or DTS' conversion is expected for the S/PDIF output to ensure interoperability with current A/V receivers.

7) AC-4 is not defined for S/PDIF output, instead an 'AC-4 to AC-3' conversion is expected for the S/PDIF output to ensure interoperability with legacy A/V receivers. For newer A/V receivers supporting E-AC-3, an 'AC-4 to E-AC-3' conversion is expected and, where implemented, HDMI output **shall** be used for STBs, and HDMI ARC (or eARC) output **shall** be used for iDTVs.

*Table 2.1 Main hardware/firmware functions for the various IRD configurations*

#### 2.3.15 Additional hardware/firmware for the PVR features

The NorDig PVR will include embedded or attached hardware/firmware (not shown Figure 2.1) for recording of live services (TV, radio etc) in persistent memory (like HDD) for later playback, (even if the IRD has been completely powered off between the recording and the playback), see section 14.3.

### *2.4 System Software and API*

#### 2.4.1 Introduction

The NorDig software may contain two main parts, system software and applications (later not relevant for NorDig Basic IRDs). The system software **shall** provide two main sets of functions. One set is accessible within the system software only and includes functions for control of hardware/firmware and handling of service information. Another set is available internally and externally for applications, and constitutes the Application Programming Interface, API (not relevant for NorDig Basic IRDs). See also chapter 15.

#### 2.4.2 Principal Software Architecture

An important feature in this software architecture is the possibility of replacing the whole software, with exception of the bootloader software itself. This allows the exchange or upgrade of the entire software 'over the air' or though the IP-based network according to the need for new functionality or for bug fixing (e.g. drivers).

The download of applications uses an internal function from the API, outside of the bootloader software.

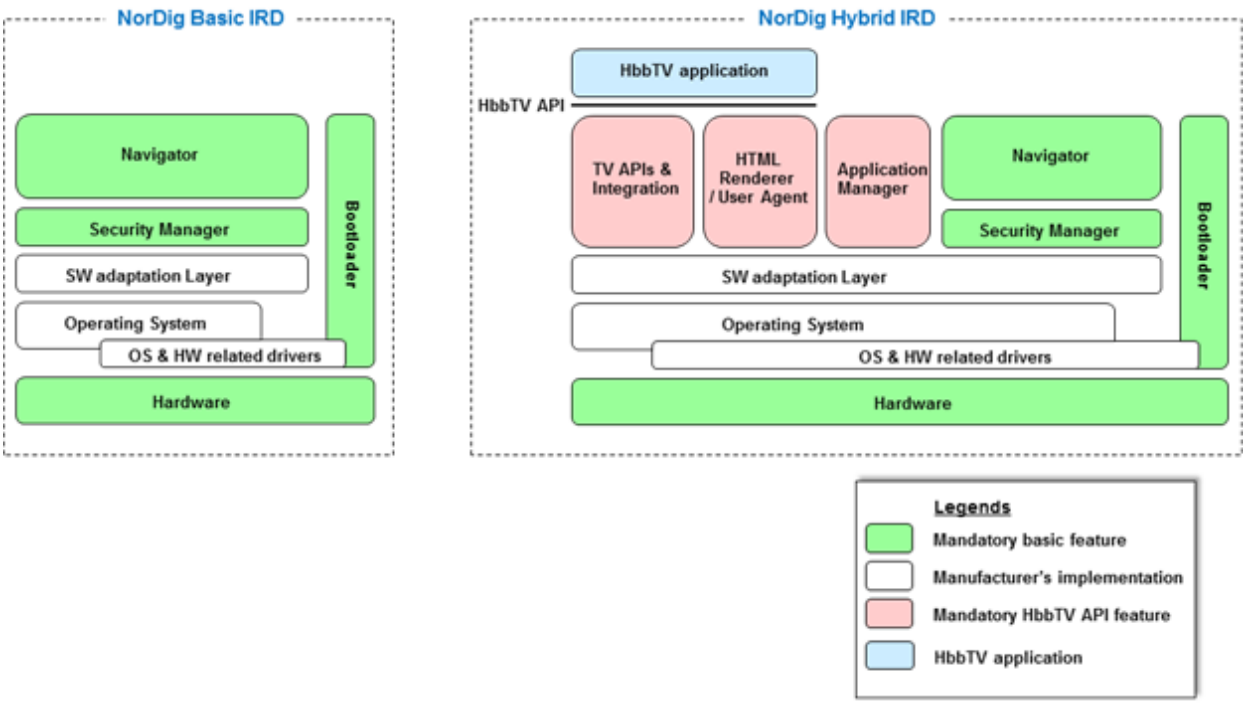



*Figure 2.3: Possible software architecture of a NorDig, to the left a NorDig Basic IRD without NorDig API and to the right a NorDig HbbTV IRD with NorDig API (i.e. HbbTV API).*

Figure 2.3 illustrates only examples of NorDig IRD software architecture. The IRD manufacturers are free to implement system the way they want as long as it fulfils the NorDig IRD specification.

#### 2.4.3 System Software

The NorDig IRD includes a System Software in compliance with DVB specifications, i.e. APIs, PSI/SI (1), Navigator, teletext, subtitling and Common Interface. The system software can be completely upgraded via the bootloader (2), see chapter 10.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The NorDig IRD with an IP-based front-end will be based on a modified use of the DVB service information (SI), see section 12 and Annex C.<br>Note 2: The bootloader is by definition a part of the hardware/firmware. |

#### 2.4.4 NorDig APIs

The NorDig HbbTV IRD includes an open API in compliance with the HbbTV APIs (not relevant for NorDig Basic IRDs), see chapter 15.2.

#### 2.4.5 PVR related software

The NorDig PVR includes additional software for handling of the PVR features, see chapters 12 and 14, and section 13.3.

### *2.5 General Product Requirement*

#### 2.5.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** satisfy all mandatory legal requirements, as specified for the European Union and by the relevant national authority.

#### 2.5.2 Energy Efficiency

The NorDig IRD should be energy efficient and minimise its power consumption during all modes of the IRD (Normal TV mode ("ON"), Standby mode etc). Manufacturers of NorDig IRDs are recommended to follow voluntary agreement(s) on energy consumption for complex set-top-boxes under the EU regulation and/or the European Commission's regulation (EC) No 1275/2008 implementing Directive 2005/32/EC of the European Parliament and of the Council with regard to ecodesign requirements for standby and off mode electric power consumption of electrical and electronic household and office equipment for their IRD products.

#### 2.5.3 Requirements that are optional for a time period (grace period)

NorDig normally introduce new mandatory requirements or changes to existing requirements with a certain time period from publication to when it becomes mandatory to support for new products, (typically via a note: "*Optional for NorDig IRDs that are launched before <date>*"). This time period is here referred to as a "grace period" for a requirement. The purpose with the grace period is to give IRD manufacturer a reasonable time to implement according to the new or modified requirements. A NorDig test lab refers here to a test lab that among things performs verification testing of an IRD's implementation according to NorDig Unified IRD specification and NorDig Test Plan.

Unless an Operator or relevant network specifies anything else, the date in NorDig specification from when new IRD models must support a requirement, refers to the date relevant NorDig test lab(s) receive a new IRD (excl time for testing and any queue time). This means if an IRD is received at the relevant testlab(s) before a grace period date, the applicable requirement(s) is still optional even if the time for testing passes this date at the testlab. Testlabs' time for verification testing IRDs can sometimes vary significantly depending on the queue for testing etc.

#### 2.5.4 Definition of Persistent settings and Temporary changes to those settings

##### 2.5.4.1 Definition and standard handling of Persistent setting

A persistent setting refers to a user preference setting (see chapter 16) that is stored in persistent memory and therefore retains its value when changing service or when re-starting the NorDig IRD (e.g. power cycle). The setting's persistent value becomes its default value.

Persistent setting may typically be accessed deeper in the IRDs menu structure and are typically generic for all installed services.

Note: As stated in chapter 16.4 a reset to factory mode will overwrite any changes User(s) may have done to Persistent settings and reset settings to their initial factory default states.

#### 2.5.4.2 Definition and standard handling of Temporary changes

A temporary change refers to a user preference (see chapter 16) setting that retains its value only until changing selected service or re-starting the NorDig IRD. When a setting loses its temporary value, it **shall** change back to its persistent value (i.e. default value).

Temporary changes are typically being intended to be accessed with a minimum of user interaction steps (e.g. by use of dedicated remote control buttons).

Unless a specific temporary change states otherwise, settings **shall** lose its temporary value (going back to its default value) at least when re-starting the NorDig IRD and should be lost when changing selected service ("zapping").

# PART A: Hardware and Firmware

# 3 The Frontend of the NorDig IRD

## *3.1 Common Features*

### 3.1.1 General Features

The NorDig IRD **shall** contain at least one Tuner/Demodulator for cable or one for satellite or one for terrestrial DVB/MPEG signals, or an interface for reception of corresponding signals from IP-based networks.

A NorDig IRD with:

- a satellite front-end supporting DVB-S and DVB-S2 is from here referred to as a satellite NorDig IRD, see section 3.2.
- a cable front-end supporting DVB-C is from here referred to as a cable NorDig IRD, see section 3.3.
- a terrestrial front-end supporting DVB-T and DVB-T2 is from here referred to as a terrestrial NorDig IRD, see section 3.4.
- an IP-based front-end supporting IPTV over managed networks is from here referred to as an IPTV NorDig IRD, see section 3.5.

A NorDig IRD refers to all kinds of IRDs (satellite, cable, terrestrial, IP-based).

### 3.1.2 Common Scanning Procedures

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to automatically scan through the whole frequency range available for each of the available Tuners/Demodulators and tune in to the correct DVB framing structure, channel coding and modulation to deliver the incoming transport stream to the next units. The tuning data **shall** be stored in a service list, in order to allow a quick tune in to the selected transport stream, see section 13.2. For more detail, see below.

| |
|---|
| Note: Frequency scanning is not relevant for NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-end. |

### 3.1.3 Reception Quality Detector

The NorDig IRD **shall** be equipped with a reception quality detector.

## *3.2 Satellite Tuner and Demodulator*

This section describes the requirements for NorDig IRDs with satellite front-end (satellite NorDig IRD).

### 3.2.1 General

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** include at least one tuner/demodulator unit for reception of signals from a satellite RF-outdoor unit (1), broadcasting in accordance with both ETSI EN 300 421 [11] (DVB-S) and ETSI EN 302 307 [20] (DVB-S2).

The satellite NorDig HEVC IRD should (2) in addition also support ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81] (DVB-S2X) with the following limitations:

- Channel bonding (as specified in section 5.1.2 in ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81]) is optional.
- 32APSK modes are optional.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: In this specification RF means the input to the IRD, unless otherwise specified.<br><br>Note 2: All other subsystems and functions specified ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81] (DVB-S2X) as "Normative" for receivers used for "Broadcast services" in table 1: "S2X System configurations and application areas" **shall** then be supported. |

### 3.2.2 RF/IF Characteristics

The available transponder bandwidths and transponder powers vary with the different satellites. Consequently, a range of symbol rates and forward error correction rates may be employed.

The incoming digital DVB signals will comply with DVB-S, see ETSI EN 300 421[11] or DVB-S2, see ETSI EN 302 307 [20], including QPSK and 8PSK waveforms or DVB-S2X, see ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81]. All specified error correction rates may be used, and filtering may be based on any of the standard roll-off rates that are specified in the satellite_delivery_system _descripor, see Table 13.1.

The satellite NorDig IRDs **shall** support the following symbol rates on the incoming carriers:

- QPSK-carrier: From 7.5 MBaud to 45Mbaud (1)
- 8PSK-carrier: From 5 MBaud to 30 MBaud (1)

The satellite NorDig HEVC IRD with DVB-S2X implemented **shall** in addition support all system configurations up to and including the 16APSK modes listed in ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81] (DVB-S2X) table 1: "S2X System configurations and application areas", with the following symbol rates on the incoming carriers:

- 8APSK, 16APSK. 32APSK-carrier: From 5 MBaud to 34MBaud (1)

| |
|---|
| Note 1:The Common Interface Plus is specified for maximum 96 Mbps while the DVB Common Interface is specified for maximum 72 Mbps, see section 9.2. The incoming carriers will not carry signals with higher bit rates than 72 Mbps when IRDs with DVB-CAMs are targeted. |

### 3.2.3 Input Frequency Range/Tuning Range

The input frequency band to the RF-unit with antenna may cover the frequency range 10.7 to 12.75 GHz on each of two polarisations. The RF unit may be configured to select and convert any of the four 1 GHz bands (upper or lower half band on each polarisation) to IF. Alternatively, it may be configured to provide a number of transport streams on a single cable, see section 3.2.5

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** be able to tune to any DVB carrier located within the IF band 950-2150 MHz with characteristics and symbol rate as specified in section 3.2.2.

### 3.2.4 Demodulation and Error Correction

Demodulation, descrambling and error correction **shall** be performed for all symbol rates given above and for all error correction rates and filter roll-off rates as specified for DVB-S, see ETSI EN 300 421 [11] and for DVB-S2, see ETSI EN 302 307 [20] and the satellite_delivery_system_descriptor, see Table 13.1.

In addition, for satellite NorDig HEVC IRD supporting DVB-S2X, the demodulation, descrambling and error correction **shall** be performed for all symbol rates given above and for all error correction rates and filter roll-off rates as specified for DVB-S2X, see ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81] and the S2X satellite_delivery_system_descriptor, see Table 13.1.

### 3.2.5 Control Signals

The Tuner/Demodulator **shall** be able to select between at least two RF units, upper and lower band as well as polarisation within each unit in accordance with EN 61319-1 [10], level 1 (the "DiSEqC" specification, level 1.0), see also section 3.2.7.3.

The Tuner/Demodulator **shall** be able to select transport stream in accordance with EN 50494 Satellite [8] (" Signal distribution over a single coaxial cable in single dwelling installations"). The selected user band(s)/frequency(ies) for transport from the outdoor unit to the IRD **shall** be stored as local default values.

### 3.2.6 Tuning/ Scanning Procedures

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** establish, store and update a list of all services that are available in the network it is connected to, see section 13.2, and use these data for service selection when available.

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** either use the NIT information or the scanning procedure for retrieving the services available on the network.

Information will also be given in PSI/SI, which will enable the IRD to track services which are moved, removed or added within available multiplexes, see ETSI EN 300 468 [13]. Such information **shall** be decoded and used for updating the service list.

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** be able to tune to new carriers when it is connected to a new network, or when the stored service list is no longer available, or when manually initiated via the user interface. The tuning **shall** be based on stored default values or a scanning procedure when no default values are stored.

It **shall** be possible to set and store specific ***network default values*** for search of digital carriers ("Homing carriers"), as required for the targeted network(s). The values **shall** be set either manually via the user interface, or as part of the stored default values in the satellite NorDig IRD.

The ***network default*** values **shall** for each stored network id include, see section 13.2.2:

- Network id
- Polarisation, frequency, modulation mode and symbol rate for carriers that carry service information about actual and other transport streams.

In case there are no stored data for the selected network, the IRD **shall** scan through the full frequency band on both polarisations based on:

- Polarisation and carrier frequencies as specified in section 3.2.3.
- Modulation mode: QPSK or 8PSK, where QPSK should be attempted first with its associated FEC values, see section 3.2.2. In addition, also 8APSK, 16APSK or 32APSK modes for satellite Nordig HEVC IRDs that support DVB-S2X.
- Symbol rate: As specified in section 3.2.2, with steps corresponding to 0.1 MBaud, starting with the range 22-30 MBaud.

### 3.2.7 Satellite Tuner Interface and Signal Levels

#### 3.2.7.1 RF Input Connector

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** include (at least) one input connector, type: ISO 169-24/IEC 61169-24 [38], F-type, female, 75 ohms.

The return loss **shall** be 10 dB (typically), in worst case 8dB min.

#### 3.2.7.2 Signal Level

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** accept input signals with a level in the range -25 to -65dBm, and demodulate the signals with a performance as specified in section 3.2.8.

#### 3.2.7.3 Power Supply and Control Signals (to RF unit)

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** provide power supply and control signals to the external RF-unit as specified below:

| Parameter | | Value | | | Unit |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Min. | Typ. | Max. | |
| LNB Supply Voltage (Control Signal) | Vertical Polarisation | 12.5 | | 14.0 | V |
| | Horizontal Polarisation | 17.0 | | 19.0 | V |
| High Band Selection | Frequency | 20 | 22 | 24 | kHz |
| | Duty Cycle | 40 | 50 | 60 | % |
| | Peak-to-Peak Voltage | 0.4 | 0.6 | 0.8 | V |
| | Transition Time | 5 | 10 | 15 | µs |
| | Output Impedance at 22 kHz | | | 50 | Ω |
| LNB Current Power Supply | | 400(1) | | | mA |
| Control signals for DiSEqC: See EN 61319-1 [13] | | | | | |
| Control signals for single cable: See ETSI TR 101 211 [28] | | | | | |
| Note 1: The IRD should be able to provide up to 1000mA for the initial 25 mseconds | | | | | |

*Table 3.1 Power supply and control signals for the RF-unit*

### 3.2.8 Performance

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** be able to store tuning data for all MPEG/DVB carriers in the satellite network.

The satellite NorDig IRD IF back/back error performance for a single carrier **shall** comply with the requirements given in ETSI EN 300 421 (section 5) [11] for DVB-S carriers and in ETSI EN 302 307 [20] for DVB-S2 carriers and (for satellite Nordig IRDs supporting the S2X optional requirement) in ETSI EN 302 307-2 [81] for DVB-S2X carriers (3). The NorDig IRD **shall** at least provide QEF reception for the maximum required C/N (Es/No) ratios that are specified in Table 3.2.

| | | **C/N (Es/No) performance (dB)** | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Modulation | Code Rate | DVB-S | DVB-S2 | DVB-S2X (3) |
| QPSK | 1/4 | n/a | -1.4 (2) | |
| QPSK | 13/45 | n/a | n/a | 1.0 |
| QPSK | 1/3 | n/a | -0.2 (2) | |
| QPSK | 2/5 | n/a | 0.7(2) | |
| QPSK | 9/20 | n/a | n/a | 1.22 |
| QPSK | 1/2 | 3.8 | 2.0 | |
| QPSK | 11/20 | n/a | n/a | 2.45 |
| QPSK | 3/5 | n/a | 3.2 | |
| QPSK | 2/3 | 5.6 | 4.1 | |
| QPSK | 3/4 | 6.7 | 5.0 | |
| QPSK | 4/5 | n/a | 5.7 | |
| QPSK | 5/6 | 7.7 | 6.2 | |
| QPSK | 7/8 | 8.4 | n/a | |
| QPSK | 8/9 | n/a | 7.2 | |
| QPSK | 9/10 | n/a | 7.4 | |

| Modulation | Code Rate | DVB-S | DVB-S2 | DVB-S2X (3) |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 8APSK-L | 5/9 | n/a | n/a | 5.73 |
| 8APSK-L | 26/45 | n/a | n/a | 6.13 |
| 8PSK | 3/5 | n/a | 6.5 | |
| 8PSK | 23/36 | n/a | n/a | 7.12 |
| 8PSK | 2/3 | n/a | 7.6 | |
| 8PSK | 25/36 | n/a | n/a | 8.02 |
| 8PSK | 13/18 | n/a | n/a | 8.49 |
| 8PSK | 3/4 | n/a | 8.9 | |
| 8PSK | 5/6 | n/a | 10.4 | |
| 8PSK | 8/9 | n/a | 11.7 | |
| 8PSK | 9/10 | n/a | 12.0 | |
| 16APSK-L | 1/2 | n/a | n/a | 7.47 |
| 16APSK-L | 8/15 | n/a | n/a | 8.05 |
| 16APSK-L | 5/9 | n/a | n/a | 8.34 |
| 16APSK | 26/45 | n/a | n/a | 9.01 |
| 16APSK | 3/5 | n/a | n/a | 9.3 |
| 16APSK-L | 3/5 | n/a | n/a | 8.91 |
| 16APSK | 28/45 | n/a | n/a | 9.6 |
| 16APSK | 23/36 | n/a | n/a | 9.88 |
| 16APSK-L | 2/3 | n/a | n/a | 9.93 |
| 16APSK | 25/36 | n/a | n/a | 10.77 |
| 16APSK | 13/18 | n/a | n/a | 11.21 |
| 16APSK | 7/9 | n/a | n/a | 12.15 |
| 16APSK | 77/90 | n/a | n/a | 13.49 |
| 32APSK-L | 2/3 | n/a | n/a | 12.6 |
| 32APSK | 32/45 | n/a | n/a | 13.25 |
| 32APSK | 11/15 | n/a | n/a | 13.67 |
| 32APSK | 7/9 | n/a | n/a | 14.55 |

*Table 3.2 Maximum C/N (Es/No) for QEF reception (1)*

Note 1: C/N measured for a bandwidth that equals the symbol rate.
Quasi-Error-Free (QEF) means less than one uncorrected error event per hour, corresponding to (MPEG TS Packet Error Rate) PER= 10-7 or BER = 10-10 to 10-11 at the input of the MPEG-2 demultiplexer.

Note 2: For DVB-S2 Modes with QPSK and code rates 1/4, 1/3 and 2/5, the C/N (Es/No) values are optional (recommended) for satellite NorDig IRDs to support.

Note 3: DVB-S2X C/N (Es/No) performance only applies to satellite NorDig HEVC IRDs that supports DVB-S2X.

The satellite NorDig IRD error performance in a multi-carrier environment **shall** be tested in IF back/back. (" Back to back" implies that the test signal **shall** be applied at the input of the RF/IF (tuner), see Figure 1.1, i. e. only degradation in the satellite NorDig IRD itself is measured).

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** be able to select any channel within an array of digital channels with equal carrier level, bandwidth and channel spacing. Given that the symbol rate is R the channel spacing **shall** be 1.25·R for DVB-S carriers and 1.20 R for DVB-S2 carriers.

The satellite NorDig IRD **shall** select, demodulate and correct errors such that the performance specified in Table 3.2 is met for a wanted carrier at any frequency and any power level within the ranges specified

above and with characteristics and symbol rates as specified in section 3.2.2. No adjacent carrier is required for this case.

With adjacent carriers of equal power levels, equal symbol rates and with carrier separations as specified above, the satellite NorDig IRD **shall** select a wanted carrier between adjacent carriers, demodulate and correct errors such that the performance specified in Table 3.2 is met with a C/N allowance of 0.4 dB for the adjacent carriers.

## *3.3 Cable Tuner and Demodulator*

This section describes the requirements for NorDig IRDs with cable front-end (cable NorDig IRD).

### 3.3.1 General

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** provide the possibility to access digital DVB carriers via the internal front-end for cable networks.

The digital DVB signals are QAM modulated as specified in ETSI EN 300 429 [12].

~~The incoming carriers may in addition to the digital carriers include analogue PAL television signals using AM-VSB modulation, as specified in ITU/R Report 624-4 [59], standards PAL-B, PAL-G.~~

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** be able to operate flawless in a CATV network specified in accordance to EN 60728 and EN 50083-9 [5].

The front-end **shall** convert signals received via a cable system (CATV) from RF level to baseband level. It **shall** include QAM demodulation for provision of digital transport streams.

~~Many CATV systems use a 7 MHz frequency raster in the VHF frequency range and an 8 MHz raster in the Hyperband and UHF band for analogue PAL TV services~~. For digital DVB signals an 8 MHz frequency raster is/will be used over the whole CATV frequency range. However, the frequency rasters may be different in the different cable networks.

~~The analogue signals **shall** be identified by the vision carrier and on a frequency channel allocation basis.~~

Note: DVB-C2 is specified by DVB and as an ETSI standard. DVB-C2 will be considered for NorDig.

### 3.3.2 RF Characteristics

#### 3.3.2.1 Network characteristics

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** operate with input network and channel RF characteristics as specified in Table 3.3.

| Parameter | Type of signal | Value |
|---|---|---|
| Input Frequency range: | Digital signals | Full band: 110 - 862 MHz, with centre frequencies in the band 114-858 MHz and with an accuracy of +/- 30 kHz (1) |
| | ~~Analogue signals~~ | ~~47 - 862 MHz and with an accuracy of centre frequency of +/- 30 kHz~~ |
| Channel bandwidth: | Digital signals | 8 MHz (2) |
| | ~~Analogue signals~~ | ~~7 and 8 MHz~~ |
| Input level: | Digital signals | 47 - 77dBµV at 75 Ohms for 256 QAM<br>43 – 73 dBµV at 75 Ohms for 64 QAM |
| | ~~Analogue signals~~ | ~~TV/AM-VSB: 57 - 80 dBµV at 75 Ohms~~<br>~~FM radio: up to 70 dBµV at 75 Ohms~~ |
| Total Input Power (80-862 MHz): | Digital ~~& analogue~~ | <93 dBµV at 75 Ohms |

| Parameter | Type of signal | Value |
|---|---|---|
| Carrier-to-Interference ratio for total power (discrete and broadband ingress signals) | Digital ~~& analogue~~ | >52 dB within the channel bandwidth |
| ~~Composite Second Order (CSO) distortion for analogue modulated carriers~~ | ~~Analogue signals~~ | ~~equal or better than 57 dB~~ |
| ~~Composite Triple Beat (CTB) distortion for analogue modulated carriers~~ | ~~Analogue signals~~ | ~~equal or better than 57 dB.~~ |
| Input Impedance: | | 75 Ohms |
| Modulation: | Digital signals | 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 128-QAM and 256-QAM |
| Symbolrate: | Digital signals | 4.0 Msymbols/s to 7.0 Msymbols/s (2)<br>The rates are set in steps of 1 ksymbols/s |
| Note 1: An extension of the full band, up to 1 GHz, is being considered for future IRDs<br><br>Note 2: Most cable networks use symbol rates close to 7.0 Msymbols/s or 6.952 Msymbols, as specified for EuroDocsis, see ITU-J. 222.1 [58]. Prior to the modulation, the I and Q signals are required to be square-root raised cosine filtered with a roll-off factor of 0.15. The cable IRD **shall** perform the inverse signal processing, in order to recover the baseband signal. | | |

*Table 3.3 RF front-end characteristics for NorDig IRDs with a cable front-end*

#### 3.3.2.2 Input and bypass connectors

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** have at least one input connector, type:

- IEC female in accordance with IEC 61169-2 [37], alternatively
- F female in accordance with ISO/IEC-61169-24 [38]

The input impedance **shall** be 75 Ω.

In the case that a bypass connection is provided, see section 3.3.3, the output connector **shall** be:

- IEC male in accordance with IEC 61169-2, part 2, alternatively [37]
- F female connector in accordance with ISO/IEC-61169-24 [38]

The output impedance **shall** be 75 Ω.

### 3.3.3 Bypass $RF_{in}$ to $RF_{out}$

The RF signals should (1) be bypassed from $RF_{in}$ to $RF_{out}$ independently from the status of the cable NorDig IRD (operational or stand by), so that connected equipment can operate even if the NorDig IRD is in standby.

| Note 1: RF By-pass may be mandatory in some cable networks |
|---|

The frequency range for the RF bypass **shall** be from 47 MHz to 862 MHz.

The cable NorDig IRD, when equipped with RF bypass, should include user setting to disable or enable the RF bypass gain in standby mode. When the RF bypass gain is disabled, the maximum RF bypass gain should -4dB and when the RF bypass gain is enabled, the RF bypass gain should be from –1 dB to +3 dB.

The degradation of the signals caused by the RF bypass compared to the input signal **shall** be less than:

- 1 dB in case of signal-to-noise ratio
- 2 dB in case of composite triple beat ratio (CTB)

- 2 dB in case of composite second order ratio (CSO)

The figures relate to the composite intermodulation ratios for CSO and CTB as specified in Table 3.3, as well as the signal-to-noise ratio defined in EN 60728 [5]. The maximum degradation factor **shall** not be exceeded under the worst-case conditions specified in Table 3.3 and in section 3.3.5.2.

### 3.3.4 Tuning/Scanning Procedure

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** either use the NIT information or the scanning procedure for retrieving the services available on the cable network.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive digital signals in the full frequency band, 114-858 MHz and be able to decode all digital carriers in this range, in all modes specified for modulation and in any symbol rate specified in Table 3.3.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** establish, store and update a list of all services that are available in the network it is connected to, see section 13.2, and use these data for service selection when available.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform a tuning procedure as specified below when it is connected to a new network, or when the stored service list is no longer available, or when manually initiated via the user interface.

1) Step 1 (use of NIT):
   The cable NorDig IRD **shall** search for and tune to a digital DVB carrier. The received Service Information, as found valid (see notes 1 and 2) **shall** be used to establish the service list (see section 13.2). The search **shall** be based on the default values specified below. In case no valid NIT is detected, go to

2) Step 2 (false NIT (2)):
   The cable NorDig IRD **shall** indicate that no carrier is detected and that a manual setting of input parameters is required; see below.

Note 1: The received data include descriptors for the actual transport stream and may include data for other transport streams; in order to update the service list, see section 13.2.2.

Note 2: In smaller cable networks with a simple QPSK-QAM converter without the possibility for SI information correction (e.g. the NIT of the satellite distribution system has not been replaced by the correct CATV-NIT).

It **shall** be possible, via the cable NorDig IRD's user interface, to manually set and store the network_id (NID), as relevant for the network that the IRD is connected to.

It **shall** be possible to set and store specific ***network default values*** for search of digital carriers, as required for the targeted network(s). The values **shall** be set either manually via the user interface, or as part of the stored default values in the cable NorDig IRD.

The ***network default*** values **shall** for each stored network id include:

- Network id
- Frequency (ies) and modulation mode(s) for carriers that carry service information about actual and other transport streams, see section 13.2.2
- Symbol rate(s) for the specified carrier(s).

In case there are no stored data for the selected network, the stored ***factory default*** values **shall** be used for the initial search (Step 1 above). In case these default values do not result in reception of a carrier, a full search, covering all frequencies, modulation modes and symbol rates **shall** be performed (Step 2).

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** as a minimum store a ***factory default*** value set, with the following data:

- Carrier frequencies: 114MHz + n x 8MHz, where n is an integer in the range 0 to 93, see Table 3.3.
- Modulation mode: 16 QAM, 64QAM, 128QAM and 256QAM, where 128QAM and 16 QAM should be attempted last.
- Symbol rate: 6.952 MSymbols/s (first attempt). If this rate does not result in reception, the following rates should be attempted: 6.950, 6.900, 6.875, 6.125 (1) and 6.000 (1) Msymbols/s.

### 3.3.5 Performance Data

#### 3.3.5.1 Return loss and Noise figure

The performance data below **shall** be satisfied:

- Return loss: 10 dB (typically), in worst case 8 dB min.
- Noise figure: less than 8 dB

#### 3.3.5.2 Requirements under Cable specific conditions

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** support operations at any levels that may correspond to those in a CATV network conforming to EN60728 and EN 50083 [5], where the loading is flat and where the digital signals have a level of 0 dB (ref) ~~and the analogue signals a level that is 6 dB higher (i.e. the digital signals have a 6 dB back-off (1) from the analogue signals)~~. The values of the individual signals **shall** be within the limits specified in Table 3.3, with a total load up to 93dBµV at any IRD input.

~~Note 1: The back-off is the ratio between the RMS value of the PAL vision carrier level during sync puls interval and the average QAM level.~~
~~The back-off between digital and analogue signals may in practice differ between the various networks, e.g some networks operate with 6 dB back-off for 256QAM and 10dB for 64QAM, while other may operate both 256QAM and 64 QAM signals with 4 dB back-off.~~

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle DVB-C signals at any levels as specified in this section 3.3, including operation:

- At any carrier frequency, with restrictions as specified of adjacent channels being present, and
- At minimum and at maximum input level (see Table 3.3) of the IRD, and
- With an echo with any of the values specified in Table 3.3

For any combination of these operational conditions, the NorDig IRD **shall** provide the minimum performance that is specified below:

- Noise limited performance as specified in sections 3.3.5.3, and
- Operation with noise and echos, as specified in section 3.3.5.4, and
- Operation with images from other signals, as specified in section 3.3.5.5, and
- Operation with adjacent digital signals, ~~or adjacent analogue output PAL/G signals, with NICAM stereo carrier~~, with levels as specified in sections 3.3.5.6 and 3.3.5.7.

#### 3.3.5.3 C/N (Es/No) performance for Reference BER

The performance requirements used in this section 3.3.5 are referring to the QEF condition, where Quasi Error Free (QEF) means less than one uncorrected error event per hour. This requirement corresponds to BER = $2x10^{-4}$ before the Reed Solomon decoding is used and approx $10^{-11}$ at the input of the MPEG-2 multiplexer.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** have a BER performance better than- $2x10^{-4}$ for the C/N ratios specified below, for all specified input levels:

| QAM: | C/N (Es/No): | Comments |
|---|---|---|
| 256 | 32.0 dB | when the input receive signal is in the range 54 to 77 dBµV |
| | 35.0 dB | when the input receive signal is in the range 47 to 54 dBµV |
| 128 | 29.0 dB | |
| 64 | 26.0 dB | |
| 16 | 20.0 dB | |

*Table 3.4 Minimum performance for cable tuner when BER=$2x10^{-4}$ before Reed-Solomon error correction. C/N is referred to a noise bandwidth that equals the symbol rate.*

The residual BER for C/N >36 dB (256-QAM), >33 dB (128-QAM), >30 dB (64-QAM) and>24 dB (16-QAM) **shall** be less than $10^{-7}$.

3.3.5.4 C/N (Es/No) performance with echo applied

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in Table 3.3, plus an allowance of 1 dB when an echo is applied in accordance to the template in Figure 3.1.

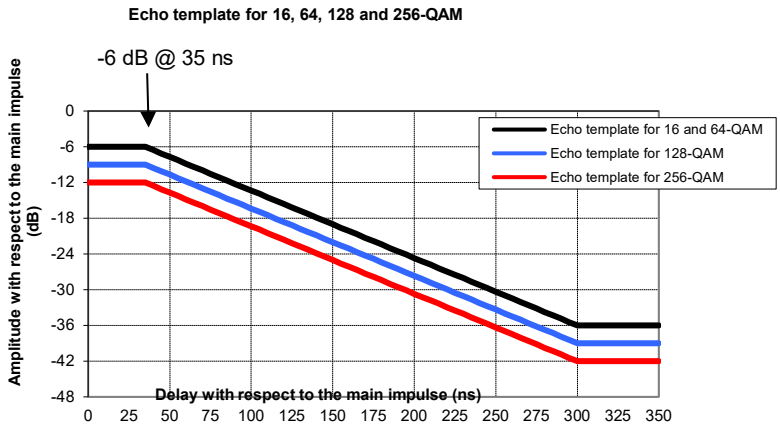



*Figure 3.1 Echo template for echoes for 16, 64, 128 and 256-QAM.*

3.3.5.5 Image rejection performance

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3 with an analogue or digital signal at +10dBc in any portion of the RF band other than the adjacent channels.

3.3.5.6 Adjacent channel performance for 16, 64 and 128 QAM

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3 with

a) Digital signals at 0dBc in the adjacent channels.

b) Analogue signals at +10dB in the adjacent channels

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3, plus an allowance of 0.2 dB with digital signals at +10dBc in adjacent channels.

3.3.5.7 Adjacent channel performance for 256 QAM

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3 with digital or analogue signals at 0dBc in the adjacent channels.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3, plus an allowance of 0.5 dB with analogue signals at +10dBc in adjacent channels.

The cable NorDig IRD **shall** perform as specified in section 3.3.5.3, plus an allowance of 1.0 dB with digital signals at +10dBc in adjacent channels.

### 3.3.6 Spurious Emission

#### 3.3.6.1 LO leakage

The LO leakage conducted emission (including LO and spurious) from the cable NorDig IRD, measured at the antenna input connector **shall** be ≤ 46dBµV over the range 65 to 862MHz, see EN 55013 [9]

#### 3.3.6.2 Spurious emission

The spurious emission from the NorDig IRD to the network, as measured at the antenna input connector, **shall** be less than 34 dBµV over the range 5MHz to 65MHz and less than 30 dB µV over 65 to 862 MHz.

Generally, spurious emission should not affect the sensitivity of the receiver.

#### 3.3.6.3 Radiation

The radiation from the cable NorDig IRD **shall** comply with EN 55013[9].

## *3.4 Terrestrial Tuner and Demodulator*

This section describes the requirements for NorDig IRDs with terrestrial front-end (terrestrial NorDig IRD).

### 3.4.1 General

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** include at least one tuner/demodulator for reception of signals from terrestrial transmitters, broadcasting in accordance with both ETSI EN 300 744 [18] (DVB-T) and ETSI EN 302 755 [19] (DVB-T2).

The digital transmissions may share frequency bands with other transmissions; successful reception will depend on e.g. network configuration, channel characteristics, time-varying interference from other "analogue" or "digital" transmitters and the receiver performance. The transmission networks of DVB-T/T2 may include single frequency networks (SFN).

Comment: The possibility to receive DVB-T/T2 signals in MATV networks is optional for NorDig IRDs with a terrestrial front-end. Such networks use a 7 MHz channel frequency raster in the VHF and an 8 MHz raster in the UHF frequency range for analogue TV services. For re-distribution of DVB-T/T2 signals it should be possible to maintain these rasters and to use only an 8 MHz raster.

### 3.4.2 Frequencies and Signal Bandwidths

#### 3.4.2.1 General

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive channels in the VHF band III (1) and UHF bands IV, V and should be able to receive channels in VHF S band I, VHF S band II, UHF S Band III (see Table 3.5).

| | Band | Frequency range | Requirement |
|---|---|---|---|
| VHF | *VHF I* | *47 – 68 MHz* | *N/A* |
| | S Band I | 104 – 174 MHz | Optional |
| | VHF III | 174 – 230 MHz | Mandatory |
| | S Band II | 230 – 300 MHz | Optional |
| UHF | S Band III | 300 – 470 MHz | Optional |
| | UHF IV | 470 – 606 MHz | Mandatory |
| | UHF V | 606 – 694 MHz | Mandatory |
| | UHF V | 694– 862 MHz | Optional |

*Table 3.5 Mandatory and optional frequency bands*

#### 3.4.2.2 Centre Frequencies

The front-end **shall** for the supported frequency ranges be capable of tuning to the centre frequency $f_c$ of the incoming DVB-T/T2 RF signal, see below and Annex B2:

<u>8 MHz raster:</u>

$f_c$ = 114 MHz +M * 8 MHz, where

M is an integer number, running from 0 to 72(optional up to 93)

<u>7 MHz raster:</u>

$f_c$ = 107.5 MHz + L * 7 MHz, where

L is an integer number, running from 0 to 27.

<u>1.7 MHz raster (DVB-T2):</u>

$f_c$ **shall** be as specified in Annex B2.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: 8 MHz raster is mandatory for the UHF-bands. 7 MHz raster is mandatory for VHF band III. 8 MHz raster for VHF is optional. The support for 1.7 MHz raster in VHF Band III is optional, see below 3.4.2.4. |

#### 3.4.2.3 Maximum Frequency Offset

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive signals with an offset of up to 50 kHz from the nominal frequency.

#### 3.4.2.4 Signal bandwidths

For a DVB-T signal, an 8 MHz DVB-T signal corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 7.61 MHz and a 7 MHz DVB-T signal corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 6.66 MHz.

For 8 MHz DVB-T2 signal, a normal carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 7.61 MHz and an extended carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 7.71 MHz for FFT size of 8K and 7.77 MHz for FFT size of 16K and 32K.

For 7MHz DVB-T2 signal, a normal carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 6.66 MHz and an extended carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 6.80 MHz.

For 1.7 MHz DVB-T2 signal, a normal carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth 1.54 MHz and an extended carrier mode corresponds to a signal bandwidth of 1.57 MHz.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** for DVB-T2 signals, support both the normal and extended carrier modes, see EN 302 755 [19]. The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** for DVB-T2 signals follow network parameter change from normal to extended carrier mode and vice versa automatically without any need for user action.

VHF Bands:

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** (1) for the supported frequency ranges be able to receive 7 MHz and should be able to receive 8 MHz DVB-T and DVB-T2 signals as well as 1.7 MHz DVB-T2 signals. If 8 MHz bandwidth is supported it **shall** automatically detect which DVB-T/T2 signal bandwidth is being used, and it **shall** be possible to receive the 8 MHz DVB-T/T2 signals on the 7 MHz channel frequency raster. If 1.7 MHz bandwidth is supported, the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically detect which DVB-T/T2 signal bandwidth is being used.

UHF Bands:

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** for the supported frequency ranges be able to receive 8 MHz DVB-T and DVB-T2 signals.

Note 1: Reception from the VHF band III is mandatory. Reception from other VHF bands is optional.

### 3.4.3 Modes

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be capable of correctly demodulating all non-hierarchical DVB-T modes specified in EN 300 744 [18] (DVB-T). The front-end **shall** therefore be able to work with any combination of constellation (QPSK, 16-QAM or 64-QAM), code rate (1/2, 2/3, 3/4, 5/6 or 7/8), guard interval ($T_U/4$, $T_U/8$, $T_U/16$ or $T_U/32$) and transmission mode (2K or 8K).

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should be able to receive the hierarchical modes in the DVB-T specification, see Annex B - 3.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be capable of correctly demodulating all allowed configurations, or "DVB-T2 modes", as specified in EN 302 755 [19] (DVB-T2), with the following exceptions:

- Support for 1.7 MHz bandwidth is optional
- Support for Time Frequency Slicing (TFS) is optional. When TFS is supported the NorDig IRD-T2 **shall** be capable of correctly demodulating all allowed TFS configurations, or "TFS DVB-T2 modes", as specified in EN 302 755 [19], including Annex E.
- Support for 10 MHz bandwidth is not required
- Support for PLPs carrying GS/GSE is not required
- Support for Transmission modes 16K and 32K, when 1.7 MHz RF bandwidth is supported, is not required
- Should support scrambling of L1-post signalling data (5)

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** not malfunction due to the existence of transmissions using configurations that the NorDig IRD is not required to support,

When DVB-T2 TFS is supported the following **shall** apply: For 8MHz DVB-T2 signals with modulation parameters {32K, 256-QAM, CR=3/5, GI=1/16} on all data PLPs the NorDig IRD **shall** support reception of variable-bit rate PLPs in TFS with a TS peak data rate of up to 15 Mbps using up to six RF frequencies (1). Each TS is split into one data PLP and a common PLP.

~~Note 1: Although the bit rate of a TS is fixed the payload (of non-null packets) may be variable, which will require a variable-bit-rate PLP, since null packets in the TS are removed by DVB-T2 before transmission and re-introduced by the receiver.~~

Within the NorDig IRD specification the concept of "DVB-T2 mode" includes e.g. (the list is not exhaustive) (2):

- Constellation (QPSK, 16-QAM, 64-QAM, 256-QAM), both rotated and non-rotated

- Code rate (1/2, 3/5, 2/3, 3/4, 4/5, 5/6)
- Guard interval (TU/128, TU/32, TU/16, TU*19/256, TU/8, TU*19/128, TU/4)
- Transmission mode (1K, 2K, 4K, 8K normal and extended, 16K normal and extended, 32K normal and extended)
- Pilot pattern (PP1, PP2, PP3, PP4, PP5, PP6, PP7, PP8)
- SISO/MISO
- PAPR (No PAPR reduction is used, ACE-PAPR only is used, TR-PAPR only is used, both ACE and TR are used)
- FEC Frame length (64800, 16200)
- Input Mode A (single PLP) or Input Mode B (Multiple PLPs – Common PLP, Type 1 and 2 up to the maximum allowed figure 255)
- Single RF frequency or Time Frequency Slicing (TFS)
- Normal Mode or High Efficiency Mode
- FEF parts ~~(2) (3)~~ (3) (4)
- Auxiliary streams ~~(2)~~ (3)

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** automatically detect which mode is being used.

Note 1: Although the bit rate of a TS is fixed the payload (of non-null packets) may be variable, which will require a variable-bit-rate PLP, since null packets in the TS are removed by DVB-T2 before transmission and re-introduced by the receiver.

Note 2: For allowed combinations of the DVB-T2 parameters see ETSI EN 302 755 [19].

Note 3: The terrestrial NorDig IRD is not required to demodulate or decode the content of FEF parts and auxiliary streams, but the existence of FEFs and/or auxiliary streams **shall** not cause receiver to malfunction.

Note 4: DVB-T2 transmissions may simultaneously carry both DVB-T2 Base signal and DVB-T2 Lite signal. DVB-T2 Lite signal contained in FEF part of the DVB-T2 Base signal is according to requirements in ETSI EN 302 755 [19] version 1.2.1 or later.

Note 5: The scrambling of the L1-post signalling was not included in versions prior to V1.3.1 of the DVB-T2 specification (ETSI EN 302 755 [19] section 7.3.2.1), therefore it should not be enabled in areas where the signal is expected to be demodulated by IRDs built according to the earlier versions of the DVB-T2 specification AND NorDig Rules of Operation [61] recommend **against** use of this in transmission unless Operators are sure of support in all active IRDs at the viewers

~~The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** automatically detect which mode is being used.~~

### 3.4.4 Reception quality/Tuning/Scanning Procedures

#### 3.4.4.1 General

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** provide a scanning procedure over the whole (supported) frequency range.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to provide reception quality information for a selected received frequency according to section 3.4.4.2 (Status check: Basic).

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should be able to provide reception quality information for a selected received frequency according to section 3.4.4.3 (Status check: Advanced).

#### 3.4.4.2 Status check: Basic

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** provide at least a basic status check function (accessible through the Navigator) that presents reception quality information for a selected frequency (currently viewed by the user).

The basic status check **shall** include:

- channel id, according to Annex B.2
- centre frequency
- Signal Strength Indicator, SSI (%), according to section 3.4.4.6
- Signal Quality Indicator, SQI (%), according to section 3.4.4.7

The basic status check values **shall** be updated regularly.

An end-user antenna installation should be made easier by providing an overall view of reception quality according to section 3.4.4.2 (Status check: Basic) for all installed multiplexes (frequencies) or enable the end-user to change the installed multiplexes (frequencies) easily. Reception quality information should be updated cyclically until this mode is exited.

#### 3.4.4.3 Status check: Advanced

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should provide an advanced status check function (accessible through the Navigator) that presents the following information:

- channel id, according to Annex B.2
- centre frequency
- signal strength (dBm or dBµV)
- signal strength indicator, SSI (%), according to section 3.4.4.6
- signal quality indicator, SQI (%), according to section 3.4.4.7
- C/N (dB)
- BER before Reed Solomon decoding (DVB-T) or BCH decoding (DVB-T2)
- Uncorrected packets

The integration time for the BER and uncorrected packets calculations **shall** be a period of 1 second.

In addition, it is recommended that the following information can be presented for the received frequency, transport stream and service:

- DVB-T/T2 mode
- transport stream id
- original network id
- network id
- service id
- T2 system id (for DVB-T2 signals)
- PLP id (for DVB-T2 signals)

The advanced status check values **shall** be updated regularly (e.g. every second).

#### 3.4.4.4 Installation mode: Automatic Search, best service

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** provide an automatic search that finds all of the multiplexes and services in the whole (supported) frequency range, see section 3.4.2. The logic of the automatic search function shall be as follows:

- If any services are detected during the automatic search the current service list **shall** be replaced by the new service list.
- If no services are detected during the automatic search the current service list **shall** be kept or deleted.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** only display a service once in the service list (i.e. avoiding duplicate of the same services), even if the same service[1] (same triplet original_network_id, transport_stream_id and service_id) is received from multiple transmitters. If the same service can be received from several transmitters, the one with best reception quality **shall** be selected. The criteria for selection of the best received service (i.e. best reception quality) **shall** be based on the combination of the signal strength and signal quality according to sections 3.4.4.6 and 3.4.4.7. An example of a possible selection algorithm is described in Annex D.

It is recommended that the complete search function takes less than 5 minutes (at a reception location providing maximum 10 receivable DVB-T/T2 RF channels).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | In order to speed up the automatic channel search with a reception quality measurement, an approach with an automatic gain controller (AGC) based DVB-T/T2 signal detection can be implemented. The IRD implementation may sweep all the supported frequencies by detecting if there exists an RF signal by analyzing the AGC. After the sweep the IRD analyses only the frequencies where the AGC reported an RF signal present and verifies if the signal is a DVB-T/T2 signal. In case of DVB-T/T2 signal reception quality is measured. |

#### 3.4.4.5 Installation mode: Manual Search

In addition to the automatic search, it **shall** be possible to perform a manual search where the channel id (or frequency) is entered by the end user. The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** tune to this channel, search all available DVB-T modes, add all new services and replace existing equal services (same triplet original_network_id, transport_stream_id and service_id) in the service list (without considering any quality criteria).

It is recommended that the graphical interface for the manual search **shall** make it easy for the end-user to perform consecutive manual searches.

The IRD should not override installed service parameters for a service stored in the manual search by a "quasi-static" (automatic) update. E.g., if an end-user has performed manual search for a frequency, the stored frequency in the manual search should not be overwritten by a "quasi-static" (automatic) update procedure.

#### 3.4.4.6 Requirements for the signal strength indicator (SSI)

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be provided with a signal strength indicator (SSI). The value for the SSI **shall** be referred to the IRD RF signal input.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to determine signal strength within a range starting from 15 dB lower than the reference signal level defined in Table 3.6 and up to 35dB above that value or maximum signal input level defined in section 3.4.10.5.

The absolute accuracy **shall** be ±5 dB at RF signal input levels -80 dBm to -60 dBm and ±7 dB for RF signal input levels higher than -60 dBm.

The relative accuracy should be ±3 dB between centre frequencies within one frequency band, e.g. VHF Band III or UHF Band IV/V, supported by the receiver.

---

[1] A service is uniquely identified by its DVB triplet (original_network_id, transport_stream_id and service_id) in all NorDig compliant terrestrial networks, except for the Norwegian terrestrial network, where only original_network_id and service_id is used to identify a service.

The signal strength indicator **shall** have a relative value within a range from 0% to 100% and with a resolution of 1%. The signal strength indicator **shall** be updated regularly once per second.

The formulas to calculate the signal strength indicator (SSI) value in [%] are defined below.

See also Annex E: Implementation Guidelines for best service selection in automatic channel search

| | |
|---|---|
| $SSI = 0$ | if $P_{rel} < -15dB$ |
| $SSI = (2/3) * (P_{rel} + 15)$ | if $-15\ dB \leq P_{rel} < 0dB$ |
| $SSI = 4 * P_{rel} + 10$ | if $0\ dB \leq P_{rel} < 20\ dB$ |
| $SSI = (2/3) * (P_{rel} - 20) + 90$ | if $20\ dB \leq P_{rel} < 35\ dB$ |
| $SSI = 100$ | if $P_{rel} \geq 35\ dB$ |

where

$P_{rel} = P_{rec} - P_{ref}$

$P_{rec}$ is referred to signal level expressed in [dBm] at receiver RF signal input.

$P_{ref}$ is reference signal level value expressed in [dBm] specified in Table 3.6 for DVB-T and in Table 3.7for DVB-T2.

| Modulation | Code Rate | Reference signal level [dBm] |
|---|---|---|
| QPSK | ½ | -93 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | -91 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | -90 |
| QPSK | 5/6 | -89 |
| QPSK | 7/8 | -88 |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | -87 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | -85 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | -84 |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | -83 |
| 16-QAM | 7/8 | -82 |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | -82 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | -80 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | -78 |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | -77 |
| 64-QAM | 7/8 | -76 |

*Table 3.6 Specified Pref values expressed in dBm for all signal bandwidths, guard intervals and FFT for DVB-T signals.*

| Modulation | Code Rate | Reference signal level [dBm] |
|---|---|---|
| QPSK | 1/2 | -96 |
| QPSK | 3/5 | -95 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | -94 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | -93 |
| QPSK | 4/5 | -92 |
| QPSK | 5/6 | -92 |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | -91 |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 16-QAM | 3/5 | -89 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | -88 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | -87 |
| 16-QAM | 4/5 | -86 |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | -86 |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | -86 |
| 64-QAM | 3/5 | -85 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | -83 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | -82 |
| 64-QAM | 4/5 | -81 |
| Modulation | Code Rate | Reference signal level [dBm] |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | -80 |
| 256-QAM | 1/2 | -82 |
| 256-QAM | 3/5 | -80 |
| 256-QAM | 2/3 | -78 |
| 256-QAM | 3/4 | -76 |
| 256-QAM | 4/5 | -75 |
| 256-QAM | 5/6 | -74 |

*Table 3.7 Specified Pref values expressed in dBm for a PLP, all signal bandwidths, guard intervals and 32k FFT for DVB-T2 signals.*

#### 3.4.4.7 Requirements for the signal quality indicator (SQI)

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be provided with a signal quality indicator (SQI). For *DVB-T signals* the value for the SQI **shall** be referred to the NorDig IRD RF signal input. For *DVB-T2 signals* the value for the SQI **shall** be referred to a PLP in the received signal at the NorDig IRD RF signal input.

The absolute accuracy of the C/N value **shall** be of ±1dB for C/N values of 17 dB to 27 dB at the IRD RF signal input.

The signal quality indicator **shall** have a relative value within a range from 0% to 100% and with a resolution of 1%.

The integration time for the signal quality **shall** be over a period of 5 seconds.

The signal quality indicator **shall** be updated regularly once per second.

For *DVB-T signals* the signal quality indicator (SQI) in [%] **shall** be calculated according to the following formulas.

$SQI = 0$ if $C/N_{rel} < -7$ dB

$SQI = (((C/N_{rel} - 3)/10) + 1) * BER\_SQI$ if $-7 \text{ dB} \leq C/N_{rel} < +3$ dB

$SQI = BER\_SQI$ if $C/N_{rel} \geq +3$ dB

where

$C/N_{rel}$ is DVB-T mode depended of the relative C/N of the received signal value in [dB]

and

$C/N_{rel} = C/N_{rec} - C/N_{NordigP1}$

where

$C/N_{NordigP1}$ is the required C/N value in [dB] for the non-hierarchical DVB-T mode in profile 1 defined in Table 3.10 for the hierarchical DVB-T modes, required C/N value in [dB] is specified in Annex B-3, Tables 1 and 2.

$C/N_{rec}$ is the C/N value in [dB] of the received signal

BER_SQI is calculated with the formula

| | |
|---|---|
| BER_SQI = 0 | if BER $>10^{-3}$ |
| BER_SQI = $20*LOG_{10}(1/BER)-40$ | if $10^{-7} < BER \leq 10^{-3}$ |
| BER_SQI = 100 | if BER $\leq 10^{-7}$ |

where

BER is referenced to Bit Error rate after Viterbi and before Reed Solomon decoding.

The integration time for the BER_SQI calculation **shall** be over a period of 5 seconds.

For *DVB-T signals* the signal quality indicator (SQI) in [%] **shall** be calculated for the received PLP according to the following formulas.

| | |
|---|---|
| SQI = 0 | if $C/N_{rel} < -3$ dB |
| SQI = $(C/N_{rel} +3) * BER\_SQI$ | if $-3$ dB $\leq C/N_{rel} \leq 3$ dB |
| SQI = 100 | if $C/N_{rel} > 3$ dB |

where

$C/N_{rel}$ is DVB-T2 mode depended of the relative C/N of the received signal value in [dB]

and

$C/N_{rel} = C/N_{rec} - C/N_{NordigP1}$

where

$C/N_{rec}$ is the C/N value expressed in [dB] for the entire received DVB-T2 signal.

$C/N_{NordigP1}$ is the required C/N value in [dB] for the received PLP in DVB-T2 mode independently of the pilot pattern in profile 1 defined in Table 3.11.

BER_SQI is calculated with the formula.

| | |
|---|---|
| BER_SQI = 0 | if BER $> 10^{-4}$ |
| BER_SQI = (100/15) | if $10^{-7} \leq BER \leq 10^{-4}$ |
| BER_SQI = (100/6) | if BER $< 10^{-7}$ |

where

BER is referenced to Bit Error rate before BCH for the received PLP.

The integration time for the BER calculation **shall** be over a period of 5 seconds.

### 3.4.5 Changes In Modulation Parameters

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should recover from changes in modulation parameters at the end of a superframe without a break in the received DVB-T signal and output an error free TS. This should take less than one second for any change. The terrestrial NorDig IRD should be able to detect a change of

modulation parameters signalled in the TPS data of the DVB-T signal, in order to reduce the recovery time.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should recover from changes in modulation parameters occurring at any time followed by a break in the received DVB-T signal and output an error free TS. This should take less than four seconds for any change.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** automatically recover from changes in the following P1, L1 pre-signalling data and L1 post-signalling parameters at the end of a superframe without a break in the received DVB-T2 signal. An error-free TS **shall** be available within five seconds for any P1 and/or L1 pre-signalling change. An error-free TS **shall** be output within five seconds for any L1 post-signalling FEF change and within two seconds for any other L1 post-signalling change.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** automatically recover from changes in the following P1, L1 pre-signalling and L1 post-signalling parameters occurring at any time followed by a break in the received signal. An error-free TS **shall** be output within five seconds.

- FFT size
- Bandwidth extension
- Pilot pattern
- Guard interval
- PAPR
- Lf / number of blocks
- Code rate
- Modulation.
- PLP id in case of single PLP,
- T2 System id,
- Cell id
- DVB-T2 version
- adding and/or removing FEF and/or changing proportion FEF length of total frame
- Rotated constellation
- Time interleaving length

The time limits in this clause exclude the time for the DVB-T/T2 modulator to output a stable and valid signal.

Note: The above requirements do not imply that all types of terrestrial IRDs have to make use of or store all of the above listed parameters. For example, some of the parameters are more relevant for IRDs supporting mobile hand-over functionality. Recovery from changes in un-used parameter(s) can mean that the IRD may ignore that parameter change.

### 3.4.6 RF Input Connector

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** have one input tuner connector, type: IEC female in accordance with IEC 61169-2 [37]. The input impedance **shall** be 75ohm.

The RF input should support DC power to an external antenna with amplifier. This **shall** not degrade to the performance of the RF input characteristics. The DC power supply **shall** be protected against short circuit. Furthermore, there **shall** be an alternative in the menu system to turn the DC power supply source on/off. The last known state of the DC power supply source **shall** be set in the terrestrial NorDig IRD power up. In the first time initialisation and resetting to factory default settings, the DC power supply **shall** be switched off, see chapter 16.4.

If end-user has set state of the DC power supply to on, the terrestrial NorDig STB supporting RF loop-through **shall** maintain that state on even when receiver is turned off to standby.

The DC power supply characteristics are specified in Table 3.8.

| Parameter | Value |
|---|---|
| Voltage in ON state | +5.0VDC |
| Voltage tolerance | ±0.2VDC |
| Maximum load current | 30mA |
| Maximum load capacitance | 100µF |
| Minimum resistance in OFF state | 47kΩ |
| Protection for externally applied voltages | ±15VDC |

*Table 3.8 RF input connector DC power supply characteristics.*

### 3.4.7 RF Output Connector (option)

For a terrestrial NorDig IRD equipped with a RF bypass ($RF_{in}$ - $RF_{out}$), the connector **shall** be of type: IEC male in accordance with IEC 61169-2 [37].

The frequency range for the RF bypass should be from 47 MHz to 862 MHz (or 47MHz to 694MHz).

The RF signals should be passed from $RF_{in}$ to $RF_{out}$ independently from the status of the terrestrial NorDig IRD (operational or stand by), so that connected equipment (e.g. TV set) can operate even if the terrestrial NorDig IRD is in stand by.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD, when equipped with RF bypass, **shall** (1) include user setting to disable or enable the RF bypass gain in standby mode, see section 16.4 for factory default setting for this. When the RF bypass attenuation is disabled, the maximum RF bypass gain should be -4dB and when the RF bypass gain is enabled, the RF bypass gain should be from –1 dB to +3 dB.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: User setting is to distribute RF signal through the loop-through without attenuating the RF signal significantly. |

### 3.4.8 Time Interleaving

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** at least include time interleaving capability corresponding to the maximum time interleaving according to EN 302 755 [19], i.e. $2^{19}+2^{15}$ OFDM cells for a data PLP and its common PLP together.

### 3.4.9 Input/Output Data Formats

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to support TS bit rates ≤ 72 Mbit/s.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | The maximum total input bitrate to the DVB-T2 system (considering the sum of all input streams) is therefore 72Mbit/s * 255. Thanks to the null packet deletion process most of this data is, however removed before transmission. The maximum input bit rate in terms of payload, taken over all input streams is limited by the T2 transmission capacity. |

### 3.4.10 Performance

#### 3.4.10.1 General

A wide set of performance requirements is defined for a limited set of DVB-T2 modes, see Table 3.9. A more limited set of performance requirements is defined for a wider set of DVB-T2 modes, as specified elsewhere in this section 3.4.10.

| Note: | The following performance requirements for DVB-T2 are based on computer simulations plus a reasonable implementation margin. The specified performance figures will be reviewed for a future update of this specification, when more information about realistic receiver performance is available from laboratory and field tests. The review may result in modifications of the specified figures and in additional requirements. |
|---|---|

| | **VHF III 7MHz SFN** | | | | | | | **VHF III 7MHz MFN** | | | **UHF 8MHz SFN** | | | | | **UHF 8MHz MFN** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Transmission mode** | 32K normal | | | | | | | 32K normal | | | 32K extended | | | | | 32K extended | |
| **Constellation** | 256-QAM rotated | | | | | | | 256-QAM rotated | | | 256-QAM rotated | | | | | 256-QAM rotated | |
| **Code rate** | 3/5 | 2/3 | 3/4 | 3/5 | 2/3 | 2/3 | 3/4 | 3/5 | 2/3 | 3/4 | 3/4 | 3/5 | 3/5 | 2/3 | 3/5 | 2/3 | 3/4 |
| **Guard interval** | 1/8<br>1/16 | 1/8<br>1/16 | 1/8<br>1/16 | 1/16<br>1/32 | 1/16<br>1/32 | 19/256 | 1/16<br>1/32 | 1/128 | 1/128 | 1/128 | 1/8 | 1/16<br>1/32 | 19/256 | 1/16<br>1/32 | 1/32 | 1/128 | 1/128 |
| **Pilot Pattern** | PP2 | | | PP4 | | | | PP7 | | | PP2 | PP4 | | | PP6 | PP7 | |
| **PAPR** | TR-PAPR | | | | | | | TR-PAPR | | | TR-PAPR | | | | | TR-PAPR | |
| **SISO/MISO** | SISO | | | | | | | SISO | | | SISO | | | | | SISO | |
| **FEC Frame length** | 64800 | | | | | | | 64800 | | | 64800 | | | | | 64800 | |
| **Input mode** | Mode A | | | | | | | Mode A | | | Mode A | | | | | Mode A | |
| **TFS** | No | | | | | | | No | | | No | | | | | No | |
| **Normal mode (NM)/high efficiency mode (HEM)** | HEM | | | | | | | HEM | | | HEM | | | | | HEM | |
| **FEF** | Not used | | | | | | | Not used | | | Not used | | | | | Not used | |
| **Auxiliary streams** | Not used | | | | | | | Not used | | | Not used | | | | | Not used | |

*Table 3.9 A limited set of DVB-T2 modes for performance requirements (see note above).*

#### 3.4.10.2 Definitions

The performance requirements used in this section (3.4.10) are referring to the QEF definition provided in EN 300 744, where Quasi Error Free (QEF) means less than one uncorrected error event per hour. This requirement corresponds to BER = $10^{-11}$ at the input of the MPEG-2 demultiplexer.

The performance refers to the entire frequency range (see section 3.4.2).

*The carrier-to-noise (C/N) ratio in Table 3.10(DVB-T) and Table 3.11 (DVB-T2), and minimum receiver signal input level (Pmin) values in Table 3.13 (DVB-T) and Table 3.14Table 3.14 Examples of minimum DVB-T2 signal input levels (Pmin) for QEF reception at TS output (with 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 32K, Extended bandwidth for UHF) for profiles 1 and 2. For 1.7 MHz modes the Pmin figures refer to 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 8K with Normal bandwidth (3).*

(DVB-T2) are specified for two profiles:

Profile 1: Gaussian noise (N) is applied together with the wanted carrier (C) in a signal bandwidth of a DVB-T or DVB-T2signal. No echo is applied.

Profile 2: The wanted signal (C) includes the direct path signal and an echo. The echo has the same power (0 dB echo) as the direct path signal and is delayed from 1.95 µs to 0.95 times the guard interval length and has 0 degree phase at the channel center.

#### 3.4.10.3 C/N Performance

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** have at least the QEF performance for the C/N ratios given in, Table 3.10(DVB-T) and Table 3.11(DVB-T2).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | For DVB-T2 the required C/N for QEF and for error-free video are expected to be virtually identical due to the sharp waterfall characteristic of the LDPC+BCH decoding. |

The C/N figures in Table 3.11(DVB-T2) are derived as follows:

$C/N = (C/N)_{RAW} + A + B + C + D$ [dB], where

- $(C/N)_{RAW}$ = Required raw C/N for BER=$10^{-6}$ after BCH decoding, according to Annex E
- A = 0.1dB assumed additional C/N to achieve the BER=$10^{-7}$ before BCH decoding (assumed QEF transport stream after BCH decoding)
- B = correction for pilot boosting as defined in [66]
- C = 2.0 dB (PP1-PP2), 1.5 dB (PP3-PP4), 1.0 dB (PP5-PP8). Assumed C/N loss due to real channel estimation, imperfect LDPC decoding and other imperfections not considered part of the back-stop noise.
- D = additional C/N term corresponding to a back-stop noise level at -33 dBc. This term is derived by first calculating the sum of all terms, except D, and then check how much C/N degradation is caused by the -33 dBc backstop noise level. The term D is identical to this degradation. It should be noted that a change of pilot pattern from e.g. PP4 to PP2, which increases C from 1.5 dB to 2.0 dB, will also cause a slight increase of D.

For all other DVB modes the terrestrial NorDig IRD -T2 **shall** fulfil C/N requirements accordingly, based on this calculation scheme.

| |
|---|
| Note: The scheme above defines the required C/N for *all possible T2 configurations.* The C/N figures found in Table 3.10 Maximum required C/N for QEF reception at TS output for DVB-T signals (with 1/4 guard interval and FFT size 8K) for profiles 1 and 2 and minimum power level figures found in Table 3.13 are only examples, applicable for a particular configuration. Changing pilot pattern from PP2 to something else will e.g. normally result in a change of required C/N and $P_{min}$. |

| | | **C/N performance (dB)** | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Modulation** | **Code rate** | **Profile 1 : Gaussian** | **Profile 2 : 0 dB echo** |
| QPSK | 1/2 | 5.1 | 8.8 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | 6.9 | 13.7 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | 7.9 | 17.4 |
| QPSK | 5/6 | 8.9 | - |
| QPSK | 7/8 | 9.7 | - |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | 10.8 | 13.3 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | 13.1 | 17.9 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | 14.6 | 22.1 |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | 15.6 | - |
| 16-QAM | 7/8 | 16.0 | - |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | 16.5 | 19.0 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | 18.7 | 23.2 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | 20.2 | 27.6 |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | 21.6 | - |
| 64-QAM | 7/8 | 22.5 | - |

*Table 3.10 Maximum required C/N for QEF reception at TS output for DVB-T signals (with 1/4 guard interval and FFT size 8K) for profiles 1 and 2*

| | | C/N performance (dB) | |
|---|---|---|---|
| Modulation | Code rate | Profile 1 : Gaussian | Profile 2 : 0 dB echo |
| QPSK | 1/2 | 3.5 | 5.2 |
| QPSK | 3/5 | 4.7 | 6.8 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | 5.6 | 8.4 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | 6.6 | 9.8 |
| QPSK | 4/5 | 7.2 | - |
| QPSK | 5/6 | 7.7 | - |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | 8.7 | 10.9 |
| 16-QAM | 3/5 | 10.1 | 12.7 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | 11.4 | 14.3 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | 12.5 | 16.3 |
| 16-QAM | 4/5 | 13.3 | - |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | 13.8 | - |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | 13.0 | 16.0 |
| 64-QAM | 3/5 | 14.8 | 18.0 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | 16.2 | 19.7 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | 17.7 | 22.0 |
| 64-QAM | 4/5 | 18.7 | - |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | 19.4 | - |
| 256-QAM | 1/2 | 17.0 | 20.6 |
| 256-QAM | 3/5 | 19.4 | 23.1 |
| 256-QAM | 2/3 | 20.8 | 25.1 |
| 256-QAM | 3/4 | 22.9 | 28.0 |
| 256-QAM | 4/5 | 24.3 | - |
| 256-QAM | 5/6 | 25.1 | - |

*Table 3.11 Example of maximum required C/N for QEF reception at TS output for DVB-T2 signals (with 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 32K) for profiles 1 and 2. For 1.7 MHz modes the C/N figures refer to 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 8K with Normal bandwidth.*

The required C/N, as defined above in Table 3.11 (DVB-T2), applies generally for Input Mode A (single PLP) and Input Mode B (multiple PLPs), including TFS (using 2-6 frequencies). For TFS, the level of all RF channels involved, are identical. For TFS, the 0 dB echo profile is also identical on all RF channels.

Note: Performance requirements for TFS modes with unequal levels and with other channel profiles may be defined in a later release of this specification.

#### 3.4.10.4 Minimum Receiver Signal Input Levels

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** have a noise figure (NF) for supported frequency ranges equal or better than the values in Table 3.12.

Note: The terrestrial NorDig IRD noise figure refers to the noise figure of the complete receiver. In case of RF-loop-through the tuner NF will have to be somewhat better than the resulting terrestrial NorDig IRD noise figure because of the attenuation of the RF-loop-through path.

| | **Band** | **Noise Figure (NF)** |
|---|---|---|
| **VHF** | S Band I | 10 dB |
| | VHF III | 6 dB (1, 2) |
| | S Band II | 10 dB |
| **UHF** | S Band III | 10 dB |
| | UHF IV | 6 dB (2) |
| | UHF V | 6 dB (2) |

*Table 3.12 Maximum noise figures for the terrestrial NorDig IRD.*

Note 1: If 1.7 MHz bandwidth is supported (i.e. VHF band III) the NF **shall** be equal or better than 7 dB.
Note 2: For DVB-T signals (EN 300 744 [18]) the NF **shall** be equal or better than 7 dB.
Comment: Thanks to the much better robustness of DVB-T2 (compared to DVB-T) against impulsive interference an improvement in noise figure is likely to have a much more positive effect on coverage with DVB-T2 than with DVB-T.

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** provide QEF reception for the minimum signal levels ($P_{min}$) for the supported frequency range as stated below (at 290K).

For 7 MHz Normal Bandwidth DVB-T/signal: $P_{min}$ = -105.7 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB], and

For 8 MHz Normal Bandwidth DVB-T/T2signal: $P_{min}$ = -105.2 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB] and

For 1.7 MHz Normal Bandwidth DVB-T2 signal: $P_{min}$ = -112.1 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB], and

For 7 MHz Extended Bandwidth DVB-T2 signal: $P_{min}$ = -105.7 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB], and

For 8 MHz Extended Bandwidth DVB-T2 signal: $P_{min}$ = -105.1 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB], and

For 1.7 MHz Extended Bandwidth DVB-T2 signal: $P_{min}$ = -112.1 dBm+NF [dB]+ C/N [dB],

where

$P_{min}$ values are listed in Table 3.13(DVB-T) and examples of $P_{min}$ values are listed in Table 3.14 (DVB-T2) below as calculated from the equations above together with NF values in Table 3.12 plus C/N values in Table 3.10 (DVB-T) and Table 3.11 (DVB-T2). The values in Table 3.14 show the required $P_{min}$ values

after 2011. For all other DVB-T2 modes the terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** fulfil $P_{min}$ requirements accordingly, based on the formulas above.

| | | Minimum input level (dBm) | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Profile 1: Gaussian | | | | Profile 2: 0 dB echo | |
| Frequency band | | VHF Band III | VHF S Band I & II | VHF S Band I & II and UHF S Band III | UHF Band IV&V | VHF Band III | UHF Band IV&V |
| Modulation | Code Rate | 7 MHz signal | 7 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal | 7 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal |
| QPSK | ½ | -93.6 | -90.6 | -90.1 | -93.1 | -89.9 | -89.4 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | -91.8 | -88.8 | -88.3 | -91.3 | -85.0 | -84.5 |
| QPSK | ¾ | -90.8 | -87.8 | -87.3 | -90.3 | -81.3 | -80.8 |
| QPSK | 5/6 | -89.8 | -86.8 | -86.3 | -89.3 | - | - |
| QPSK | 7/8 | -89.0 | -86.0 | -85.5 | -88.5 | - | - |
| 16-QAM | ½ | -87.9 | -84.9 | -84.4 | -87.4 | -85.4 | -84.9 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | -85.6 | -82.6 | -82.1 | -85.1 | -80.8 | -80.3 |
| 16-QAM | ¾ | -84.1 | -81.1 | -80.6 | -83.6 | -76.6 | -76.1 |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | -83.1 | -80.1 | -79.6 | -82.6 | - | - |
| 16-QAM | 7/8 | -82.7 | -79.7 | -79.2 | -82.2 | - | - |
| 64-QAM | ½ | -82.2 | -79.2 | -78.7 | -81.7 | -79.7 | -79.2 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | -80.0 | -77.0 | -76.5 | -79.5 | -75.5 | -75.0 |
| 64-QAM | ¾ | -78.5 | -75.5 | -75.0 | -78.0 | -71.1 | -70.6 |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | -77.1 | -74.1 | -73.6 | -76.6 | - | - |
| 64-QAM | 7/8 | -76.2 | -73.2 | -72.7 | -75.7 | - | - |

*Table 3.13 Minimum DVB-T signal input levels ($P_{min}$) for QEF reception at TS output (with 1/4 guard interval and FFT size 8K) for profiles 1 and 2.*

| | | Minimum input level (dBm) | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Profile 1: Gaussian | | | | | Profile 2: 0 dB echo | | |
| Frequency band | | VHF Band III | | VHF S Band I & II | VHF S Band I & II and UHF S Band III | UHF Band IV&V | VHF Band III | | UHF Band IV&V |
| Modulation | Code Rate | 1.7 MHz signal | 7 MHz signal | 7 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal | 1.7 MHz signal | 7 MHz signal | 8 MHz signal |
| QPSK | 1/2 | -101.6 | -96.2 | -92.2 | -91.6 | -95.6 | -99.9 | -94.5 | -93.9 |
| QPSK | 3/5 | -100.4 | -95.0 | -91.0 | -90.4 | -94.4 | -98.3 | -92.9 | -92.3 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | -99.5 | -94.1 | -90.1 | -89.5 | -93.5 | -96.7 | -91.3 | -90.7 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | -98.5 | -93.1 | -89.1 | -88.5 | -92.5 | -95.3 | -89.9 | -89.3 |
| QPSK | 4/5 | -97.9 | -92.5 | -88.5 | -87.9 | -91.9 | - | - | - |
| QPSK | 5/6 | -97.4 | -92.0 | -88.0 | -87.4 | -91.4 | - | - | - |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | -96.4 | -91.0 | -87.0 | -86.4 | -90.4 | -94.2 | -88.8 | -88.2 |
| 16-QAM | 3/5 | -95.0 | -89.6 | -85.6 | -85.0 | -89.0 | -92.4 | -87.0 | -86.4 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | -93.7 | -88.3 | -84.3 | -83.7 | -87.7 | -90.8 | -85.4 | -84.8 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | -92.6 | -87.2 | -83.2 | -82.6 | -86.6 | -88.8 | -83.4 | -82.8 |
| 16-QAM | 4/5 | -91.8 | -86.4 | -82.4 | -81.8 | -85.8 | - | - | - |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | -91.3 | -85.9 | -81.9 | -81.3 | -85.3 | - | - | - |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | -92.1 | -86.7 | -82.7 | -82.1 | -86.1 | -89.1 | -83.7 | -83.1 |
| 64-QAM | 3/5 | -90.3 | -84.9 | -80.9 | -80.3 | -84.3 | -87.1 | -81.7 | -81.1 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | -88.9 | -83.5 | -79.5 | -78.9 | -82.9 | -85.4 | -80.0 | -79.4 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | -87.4 | -82.0 | -78.0 | -77.4 | -81.4 | -83.1 | -77.7 | -77.1 |
| 64-QAM | 4/5 | -86.4 | -81.0 | -77.0 | -76.4 | -80.4 | - | - | - |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | -85.7 | -80.3 | -76.3 | -75.7 | -79.7 | - | - | - |
| 256-QAM | 1/2 | -88.1 | -82.7 | -78.7 | -78.1 | -82.1 | -84.5 | -79.1 | -78.5 |
| 256-QAM | 3/5 | -85.7 | -80.3 | -76.3 | -75.7 | -79.7 | -82.0 | -76.6 | -76.0 |
| 256-QAM | 2/3 | -84.3 | -78.9 | -74.9 | -74.3 | -78.3 | -80.0 | -74.6 | -74.0 |
| 256-QAM | ¾ | -82.2 | -76.8 | -72.8 | -72.2 | -76.2 | -77.2 | -71.7 | -71.1 |
| 256-QAM | 4/5 | -80.8 | -75.4 | -71.4 | -70.8 | -74.8 | - | - | - |
| 256-QAM | 5/6 | -80.0 | -74.6 | -70.6 | -70.0 | -74.0 | - | - | - |

*Table 3.14 Examples of minimum DVB-T2 signal input levels ($P_{min}$) for QEF reception at TS output (with 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 32K, Extended bandwidth for UHF) for profiles 1 and 2. For 1.7 MHz modes the $P_{min}$ figures refer to 1/8 guard interval, PP2 and FFT size 8K with Normal bandwidth (3).*

The required $P_{min}$ values **shall** apply generally for Mode A and Mode B, including TFS (4), when supported.

For TFS, the levels of all RF channels involved are identical. For TFS, the 0 dB echo profile is also identical on all RF channels.

Note 3: The $P_{min}$ values for 1.7 MHz have been calculated using a NF of 7dB (See note 1 to Table 3.12)

Note 4: Performance requirements for TFS modes with unequal levels and with other channel profiles may be defined in a later release of this specification.

#### 3.4.10.5 Maximum Receiver Signal Input Levels

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** provide QEF reception for DVB-T and DVB-T2 signals up to a level of –35dBm.

The DVB-T signal input level is valid for the modes {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/8}, {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/4} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, Δ/Tu =1/4}.

The DVB-T2 signal input level is valid for the modes shown in Table 3.9.

#### 3.4.10.6 Immunity to DVB-T/-T2 signals in Other Channels

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall**, for the supported frequency ranges, permit an interfering DVB-T signal with a minimum interference to signal level ratio (I/C) as stated in the Table 3.15 while maintaining QEF reception.

| Band | Signal Bandwidth MHz | Channel frequency raster MHz | Minimum I/C (dB) | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | Adjacent channels | Other Channels | Image channel |
| VHF S Band I | 7 | 7 | 20 | 25 | - |
| | 8 | 8 | 20 | 25 | - |
| VHF III | 7 | 7 | 28 | 38 | - |
| | 8 | 8 | 28 | 38 | - |
| VHF S Band II | 7 | 7 | 20 | 25 | - |
| | 8 | 8 | 20 | 25 | - |
| UHF S Band III | 8 | 8 | 20 | 25 | - |
| UHF IV | 8 | 8 | 28 | 38 | 28 |
| UHF V | 8 | 8 | 28 | 38 | 28 |

*Table 3.15 Minimum required I/C for QEF reception with interfering DVB-T/T2 signal on the adjacent, other and image channels.*

The requirements in this paragraph refer, for DVB-T, to the modes {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/8} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/4} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, Δ/Tu =1/4} and for DVB-T2 to the modes given in Table 3.9.

#### 3.4.10.7 Immunity to 700MHz LTE signals in Other Channels

##### 3.4.10.7.1 *General about Immunity to 700MHz and 800MHz LTE signals*

*In many European countries frequency range from 694 MHz to 790 MHz and 790 MHz to 862 MHz, is or will be used for "700MHz" and "800MHz" mobile services (in the ~~passed~~ past these bands was used for terrestrial TV broadcasting).*

*Today mobile telephone network operators use the LTE technology for 4G (or later technologies like 5G) mobile telephone systems on in the "700MHz" and "800MHz" frequency range.*

*For the 700MHz band, the frequency range from 703 MHz to 733 MHz is used for transmission from user equipment (UE) and the frequency range from 758 MHz to 788 MHz is used for transmission from base station (BS). In the duplex frequency gap between up- and downlink, some nations may in additions use transmission of Supplemental Downlink (SDL). Allocated frequency ranges are divided into 5MHz blocks, but most common implementation is expected to use 2 x 5 MHz block and is therefore using 10 MHz system bandwidth of LTE signal. Frequency allocation for 10 MHz block is illustrated in figure below.*

*More informative for the 800MHz band the frequency range from 791 MHz to 821 MHz is used in LTE system for transmission from base station (BS) and frequency range from 832 MHz to 862 MHz is used for transmission from user equipment (UE). Allocated frequency ranges are divided into 5MHz blocks, but most common implementation is expected to use 2 x 5 MHz block and is therefore using 10 MHz system bandwidth of LTE signal. Frequency allocation for the Frequency Division Duplex (FDD) arrangement is illustrated in figure below:*

.

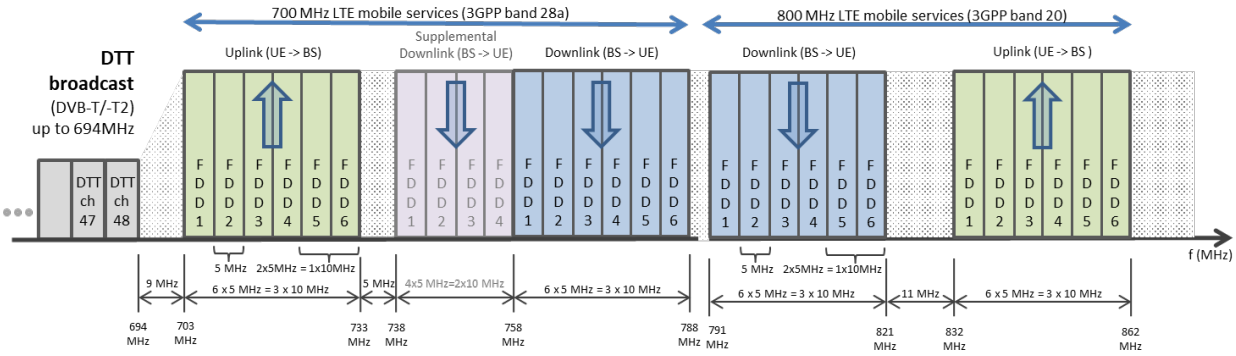



*Figure 3.2 Illustration of "700MHz" and "800MHz" LTE mobile communication network services frequency use (3GPP band 28a and band 20).*

*The EU Directive 2014/53/EU (RED) requires in article 3.2 that: "Radio equipment shall be so constructed that it both effectively uses and supports the efficient use of radio spectrum in order to avoid harmful interference". Requirements on the broadcast receivers are specified in the ETSI Harmonized European Standard EN 303 340).*

*The ETSI standard is limited to requirements only for the first adjacent selectivity channel in case of LTE interference, while NorDig adds requirements for the IRD's whole operating frequency range, supplemental downlink and for some cases slightly stricter. But in addition to NorDig the ETSI standard also includes blocking and overloading.*

#### 3.4.10.7.2 Immunity to 700MHz LTE signals in Other Channels

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** for the supported frequency ranges, permit an interfering 4G (LTE) "700MHz" signal with a minimum interference to signal level ratio (I/C) as stated in the Table 3.17 below while maintaining QEF reception.

The power of the interfering LTE signal, both BS and UE, varies with a traffic load and traffic type. The signal power of the LTE signal is defined as the power during the active part of the time varying LTE signal, referred to as the licensed power level (I).

The I/C values **shall** be fulfilled for LTE signals with traffic loads from 0% to 100 % (BS) and for traffic loads from low bit rate to high bit rate (UE). Low traffic loads can be the most demanding ones. The minimum I/C requirement **shall** be fulfilled for -25 dBm in case of UE signals and -15dBm in case of BS signals defined as licensed power of interfering signal, at the input of the IRD.

| Band | Channel | DVB-T or DVB-T2 System | Signal Bandwidth and Channel frequency raster (MHz) | Minimum I/C (dB) for terrestrial NorDig IRDs | | | Minimum I/C (dB) for terrestrial NorDig IRDs | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | 10 MHz Uplink, (FDD1&2) | 10 MHz Uplink (FDD3&4, FDD5&6) | 10 MHz Downlink (FDD1&2, FDD3&4, FDD5&6, SDL1&2, SDL3&4) | 10 MHz Uplink, (FDD1&2) | 10 MHz Uplink (FDD3&4, FDD5&6) | 10 MHz Downlink (FDD1&2, FDD3&4, FDD5&6, SDL1&2, SDL3&4) |
| VHF III, | K5-K12 | DVB-T | 7 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 48 | 48 | 48 |
| UHF IV, | K21-K37 | DVB-T | 8 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 48 | 48 | 48 |
| UHF V, | K38-K47 | DVB-T | 8 | 43 | 43 | 46 | 44 | 45 | 48 |
| UHF V, | K48 | DVB-T | 8 | **33** | 43 | 46 | **42** | 45 | 47 |
| VHF III, | K5-K12 | DVB-T2 | 7 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 48 | 48 | 48 |
| UHF IV, | K21-K37 | DVB-T2 | 8 | 46 | 46 | 46 | 48 | 48 | 48 |
| UHF V, | K38-K47 | DVB-T2 | 8 | 43 | 43 | 46 | 44 | 45 | 48 |
| UHF V, | K48 | DVB-T2 | 8 | **38** | 43 | 46 | **42** | 45 | 47 |

*Table 3.16 Minimum required I/C for QEF reception with interfering 700MHz LTE signal on the adjacent and other channels. I/C values are defined for LTE signals having signal bandwidth of 9.015 MHz in 10 MHz LTE system.*

The requirements in this paragraph refer,

for DVB-T, to following modes {FFT size, modulation, code rate, guard interval, bandwidth};

- {FFT=8K, M=64-QAM, CR=2/3, GI =1/8, B=8MHz},
- {FFT=8K, M=64-QAM, CR=2/3, GI =1/4, B=8MHz} and
- {FFT=8K, M=64-QAM, CR=3/4, GI =1/4, B=8MHz}

and for DVB-T2 to the modes {FFT size, modulation, pilot pattern, code rate, guard interval, bandwidth}

- { FFT=32KE, M=256-QAM R, PP=4, CR=2/3, GI =1/16, 8MHz},
- { FFT=32KE, M=256-QAM R, PP=4, CR=3/5, GI =19/256, 8MHz},
- { FFT=32KN, M=256-QAM R, PP=4, CR=2/3, GI =19/256, 7MHz}

*FFT size 32KE refers to FFT size 32k with extended carrier mode, while 32KN refers to FFT size 32k with normal carrier mode. Modulation 256-QAM R refers to 256 QAM with rotated constellation.*

#### 3.4.10.8 Performance In Time-Varying Channels

The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to operate with all signal time variations that naturally exist in connection with fixed roof-top reception (e.g., mast sway, antenna sway) and in-house portable reception (e.g. people walking around the receiving antenna). None of the above-mentioned performance parameters should be significantly negatively affected when such channel time variations exist.

The increase in required C/N for QEF reception **shall**:

- not be higher than 0 dB for a 0dB echo with frequency separation equal to 1 Hz and a delay of a 20µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 0.5 Hz (after AFC), compared to the specified maximum required C/N for profile 2 in Table 3.10.

- be less than 3 dB for a 0 dB echo with frequency separation equal to 20 Hz and a delay of 20 µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 10 Hz (after AFC), compared to a 0 dB echo with frequency separation equal to 1 Hz and a delay of 20 µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 0.5 Hz (after AFC). The requirements in this paragraph refer for DVB-T to the modes {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/8} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/4}.

The increase in required C/N for QEF reception **shall**:

- not be higher than 0 dB for a 0dB echo with frequency separation equal to 1 Hz and a delay of a 20µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 0.5 Hz (after AFC), compared to the specified maximum required C/N for profile 2 in Table 3.10 and Table 3.11.
- be less than 3 dB for a 0 dB echo with frequency separation equal to 10 Hz and a delay of 20 µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 5 Hz (after AFC), compared to a 0 dB echo with frequency separation equal to 1 Hz and a delay of 20 µs, corresponding to a Doppler shift of +/- 0.5 Hz (after AFC). The requirement in this paragraph refer for DVB-T to the mode {8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, Δ/Tu =1/4} and for DVB-T2 to the modes given in Table 3.9 (1). For 1.7 MHz these DVB-T2 modes apply as well, except that the FFT size is 8K.

#### 3.4.10.9 Synchronisation for varying echo power levels in SFN

For the DVB-T modes {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/8}, {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, Δ/Tu =1/4} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, Δ/Tu =1/4}, the required C/N value, specified in Table 3.18 Maximum required C/N for QEF reception with dynamically varying echo power levels using DVB-T.

For the DVB-T2 modes given in Table 3.9, the required C/N value, specified in Table 3.19 below, for QEF reception **shall** be obtained when the channel contains two paths with relative delay from 1.95 µs up to 0.95 times guard interval length and the relative power levels of the two paths are dynamically varying including 0dB echo level crossing. The C/N value is defined at 0 dB level crossing.

| Modulation | Code rate | C/N performance (dB) |
|---|---|---|
| 64QAM | R2/3 | 26.2 |
| 64QAM | R3/4 | 30.6 |

*Table 3.17 Maximum required C/N for QEF reception with dynamically varying echo power levels using DVB-T.*

| Modulation | Code rate | C/N performance (dB) |
|---|---|---|
| 256-QAM | R3/5 | 26.1 |
| 256-QAM | R2/3 | 28.1 |
| 256-QAM | R3/4 | 31.0 |

*Table 3.18 Maximum required C/N for QEF with dynamically varying echo power levels using DVB-T2.*

#### 3.4.10.10 C/(N+I) Performance in Single Frequency Networks

If there exists one or more FFT window positions for the time synchronisation that will give an aggregate available C/(N+I) larger than or equal to the required EPT (Effective Protection Target), the terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** be able to find one of these positions, independently of echo profile. The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** also be able to correctly equalise the signal (referred to as Interval of correct qualization, $T_F$) for an echo range (i.e. distance from first to last echo) up to:

For DVB-T signals, EN 300 744 [18]:

- $7T_U/24$ (i.e. for 7 MHz signal up to 298 µs and for 8 MHz signal up to 260 µs),

For DVB-T2 signals, EN 302 755 [19]:

- 57/64 (≈89.1%) of the Nyquist time ($T_U/D_x$) for the scattered pilots (after time interpolation) for a particular FFT size, pilot pattern and RF bandwidth.

independently of the echo profile. See also Annex B1.

Example: Using 32K, GI 1/16 (224 µs) and PP4 it **shall** be possible to equalize echoes up to (57/64) * (3584/12) µs = 266 µs.

For the DVB-T modes {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$=1/8}, {8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$ =1/4} and {8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, $\Delta/T_u$ =1/4}, the required C/N value for profile 2 (specified in Table 3.10) for QEF reception **shall** be obtained when the channel contains two static paths with relative delay from 1.95 µs up to 0.95 times guard interval length, independently of the relative amplitudes and phases of the two paths.

For the DVB-T2 modes shown in Table 3.9, the required C/N value for profile 2 (specified in Table 3.11) for QEF reception **shall** be obtained when the channel contains two static paths with relative delay from 1.95µs up to 0.95 times guard interval length, independently of the relative amplitudes and phases of the two paths. For 1.7 MHz these DVB-T2 modes apply as well, except that the FFT size is 8K.

For specific echo attenuation, the required C/N **shall** not be more than 1 dB higher compared to the median value when calculated for the required C/N values over the echo delays from 1.95 µs up to 0.95 times guard interval length.

For echoes outside the guard interval, for:

- 8 MHz DVB-T signal, QEF reception **shall** be possible with echo levels up to the values defined in Table 3.20.
- 7 MHz DVB-T signal, QEF reception **shall** be possible with echo levels up to the values defined in Table 3.21.
- 8 MHz DVB-T2 signal, QEF reception **shall** be possible with echo levels up to the values defined in Table 3.22.
- 7 MHz DVB-T2 signal, QEF reception **shall** be possible with echo levels up to the values defined in Table 3.23.
- 1.7 MHz DVB-T2 signal, when supported, QEF reception **shall** be possible with combinations of delays and echo levels following the general outside-the-guard-interval behavior of Table 3.23, scaled appropriately for 1.7 MHz bandwidth and 8K FFT size.
  This means that for 1.7 MHz bandwidth (i.e. elementary period T=71/131 µs) and FFT size 8K, the symbol time will be 142/131 times longer (about a factor 1.084) compared to 32K in 7 MHz. The performance requirement for a given original echo level and delay **shall** therefore also be met when the delay is multiplied by 142/131, but the echo level is kept unchanged.

| | **Echo attenuation in dB relative reference** | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Delay (µs)** | *-260* | *-230* | *-200* | *-150* | *-120* | *120* | *150* | *200* | *230* | *260* |
| **Mode** | | | | | | | | | | |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$=1/8* | 15 | - | 13 | 10 | 5 | 5 | 10 | 13 | - | 15 |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$=1/4* | 10 | 5 | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | 5 | 10 |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, $\Delta/T_u$=1/4* | 12 | 6 | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | 6 | 12 |

*Table 3.19 QEF reception for echoes outside the guard interval, for 8 MHz DVB-T signal.*

| | **Echo attenuation in dB relative reference** | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Delay (µs)** | *-298* | *-266* | *-256* | *-215* | *-165* | *-135* | *-128* | *128* | *135* | *165* | *215* | *256* | *266* | *298* |
| **Mode** | | | | | | | | | | | | | | |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$=1/8* | **16** | **-** | **-** | **13** | **10** | **5** | **1** | **1** | **5** | **10** | **13** | **-** | **-** | **16** |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=2/3, $\Delta/T_u$=1/4* | **10** | **5** | **1** | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | **1** | **5** | **10** |
| *8K, 64-QAM, R=3/4, $\Delta/T_u$=1/4* | **12** | **6** | **2** | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | n/a | **2** | **6** | **12** |

*Table 3.20 QEF reception for echoes outside the guard interval, for 7 MHz DVB-T signal.*

| | **Echo attenuation in dB relative reference** | | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Delay (µs)** | *-260* | *-230* | *-200* | *-150* | *-120* | *120* | *150* | *200* | *230* | *260* |
| **Mode** | | | | | | | | | | |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/5, Δ/Tu=1/16,* | **4** | **2** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **2** | **4** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/16,* | **6** | **3** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **3** | **6** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/4, Δ/Tu =1/16* | **8** | **4** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **4** | **8** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/5, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **10** | **9** | **7** | **4** | **2** | **2** | **4** | **7** | **9** | **10** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **12** | **11** | **10** | **6** | **3** | **3** | **6** | **10** | **11** | **12** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/4, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **14** | **13** | **12** | **8** | **4** | **4** | **8** | **12** | **13** | **14** |

*Table 3.21 QEF reception for echoes outside the guard interval, for 8 MHz DVB-T2 signal.*

| Echo attenuation in dB relative reference | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Delay (µs)** | *-/+608* | *-/+512* | *-/+400* | *-/+298* | *-/+266* | *-/+215* | *-/+165* | *-/+135* |
| **Mode** | | | | | | | | |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/5, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **4** | **2** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **6** | **3** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/4, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **8** | **4** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/5, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **10** | **9** | **7** | **4** | **2** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **12** | **11** | **10** | **6** | **3** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP4, R=3/4, Δ/Tu=1/32* | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **14** | **13** | **12** | **8** | **4** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP2, R=3/5, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **12** | **11** | **9** | **4** | **2** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP2, R=2/3, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **15** | **14** | **11** | **6** | **3** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |
| *32K, 256-QAM, PP2, R=3/4, Δ/Tu=1/16* | **18** | **16** | **14** | **8** | **4** | **n/a** | **n/a** | **n/a** |

*Table 3.22 QEF reception for echoes outside the guard interval, for 7 MHz DVB-T2 signal.*

#### 3.4.10.11 Time-Frequency Slicing (TFS)

The requirements in the remainder of this section 3.4.10.11 apply when TFS is supported:

For a particular LDPC code rate CR, CR ∈ {1/2, 3/5, 2/3, 3/4, 4/5, 5/6}, The terrestrial NorDig IRD **shall** in TFS mode be able to output a QEF TS when the proportion R of lost RF frequencies, of the total number of TFS RF frequencies, fulfils the relation R ≤ 0.75*(1-CR) and the received RF frequencies have equal power and no noise, interference or echoes.

Example 1: Using TFS with 4 RF frequencies and CR=3/5 it **shall** be possible to lose one RF frequency since ¼ = 0.25 < 0.75*(1-0.60) = 0.30.

Example 2: Using TFS with 4 RF frequencies and CR=2/3 it **shall** be possible to lose one RF frequency since ¼ = 0.25 = 0.75*(1-2/3).

The terrestrial NorDig IRD should be able to correctly demodulate a TS when TFS is performed on a combination of UHF band IV/V frequencies (8 MHz channel spacing) and VHF band III frequencies (7 MHz spacing) provided that the following conditions are fulfilled:

- The RF signals on VHF have nominally the same modulation parameters as those on UHF, including T2 frame length, symbol time, guard interval etc.
- The edge carriers on the VHF signal are symmetrically suppressed already from the transmitter (e.g. by setting the corresponding FFT bin values to zero) so that the actually transmitted RF bandwidth of the VHF signal is identical to a standard 7 MHz DVB-T2 signal.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The terrestrial NorDig IRD should consider these edge carriers as unreliable. With two RF frequencies about 6.25% of the total number of TFS carriers would then be erased, which should have a very small impact on the capacity/robustness (required C/N < 1 dB degradation, but about corresponding increase in capacity), but with additional TFS gain. |
| Note 2: In a future release of this specification more detailed performance requirements for TFS operation may be included. |

## *3.5 IP-based Front-End*

### 3.5.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** include one IP-based front-end for reception of signals from, and interaction with, an IP-based network. The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive and decode DVB compliant signals and interact with other signals as specified below.

| |
|---|
| Note: DVB-IP is being updated by DVB; the update will be considered together with other issues for the IPTV-part of the NorDig Unified Requirements. The full IPTV-part is being reviewed, including this section 3.5 and section 13.4 (Service Discovery and Selection for IRDs with IP-based front-ends) |

### 3.5.2 Network Interface

The IP-based network will provide signals with a maximum bit rate and other characteristics that are network dependant or set by the network operator, in accordance with NorDig Rules of Operations, ver 2.5 [61].

- The NorDig IRD **shall** accept RTP Packet Jitter up to 40 ms peak-to-peak ETSI TS 102 034 [29], section 7.2.1 / (ISO/IEC 13818-9).

- The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive an SPTS from the network with a speed of up to 20 Mbps.

- If the NorDig IRD is able to receive an MPTS from the network, it **shall** be able to receive such an MPTS with a speed of up to 60 Mbps**.**

- The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to transmit data to the network with a speed of at least 2 Mbps.

- The NorDig IRD **shall** use the protocols specified in section 3.5.3.

The physical interface to the IP-based network **shall** be an Ethernet port; compliant with IEEE 802.3 (100Base-T, Auto-sense). The physical connector **shall** be RJ45. The IRD **shall** have a female socket for the RJ45 male cable connector, see also section 8.3.

### 3.5.3 Protocol Suite

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle protocols in compliance with ETSI TS 102 034 [29], Section 4.1.3, including support of IP, RTP and UDP.

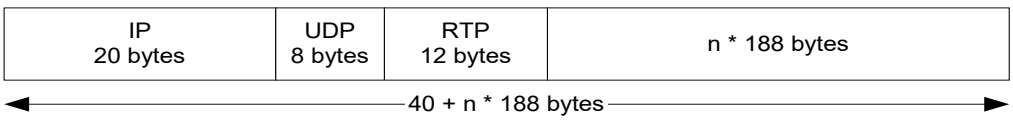



*Figure 3.3 Transport stream protocol mapping.*

The NorDig IRD should support RTCP [29]. When RTCP is used, the IRD **shall** not send receiver reports (and is thus restricted only to listen to sender reports).

The NorDig-IRD **shall** not require full duplex operation of the access network.

### 3.5.4 Dynamic Address Allocation

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to work with an IP address, subnet mask, default gateway, DNS server address and possibly WINS/NetBIOS server dynamically assigned from the network via DHCP.

| |
|---|
| Note: Static IP-addressing will not be used. |

There **shall** be a DHCP client in the IRD that **shall** support all the messages of RFC 2131 [44] and RFC 2132 [45]. The DHCP client **shall** support client reconfiguration as defined in RFC 3203 [46], meaning that the "FORCERENEW" message **shall** be implemented to allow the DHCP server to reconfigure the IP address of NorDig IRD as part of Network Provisioning.

The client identifier **shall** be the MAC address of the network interface for NorDig IRD.

The DHCP client **shall** support all DHCP Options marked as 'Mandatory' ETSI TS 102 034 [29], section 8.1.1.4 and Table 17.

### 3.5.5 Service Selection

Service selection for IP-based IRDs is specified in section 13.4.

# 4 MPEG-2 Demultiplexer

### 4.1 General

The Demultiplexer **shall** be compliant to the MPEG-2 transport layer defined in ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50]. The NorDig IRD **shall** support ETSI TS 101 154 [26] and the additional requirements stated below:

- The NorDig IRD **shall** utilize the MPEG-2 Service Information as specified in Part B.
- The NorDig IRD **shall** interpret the CA descriptor as defined in ETSI ETR 289 [22].
- The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to decode an ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50] stream with data rates that include all rates up to that the front-end may deliver (1) as defined in chapter 3.
- It should be possible to select one or many section-based data streams and output them as data on USB (if present).
- The NorDig IRD **shall** be capable to utilise at least 32 elementary streams simultaneously, which requires 32 PID filters.
- The NorDig IRD **shall** provide at least 32 section filters (2).
- The NorDig IRD **shall** support variable bit rate elementary streams within a constant bit rate transport stream (excluding audio)
- The NorDig IRD **shall** support a mixture of service types within the same ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50] MPEG-2 transport stream (i.e. MPEG-2 SDTV service, MPEG-4 AVC SDTV and HDTV and Radio services may be multiplexed into the same transport stream).
- The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** in addition support ISO/IEC 23008-2 [82] HEVC based service types mixed with the service types mentioned above within the same ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50] MPEG-2 transport stream.

Note 1: The satellite front-end may deliver up to 80.4 Mbps after error correction, see section 3.2, note 1.

Note 2: This feature enables the NorDig IRD to utilise several components as video, audio teletext, SI, subtitling and data for additional services.

### 4.2 DVB Descrambler Performance (for IRD with embedded descrambling)

The descrambler unit is based on the common scrambling algorithm as specified by DVB, see DVB CSA [3]. Common Scrambling Algorithms versions 2 and 3 (1) **shall** be implemented in the NorDig IRD. The algorithms are available from Sisvel ~~ETSI~~ (2). See also section 9. It **shall** (1) be able to descramble on transport level and on PES format. The NorDig IRD **shall** (1) be able to process in parallel up to at least 6 different streams (either PES or transport level) with different access conditions. Data streams without access control **shall** be bypassed by the descrambling unit.

Note 1: Only mandatory for NorDig IRDs that are equipped with an embedded descrambling and a SmartCard Reader for conditional access.

Note 2: ~~ETSI~~ Sisvel acts as a neutral custodian for the distribution of the system information concerning the common scrambling system.

### 4.3 System Clock Recovery

During the system time clock (STC) acquisition, audio and video **shall** be muted. (The transition **shall** be smooth and seamless when the customer changes the channel). The decoder **shall** be able to:

- recover the STC using PCR with maximum jitter of ± 10 µs.
- track long-term variations in the frequency of the encoder's STC.

For each service, the demultiplexer **shall** recover the source clock by extracting the associated PCR values received within the incoming multiplex and insert them into the appropriate Phase Locked Loop.

# 5 Video

### 5.1 General requirements

The video decoder of the NorDig IRD **shall** comply with the DVB specification for broadcasting applications regarding "25 Hz MPEG-2 SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams "25 Hz H.264/AVC SDTV IRD and Bitstream "25 Hz H.264/AVC HDTV IRD and Bitstream ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

The video decoder of the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall**, in addition to above, comply with the DVB specification for broadcasting applications regarding "HEVC HDR UHDTV IRD and Bitstream" in ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

The following clauses of ETSI TS 101 154 [26] are relevant to this specification:

- 5.1 "25 Hz MPEG-2 SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams"
- 5.5 "Specifications Common to all H.264/AVC IRDs and Bitstreams"
- 5.6 "H.264/AVC SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams". The NorDig_IRD **shall** support High Profile at Level 3.0 bitstreams.
- 5.7.1 "Specifications common to all H.264/AVC HDTV IRDs and Bitstreams".
- 5.7.2 "25 Hz H.264/AVC HDTV IRD and Bitstream". The NorDig IRD **shall** support High Profile at Level 4.0 bitstreams.
- 5.14.1 "Specifications Common to all HEVC IRDs and Bitstreams".
- 5.14.4 "HEVC HDR UHDTV IRDs and Bitstreams" (1). Support for both PQ10 and HLG10 is required for the NorDig HEVC IRD. Only support of 50 Hz and 25 Hz frame rates are required for the NorDig HEVC IRD. Support for Supplemental Enhancement Information messages carrying one or more DMI (2) formats conforming to sub-section 5.14.4.4.3.3.4 "Optional Supplemental Enhancement Information messages carrying DMI" is not required i.e. optional. Any non DMI cognisant NorDig IRD **shall** be able to decode and present the service, even if DMI is in the bitstream (i.e., the IRD **shall** not be disturbed by DMI SEI messages not supported by the IRD).

Note 1: This implies support for the "HEVC HDR UHDTV Bitstream", the "HEVC UHDTV Bitstream" and the "HEVC HDTV Bitstream", excluding non-square pixel aspect ratios and excluding interlace scan.

Note 2: DMI refers to HDR dynamic mapping information and is information associated with one or more frames of the video content as part of a DVB service that can guide dynamic mapping, as produced in a reference viewing environment or otherwise (as defined in ETSI TS 101 154 [26]).

### 5.1.1 Video Decoder Reference Model

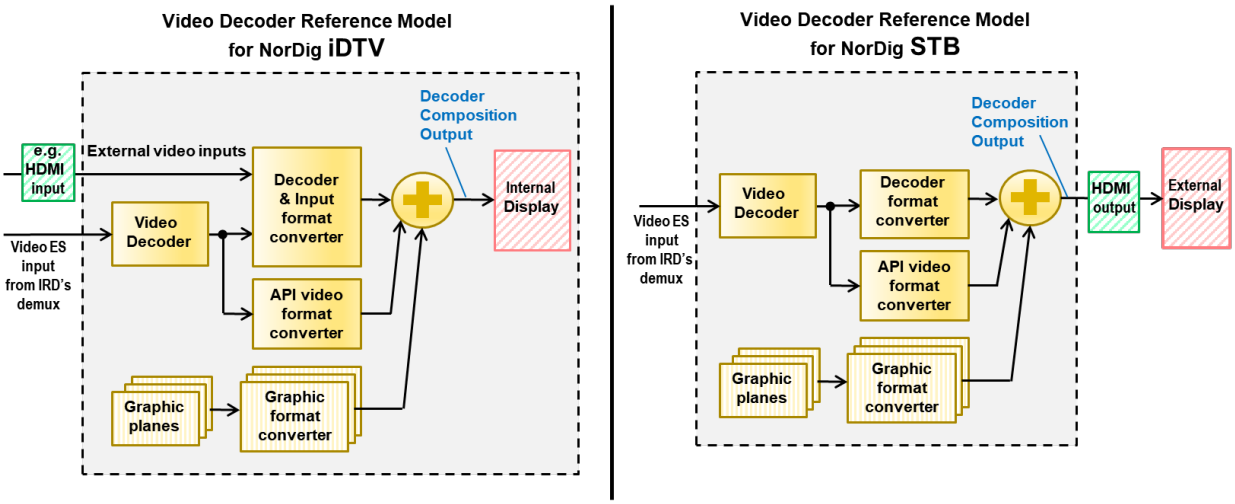



*Figure 5.1 Video Decoder Reference Model.*

The Video Decoder Reference Model is illustrated in Figure 5.1. It is a logical reference model and does not imply any specific implementation of an actual iDTV or STB.

## 5.2 Supported resolutions

The Video Decoder of the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive and decode the resolutions according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26]:

- Section 5.1 “25 Hz MPEG-2 SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.1.4 “Luminance resolution”.
- Section 5.6 “H.264/AVC SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.6.2 “25 Hz H.264/AVC SDTV IRD and Bitstream”, sub-section 5.6.2.3 “Luminance resolution”.
- Section 5.7 “H.264/AVC HDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.7.1.4 “Luminance resolution”.

The Video Decoder of the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall**, in addition to the capabilities of the NorDig IRD, be able to receive and decode the resolutions according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26]:

- Section 5.14.4 “HEVC HDR UHDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.14.4.3 “Luminance Resolutions”.
- Section 5.14.3 “HEVC UHDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.14.3.2 “Luminance resolution” with the exception for non-square pixel aspect ratios.
- Section 5.14.2 “HEVC HDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.14.2.2 “Luminance resolution” with the exception for non-square pixel aspect ratios and the exception for interlace scan.

## 5.3 Supported frame rates

The Video Decoder of the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to receive and decode the frame rates according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26]:

- Section 5.1 “25 Hz MPEG-2 SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.1.2 “Frame rate”.
- Section 5.6 “H.264/AVC SDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.6.2 “25 Hz H.264/AVC SDTV IRD and Bitstream”, sub-section 5.6.2.2 “Frame rate”.
- Section 5.7 “H.264/AVC HDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.7.2 “25 Hz H.264/AVC HDTV IRD and Bitstream”, sub-section 5.7.2.2 “Frame rate”.

The Video Decoder of the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall**, in addition to the capabilities of the NorDig IRD, be able to receive and decode the frame rates according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26]:

- Section 5.14.1 “Specifications Common to all HEVC IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.14.1.7 “Frame rate” (1).
- Section 5.14.4 “HEVC HDR UHDTV IRDs and Bitstreams”, sub-section 5.14.4.5 “Frame Rates” (1).

The Video Decoder of the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** also be able to receive and decode a half frame rate (50Hz) component of a dual PID 100Hz HFR bitstream, according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26] section 5.14.5 “HEVC HDR HFR UHDTV IRDs and Bitstreams and HEVC HFR UHDTV Bitstreams”, subsection 5.14.5.7 “HEVC encoding structure for HFR Bitstreams using dual PID and temporal scalability”.

For HEVC encoded video, only decoding of progressive scan video is mandatory.

It is optional for NorDig HEVC IRDs to support other frame rates than specified above (i.e. optional to support other frame rates than 25 Hz, 50 Hz and the reception and decoding of a half frame rate (50Hz) component of a dual PID 100Hz HFR bitstream).

Note 1: The specifications in section 5.14.1.7 **shall** apply with the restrictions in section 5.14.4.5, i.e. only progressive scan support is mandatory.

### *5.4 Video resolution scaling Up-sampling/Up-converting*

Upscaling of (sub-) resolutions of received video **shall** be made in accordance with ETSI TS 101 154 [26], i.e. (sub-) luminance resolutions in Reference Model Figure 5.1 **shall** be up-scaled by the Decoder Format Converter into the video raster of the Decoder Composition Output.

Regarding the NorDig STB, the video raster **shall** either be a manually chosen raster of 1920x1080, 1280x720 or 720x576 or a raster automatically selected via EDID-information as desired by the HDMI Sink (iDTV/display).

In addition to the raster resolutions above, the NorDig HEVC STB **shall** provide the raster 3840x2160.

Regarding NorDig iDTVs, all resolutions of received video **shall** internally be scaled to the native resolution of the display.

When upscaling video with an encoded luminance resolution of 720x576 or 704x576 to any square pixel aspect ratio format (e.g. 1280x720, 1920x1080 or 3840x2160), only the centred 702 of the horizontal 720 / 704 pixels **shall** be used. Those 702 pixels correspond to the 52 microseconds of an active line, hence preserves correct geometry in the up-conversion process.

When upscaling other 576 line-based input resolutions to any square pixel aspect (output) format (i.e. 1280x720, 1920x1080 or 3840x2160), only the centred horizontal pixels **shall** be used; e.g. when up-converting (received) 544x576 line resolution format to any square pixel aspect ratio (output) format, only the centred 530 pixels of the horizontal 544 **shall** be used.

## 5.5 Colorimetry

The NorDig IRD Decoder Format Converter **shall** use the VUI (Video Usability Information) parameters (ISO/IEC 14496-10) [54] *colour_primaries*, *transfer_characteristics* and *matrix_coeffecients* in received AVC encoded bitstreams and the Sequence Display Extension parameters (ISO/IEC 13818-2) [51] in MPEG-2 encoded bitstreams.

In addition to the NorDig IRD requirements above, the NorDig HEVC IRD Decoder Format Converter **shall** use the VUI (Video Usability Information) parameters (ISO/IEC 23008-2) [82] *colour_primaries*, *transfer_characteristics* and *matrix_coeffecients* in received HEVC encoded bitstreams.

It **shall** be assumed that bitstreams according to "HEVC HDR UHDTV Bitstreams using PQ10", section 5.14.4.4.3 in ETSI TS 101 154 [26], will provide the "Mastering Display Colour Volume SEI message", section 5.14.4.4.3.3.2 in ETSI TS 101 154 [26]. Bitstreams carrying non-live programmes, may also contain the "Content Light Level Information SEI message", section 5.14.4.4.3.3.3 in ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

Hence, it is highly recommended that the NorDig HEVC IRD Decoder Format Converter makes use of the "Mastering Display Colour Volume SEI message" when adapting to the luminance and chrominance capability of the connected display. It is in addition recommended that the NorDig HEVC IRD makes use of the "Content Light Level Information SEI message" when available in the bitstream.

Note: In the case that DMI messages are included in the bitstream, the NorDig Rules of Operation [61] require broadcasters to provide video quality from that bitstream to NorDig HEVC IRDs that do not support DMI at the level that can be expected from a bitstream that does not include DMI messages. DMI enables further enhancement of the video quality.

### 5.5.1 NorDig HEVC STB colorimetry

The Decoder Composition Output in NorDig's Video Decoder Reference Model (see chapter 5.1.1) **shall** be advanced enough to perform all video format conversions (luminance-wise and chrominance-wise) needed to target legacy HDMI-sinks, as well as EDID-enabled adaption to the capability of the connected display, including HDR capability, described in ANSI/CTA-861-H~~G~~ [92]. The complete ANSI/CTA-861-H~~G~~ [92] **shall** be taken into account.

When connected to a Sink (iDTV/display) of any HDMI version, the HDMI 2.0b or higher interface in-line with ANSI/CTA-861- H~~G~~ [92] will give the STB's Video Format Converter necessary information regarding the desired colorimetry via EDID handshake. The EDID-information **shall** be used by the Decoder Format Converter of the NorDig HEVC STB to determine any applicable colorimetry conversion, display mapping (if supported) or DMI message pass-through (if supported).

However, legacy SDR displays will signal their supported SDR video formats in priority without specifically signalling "Desired Content Max Luminance data" (see 7.5.13 "HDR Static Metadata Data Block" in ANSI/CTA-861- H~~G~~ [92]). Hence, the Decoder Format Converter of the NorDig HEVC STB **shall** output SDR video formats based on the HDR to SDR conversion methods described by the ITU, e.g. ITU-R BT.2390 [90] and operational practises in HDR television production ITU-R BT.2408 [95] or based on DMI (if supported).

Note: In the case of the High Dynamic Range (HDR) video format ITU-R BT. 2100/PQ [89], it is anticipated that the capabilities of professional reference monitors and consumer displays will evolve differently over time. Consumer displays may have lower luminance and chrominancecapabilities than professional reference monitors. Hence, there is a need for both an initial display adaption and a subsequent consumer viewing environment adaption. The latter for example via user control of overall brightness and contrast. The initial display adaptation can be done by using DMI (if supported) or by applying processing derived from the conversion methods described by the ITU, e.g. ITU-R BT.2390 [90] and Operational practises in HDR television production ITU-R BT.2408 [95].

### 5.5.2 Programme production colorimetry – informative

Table 5.1 below gives the reference to the standards regarding programme production where to find appropriate chromaticity co-ordinates, opto-electronic transfer characteristics and matrix coefficients to be used for example when deriving luminance and chrominance signals from the red, green and blue primaries (or vice versa, i.e. YCbCr to RGB):

| **Active composition resolution in the "Decoder Composition Output" (equal to the production resolution) (Horizontal x Vertical)** | **Standards regarding programme production colour parameters** | **Comments** |
|---|---|---|
| 720x576 | ITU-R BT.1700 [85] (replaces ITU-R BT.470 System B, G) and ITU-R BT.601 [83] | Note that 576 lines in both interlaced scan (576i) and progressive scan (576p) **shall** be processed and output with equal colour parameters.<br><br>Standard Dynamic Range production parameters. |
| 1280x720 | ITU-R BT.1847 [86] (SMPTE 296M) | The colour parameters in SMPTE 296M are the same as in ITU-R BT.709 [84].<br><br>Standard Dynamic Range production parameters. |
| 1920x1080 | ITU-R BT.709 [84] (SMPTE 274M) | The colour parameters in SMPTE 274M are the same as in ITU-R BT.709 [84].<br><br>Standard Dynamic Range production parameters. |
| 3840x2160 | ITU-R BT.2020 [88] | Standard Dynamic Range production parameters. |
| 3840x2160 | ITU-R BT.2100 [89] | High Dynamic Range production parameters used for PQ10 and HLG10 by DVB (1). |

*Table 5.1 Standards for production colour parameters*

Note 1: In ITU-R BT.2100 [89] TABLE 9 "Digital 10- and 12-bit integer representation", both "Narrow range" and "Full range" are defined. DVB is however only specifying the use of 10-bit "Narrow range" in its TS 101 154 [26].

## *5.6 Dynamic changes in the video stream*

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle dynamic changes of either the video codec or the video format that may occur dynamically within the transmitted stream.

After a change of video codec, the IRD should automatically resume decoding and output of valid video within five seconds.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle dynamic changes in transmission between different video formats and frame rates (e.g. 720p50 to 1080i25/1080p25 and 576i25 to 720p50), including changes in encoded sub resolution (e.g. 720x576 to 544x576) within one second after receiving Random Access

Point. (Random Access Point equals H.264/AVC RAP for H.264/AVC and Sequence header for H.262/MPEG-2).

The NorDig IRD **shall** adapt to changes in transmitted aspect ratio (e.g. 16:9 / 4:3) within one second after the reception. The transition **shall** cause minimal disturbance of the decoded service.

The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall**, regarding HEVC encoded bitstreams, in addition be able to handle dynamic changes in transmission between encoded (sub-) resolutions (i.g. 3840x2160 in steps down to 960x540) within one second after receiving Random Access Point, ideally without interruption. (Random Access Point equals HEVC DVB_RAP for H.265/HEVC).

For NorDig HEVC IRD supporting one or more of the DMI formats, dynamic switching should be handled as described in ETSI TS 101 154 [26] sub-section 5.14.4.4.3.3.4.2 "Dynamic switching between bitstreams with and without DMI".

### 5.7 MPEG-2 Minimum video bandwidth

For MPEG-2 video the NorDig IRD decoder **shall** be able to decode at bit rates down to 1.0 Mbps for video resolutions up to full Standard Definition resolution video (720x576).

### 5.8 Frame Cropping

The NorDig IRD **shall** support frame cropping for H.264/AVC encoded video. Frame cropping signalling is used to indicate which area of the encoded video that should be displayed.

For 1080 line formats, the video is encoded with 1088 lines. To indicate which area of the encoded video that should be displayed, frame cropping signalling may be used. If frame cropping information is included in the encoded video, this **shall** be used to decide which 8 lines should be hidden in the Decoder Composition Output. If no frame cropping signalling is available, the IRD **shall** crop the bottom 8 lines.

The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** support "conformance cropping window" for H.265/HEVC encoded video according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26] section 5.14.1 "Specifications Common to all HEVC IRDs and Bitstreams", sub-sections 5.14.1.3 "Sequence Parameter Set" and 5.14.1.5.1 "Aspect Ratio and Overscan Information".

### 5.9 Overscan

For services carrying H.264/AVC video, the broadcaster may use the *overscan_info_present* and *overscan_appropriate* flags to indicate whether the IRD (NorDig IRD and NorDig HEVC IRD) should apply overscan (e.g. by masking with black pixels or by additional cropping plus scaling), or should display the complete broadcast video image (after appropriate Frame Cropping, see Chapter 5.8 Frame Cropping). The flags will be encoded according to Table 5.2.

| overscan_info_present_flag | Overscan_appropriate_flag | Usage |
|---|---|---|
| 0x0 or not broadcasted | n/a | No preferred display method |
| 0x1 | 0x0 | Important information in entire video frame |
| 0x1 | 0x1 | Decoded picture suitable for applied overscan |

*Table 5.2 Broadcast overscan flag*

Unless the user requests otherwise, NorDig IRDs **shall** interpret and follow the overscan flags according to Table 5.3.

| overscan_info_present_flag | overscan_appropriate_flag | Behaviour |
|---|---|---|

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| 0x0 or not broadcasted | n/a | Implementation dependent |
| 0x1 | 0x0 | Overscan not applied |
| 0x1 | 0x1 | Overscan applied |

*Table 5.3 NorDig IRD and NorDig HEVC overscan behaviour.*

NorDig STBs **shall** pass the video unaltered, i. e. without overscan related reformatting to its HDMI output, setting the bits in the AVI Infoframe (see CTA 861 [92]) in accordance with Table 5.4 below.

| overscan_info_present_flag | overscan_appropriate_flag | <S1,S0> (in HDMI AVI Infoframe) |
|---|---|---|
| 0x0 or not broadcasted | n/a | <0,0> |
| 0x1 | 0x0 | <1,0> |
| 0x1 | 0x1 | <0,1> |

*Table 5.4 Overscan signalling on the HDMI.*

Most displays have a user option where it will display the full frame of 1080 line based video formats without any overscan applied. It is recommended that the NorDig iDTVs support such user option to achieve one-to-one pixel mapping on 1920 x 1080 resolution displays. Note that the user, if overriding the received overscan flags, may not see a clean aperture as content producers cannot promise artefact free areas outside the Action Safe Area described in "EBU R 095 Safe areas for 16:9 television production" [71].

For the NorDig HEVC IRD, in addition to above, regarding Overscan Information via Video Usability Information for services carrying H.265/HEVC video, see ETSI TS 101 154 [26] section 5.14.1 "Specifications Common to all HEVC IRDs and Bitstreams", sub-sections 5.14.1.5.0 "General" and 5.14.1.5.1 "Aspect Ratio and Overscan Information".

### 5.9.1 Safe area for overscan

The amount of applied overscan **shall** not be in conflict with the broadcasted Action Safe Areas. Please refer to "EBU R 095, Safe areas for 16:9 television production" [71], for appropriate guidelines.

## *5.10 Video Output and Display*

The NorDig STB **shall** use the HDMI EDID information provided by the Sink (iDTV/display) to automatically determine the STB output as specified in section 5.4 and 5.5, and as an alternative enable manual setting of the STB output as specified in section 8.6.

The NorDig STB **shall** ensure that it can always present video (where available) for all services in the installed service list, regardless of the capabilities of the connected display.

## *5.11 Restrictions on analogue video output*

Down-conversion of High Definition Video for Standard Definition output.

If ~~SCART, or~~ any ~~other~~ analogue video output ~~(Y, $P_b$, $P_r$, RF-PAL or CVBS)~~ is available (like SCART, Y,$P_b$, $P_r$, RF-PAL or CVBS) (1), decoded video with a resolution higher than Standard Definition (576i/25), **shall** always be down-converted to interlaced Standard Definition resolution before output via these interfaces.

The down-conversion **shall** be implemented from any received resolution, see section 5.2

When down-converting any square pixel aspect ratio format (e.g. 1280x720) to 720x576 resolution, the target **shall** be 702x576 pixels to be centred in the 720x576 grid with nine black pixels inserted as the start of the 720 pixel active line and nine black pixels inserted as the end of the 720 pixel active line.

Down-converted HD or UHD (2) video **shall** be displayed as 16:9 letterbox on 4:3 displays. 4:3 centre-cut is *not* an allowed display option, since this would limit the Action Safe Area in HD program production.

The conversion should apply appropriate re-interlacing (field mode integration re-interlacing). It **shall** process and output 720x576i25 in 4:3 frame aspect ratio or 16:9 frame aspect ratio video with colours according to section 5.5.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The NorDig IRD is not required to be equipped with any analogue video output. |
| Note 2: UHD video resolution is only applicable for the NorDig HEVC IRD, not the NorDig IRD. |

### 5.12 Display of 4:3 aspect ratio content

The NorDig IRD **shall** have methods to display 4:3 transmitted SDTV content on a 16:9 monitor (with any resolution and colorimetry capability). The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to maintain full height 4:3 picture aspect ratio (pillar box) on a 16:9 display. Other display modes for 4:3 content is optional.

~~If SCART is available (1), the user **shall** have the ability to select appropriate aspect ratio, see section 8.4.~~

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The NorDig IRD is not required to be equipped with any analogue video output. |

### 5.13 Rescaling for HbbTV application

A NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** support rescaling as defined in HbbTV under “video scaling” minimum requirements in clause 10.2.1 of ETSI TS 102 796 [27]. These **shall** be supported for any of the valid incoming encoded full screen luminance resolutions (see 5.2 for full screen luminance resolution values). The video **shall** be scaled, preserving the aspect ratio, and when applicable converted colorimetry-wise, such that all of the decoded video is visible within the area of the AV Control object or HTML5 video object. (See HbbTV requirements in ETSI TS 102 796 [27] Appendix E4).

### 5.14 Graphic compositing with HDR video - informative

When compositing graphic components (e.g. subtitling, HbbTV) with an HDR-based TV service, these graphics may typically utilise a small, perhaps undefined, legacy SDR-based colour volume. Hence ambiguity may occur, primarily luminance-wise, to which HDR-based video colours to map the SDR-based colours of the graphics in the composition, see the Video Decoder Reference Model in section 5.1.1.

The SDR to HDR conversion methods (and vice versa) for video described by the ITU, e.g. ITU-R BT.2390 [90] and ITU-R’s operational practises in HDR television production ITU-R BT.2408 [95], should be studied as guidance regarding colour volume conversion (both luminance and chrominance) of graphics.

# 6 Audio

### 6.1 General

NorDig has selected the following audio formats:

- ***MPEG 1 Layer II***, which refers to MPEG-1 Layer II up to stereo (2.0) channel decoding **[53]**.
- ***E-AC-3***, which refers to E-AC-3 streams (including ***AC-3***) up to 5.1 multichannel decoding [33].
- ***HE-AAC***, which refers to MPEG-4 HE-AAC Level 4 (including AAC-LC) up to 5.1 multichannel decoding [53]. (Might be used for MPEG-4 based services).
- ***AC-4***, which refers to AC-4 as defined in ETSI TS 103 190-2 [98] where the md_compat field as defined by clause 6.3.2.2.3 of ETSI TS 103 190-2[98] **shall** be less than or equal to three and constrained by ETSI TS 101 154 [26] section 6.7.

Regarding the audio decoder ("codec"), the NorDig IRD **shall** meet all the audio codec requirements specified by the network(s) for where the NorDig IRD is intended to be used, see below (i.e. the audio codec requirements might slightly differ from one NorDig network to another).

*Informative: Some NorDig networks have aligned all (MPEG-4) services into always using HE-AAC and some other networks have aligned all (MPEG-4) services into always using E-AC-3 or AC-3, this among other things to limit the number of audio decoders in the IRDs and in some cases also to save broadcast capacity. However, some NorDig networks are using HE-AAC for some (MPEG-4) services and E-AC-3/AC-3 for some other of their (MPEG-4) services.*

*HEVC Services: It is expected that all HEVC services will always use NGA.*

In NorDig networks/regions where there is no single operator for acceptance of the IRDs, the NorDig IRD **shall** support:

- MPEG-1 Layer II and E-AC-3 and HE-AAC audio decoding.

In NorDig networks/regions where there is a single operator/regulator in charge for specifying the functionality of the IRD and ensuring that the minimum requirements are met, the operator/regulator specifies one of following minimum audio decoding format alternatives for the NorDig IRD to minimum support for that relevant network (i.e. always minimum support for two audio format):

- MPEG-1 Layer II and E-AC-3 and HE-AAC audio decoding,
- MPEG-1 Layer II and E-AC-3 audio decoding,
- MPEG-1 Layer II and HE-AAC audio decoding.

Additionally, the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** support AC-4 audio decoding.

For other NorDig IRD´s, AC-4 audio decoding is optional, but if supported, then the AC-4 audio decoding **shall** follow the AC-4 NGA requirements speficied for the NorDig HEVC IRD.

The Audio decoders **shall** fully comply with the DVB Implementation Guidelines for the use of MPEG-2 Systems, Video and Audio in satellite, cable and terrestrial Broadcasting Applications ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

#### 6.1.1 Audio User Preference Settings

The NorDig IRD **shall** have User Preference Settings for audio functions as stated in section 16.2 (for example primary and secondary audio language, audio format, audio type, audio delay, etc).

### 6.1.2 Audio terminology

Normal audio refers in this specification to audio streams that are:

- intended for the majority of users and users that are not interested in any supplementary audio and
- signalled in the supplementary audio descriptor by mix_type '1' and editorial description '0' and in the ISO 639 language descriptor with audio_type 'undefined' and language not set to 'nar" (1).

A Supplementary Audio (SA) service may be either (2):

- Audio Description (AD): audio that includes a narration describing the action of the scene and is targeted at users with visual or cognitive impairments (for non-NGA streams, see section 6.11 for more information).
- Spoken Subtitles (SpS): audio that includes a spoken rendition of the subtitles and is targeted at users with visual or cognitive impairments (for non-NGA streams, see section 6.11for more information).
- Dialogue Enhancement (DE): functionality that provides improved speech intelligibility. It is targeted at users with hearing impairments but can as well serve as improvement for listening in noisy environments (see section 6.10 for more information).

NGA Audio service (NGA):

- The NGA Audio services support delivery of audio content from mono, stereo, 5.1 channel and 7.1 channel-based audio sources, as well as Immersive Audio from Channel-based, Object-based or Scene-based audio sources. Additionally, NGA systems efficiently offer services such as multi-language support, accessibility services, personalization and interactivity.

NGA Accessibility Services:

- Accessibility services in the context of an NGA Audio service are Audio Description, Spoken Subtitles and Dialogue Enhancement as described above, see section 6.14 for more information.

NGA Preselections:

- NGA Preselections: alternative audio versions are made available to the user for 'User Personalization'. The NGA Preselections can share some of the Audio Elements contained within a single NGA stream, as these are combined in the receiver to create the final audio mix.

Stereo, multichannel and Immersive Audio:

- See sections 6.3 and 6.4 for definitions of Stereo, multichannel and Immersive Audio

| |
|---|
| Note 1: only applicable to non-NGA services<br>Note 2: The Supplementary Audio (SA) term is not used in the context of NGA services. NGA Accessibility Services (Audio Description, Spoken Subtitles and Dialogue Enhancement) are integrated features of NGA and don't need to be handled externally as SA. |

## *6.2 Audio Decoding*

The majority of customer installed base of home theatre systems are not able to decode E-AC-3, HE-AAC or AC-4 formats. Furthermore, older home theatre systems can only decode DTS and AC-3 through S/PDIF. Therefore, the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to re-encode or transcode audio streams as stated in sections 6.2.2.1, 6.2.3.1 and 6.2.4.1.

### 6.2.1 MPEG-1 Layer II: Requirements on Audio Handling

#### 6.2.1.1 MPEG-1 Layer II: Decoding

The NorDig IRD **shall** support:

- decode MPEG-1 Layer II streams at all bit rates and sample rates listed in ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

The NorDig IRD should support:

- decode MPEG-1 Layer II streams at half-sampling rates (22.05 and 24 kHz).

#### 6.2.1.2 MPEG-1 Layer II: Audio Output

The NorDig IRD **shall** be capable of providing the following formats on the HDMI output connector from an MPEG-1 Layer II bitstream (see section 16 for factory default settings):

- Decoded to PCM stereo bitstream.

The NorDig IRD including an S/PDIF output **shall** be capable of providing the following formats on the S/PDIF connector from an MPEG-1 Layer II bitstream:

- Decoded to PCM stereo bitstream

### 6.2.2 E-AC-3 and AC-3: Requirements on Audio Handling

#### 6.2.2.1 E-AC-3 and AC-3: All Pass-through, Decoding and Transcoding

NorDig IRD supporting E-AC-3 and AC-3 according to ETSI TS 102 366 [33] **shall**

- decode AC-3 streams at all bit rates and sample rates (not including Annex E ).
- (additionally) decode E-AC-3 streams with data rates from 32 kbps to 3 024 kbps and support all sample rates.
- be capable of transcoding E-AC-3 bitstreams to AC-3 bitstreams. Transcoding to AC-3 audio streams **shall** be at a fixed bit rate of 640 kbps.

#### 6.2.2.2 E-AC-3 and AC-3: Metadata

The NorDig IRD supporting E-AC-3 and AC-3 **shall** support the use of a complete set of Dolby metadata [33] embedded in the audio stream when:

- decoding AC-3 or E-AC-3 bitstreams,
- transcoding E-AC-3 bitstreams to AC-3,
- or creating a PCM stereo downmix from a decoded E-AC-3 or AC-3 bitstream. (1) (2)

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The E-AC-3 and AC-3 encoders always adds default metadata if they are not fed with metadata. |
| Note 2: NorDig has the intension to include more information in the future in the NorDig Rules of Operation about the inclusion of metadata for E-AC-3 and AC-3. |

#### 6.2.2.3 E-AC-3 and AC-3: Audio Output

Where HDMI, HDMI ARC (or eARC) is implemented, NorDig IRDs supporting E-AC-3 and AC-3 **shall** be capable of providing the following formats from an E-AC-3 or AC-3 bitstream (see chapter 16 for factory default settings):

- Pass-through of native bitstream (AC-3 and E-AC-3).
- E-AC-3 bitstream transcoded to AC-3 bitstream.
- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream.

Where HDMI (or HDMI eARC) is implemented, NorDig IRDs supporting E-AC-3 and AC-3 should be capable of providing the following formats from an E-AC-3 or AC-3 bitstream:

- Decoded to PCM multichannel bitstream.

The NorDig IRD supporting E-AC-3 and AC-3 and including an S/PDIF output **shall** be capable of providing the following formats on the S/PDIF connector from an E-AC-3 or AC-3 bitstream:

- E-AC-3 bitstream transcoded to AC-3 bitstream.
- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream.
- Pass-through of AC-3 bitstream.

### 6.2.3 HE-AAC: Requirements on Audio Handling

#### 6.2.3.1 HE-AAC: All Pass-through, Decoding and Re-encoding

NorDig IRDs supporting HE-AAC (and thereby also AAC-LC) **shall** be capable of:

- decoding HE-AAC Version 1 at Level 2 at sampling rates of 48 kHz according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26].
- decoding, including downmixing HE-AAC Version 1 at Level 4 (multichannel, up to 5.1) at sampling rates of 48 kHz according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26], Annex C (downmix).
- Re-encoding HE-AAC Version 1 at Level 4 (multichannel, up to 5.1) at sampling rates of 48 kHz according to TS 101 154 [26], Annex H to AC-3 or DTS.

NorDig IRDs **shall** be able to skip bitstream elements that are not recognized, i.e. unknown Fill elements and Data Stream elements.

If the NorDig IRD is supporting HE-AAC audio stream re-encoding to AC-3 audio stream, it **shall** be done according to TS 102 366 [33]. Re-encoding to AC-3 multichannel audio streams **shall** be at a fixed bit rate of 640 kbps.

If the NorDig IRD is supporting HE-AAC audio stream re-encoding to DTS audio stream, it **shall** be done according to ETSI TS 102 114 [30] at a fixed bit rate of 1.536 Mbps.

#### 6.2.3.2 HE-AAC: Metadata

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC **shall** support decoding of HE-AAC bitstreams both with and without audio metadata. It is highly recommended that the broadcast includes metadata for all HE-AAC bitstream, (NorDig has the intension to include more information in the future in the NorDig Rules of Operation about the inclusion of metadata for HE-AAC).

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC **shall** support the use of the following MPEG-4 AAC metadata embedded in the audio stream when decoding HE-AAC and transcoding HE-AAC multichannel to AC-3 or DTS:

- Program Reference Level according to ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] (prog_ref_level)
- Downmix Parameters according to "Transmission of MPEG4 Ancillary Data" part of DVB specification ETSI TS 101 154 [26] (center_mix_level, surround_mix_level)
- DRC Presentation Mode according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26] Annex C.5.2.2.3 (drc_presentation_mode) (see note 1)
- Dynamic Range Control (DRC) according to ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] (dyn_rng_sgn, dyn_rng_ctl)
- Heavy Compression according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26] Annex C.5.2.5 (compression_on, compression_value)

The NorDig IRD capable of transcoding metadata to their output format shall not alter the level of the audio contained within the bitstream, shall pass all audio channels and shall transcode all metadata to the output format.
The NorDig IRDs that are re-encoding the incoming audio with metadata to an output format without metadata, **shall** apply the incoming metadata before the re-encoding.

For HE-AAC bitstreams without metadata the NorDig IRD **shall** interpret that the bitstream uses default metadata values (for decoding and any re-encoding) according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26] chapter C.5.2.8 Table C.31 'Persistance of MPEG4 ancillary data'. In the absence of Program Reference Level metadata, it **shall** be assumed to be -23 dBFS (for mono, stereo and multichannel audio).

It is up to the broadcaster to ensure that sufficient headroom and/or dynamic range control values are included in the transmission to prevent any overload when downmixing.

| |
|---|
| Note: According to MPEG-4 HE-AAC specification (ISO/IEC 14496-3[53] section 4.5.2.7.3 "Persistence of DRC information") audio metadata is applied immediately during decoding whenever it is changed. |

#### 6.2.3.3 HE-AAC: Audio Output

Where HDMI, HDMI ARC (or eARC) is implemented, NorDig IRDs supporting HE-AAC **shall** be capable of providing the following formats from a HE-AAC bitstream (see chapter 16 for factory default settings):

- Re-encoding to AC-3 or DTS bitstream.
- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream.

Where HDMI, HDMI ARC (or eARC) is implemented, NorDig IRDs supporting HE-AAC should be capable of providing the following formats from a HE-AAC bitstream (see chapter 16 for factory default settings):

- Pass-through of native bitstream (HE-AAC) (1).
- Decoded to PCM multichannel bitstream.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: HE-AAC over HDMI is defined in HDMI v 2.0 specification. |

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC and including an S/PDIF output **shall** be capable of providing the following formats on the S/PDIF connector from a HE-AAC bitstream:

- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream.
- Re-encoding to AC-3 or DTS bitstream.

### 6.2.4 AC-4: Requirements on Audio Handling

#### 6.2.4.1 AC-4: All Pass-through, Decoding and Re-encoding

NorDig IRD´s that support AC-4 **shall**

- decode AC-4 streams at all bit rates and sample rates listed in ETSI TS 103 190-2 [98]
- be capable of transcoding AC-4 bitstreams to E-AC-3 or AC-3 bitstreams according to ETSI TS 102 366 [33].

#### 6.2.4.2 AC-4: Metadata

The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** support the use of AC-4 metadata according to ETSI TS 103 190 [97] and ETSI TS 103 190 -2 [98] when;

- decoding AC-4 bitstreams.
- re-encoding AC-4 bitstreams to AC-3 or E-AC-3.

- creating a PCM output from an AC-4 bitstream.
- creating a MAT [99]~~[100]~~ output where supported.

#### 6.2.4.3 AC-4: Audio Output

Where HDMI, HDMI ARC (or eARC) is implemented, NorDig HEVC IRDs **shall** be capable of providing the following formats from an AC-4 bitstream (see chapter 16 for factory default settings):

- AC-4 bitstream decoded (rendered up to 5.1 channels) and re-encoded to E-AC-3 at a minimum bit rate of 640 kbps.
- AC-4 bitstream decoded (rendered up to 5.1 channels) and re-encoded to AC-3 at a fixed bit rate of 640 kbps.
- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream

Where HDMI, HDMI ARC (or eARC) is implemented, NorDig HEVC IRDs should be capable of providing the following formats from an AC-4 bitstream:

- AC-4 bitstream decoded (e.g. 5.1.2 channels) and re-encoded using E-AC-3 according to ETSI TS 102 366 [33] in combination with the JOC extension to E-AC-3 according to ETSI TS 103 420 [100].

Where HDMI (or HDMI eARC) is implemented, NorDig HEVC IRDs should be capable of providing the following formats from an AC-4 bitstream:

- Decoded to PCM multichannel bitstream (up to 5.1 channels).
- Decoded to PCM audio bitstreams with metadata (e.g., MAT [99]~~[100]~~, HDMI 2.1 [93]~~[102]~~).

The NorDig HEVC IRD supporting AC-4 and including an S/PDIF output **shall** be capable of providing the following formats on the S/PDIF connector from an AC-4 bitstream:

- AC-4 bitstream decoded (up to 5.1 channels) and re-encoded to AC-3 bitstream.
- Decoded and downmixed (if > 2 channels) to PCM stereo bitstream.

## *6.3 Multichannel Audio*

Multichannel audio is defined as an audio stream with more than two channels of audio with all loudspeaker positions in one plane. Audio streams that contain more than 5.1 audio channels are considered Immersive Audio, see section below.

The NorDig IRD should be able to output an audio stream as non-PCM encoded audio if there is a multichannel audio stream present for the chosen service in the incoming transport stream.

The multichannel audio **shall** be decoded to a stereo downmix under the control of the format indicated in the preferred stereo downmix parameter in the audio metadata, i.e. a matrix encoded compatible stereo downmix (Lt/Rt signal) or to a normal stereo downmix (Lo/Ro signal), and **shall** be fed to the (stereo) analogue output connectors (~~SCART,~~ RCA, headphones and/or built-in loudspeakers if present).

If audio does not include any preferred stereo downmix parameter in the audio metadata, the factory default method should be according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26], Annex C.5.2.4 (Lo/Ro) for AAC. For AC-3, and E-AC-3 and AC-4, there is always audio metadata included together with the audio bitstream.

The choice and priority between different stereo audio streams, and downmixed multichannel audio streams for the analogue outputs **shall** then be as specified in section 6.5 (Audio prioritisation). When multichannel audio (AC-3, E-AC-3, HE-AAC or AC-4) is present, it is recommended to show a visual indication.

See more details in section 6.5 Audio prioritisation and section 6.8 Audio Output Signals.

#### 6.3.1 Immersive Audio

NGA services also support Immersive Audio. Immersive Audio is defined as audio containing additional height elements. The height elements may be carried either as additional audio channels, sound field representation, audio objects or a combination of these.

Immersive Audio can be played back using either direct speakers or simulating real speakers through various techniques such as soundbars. Using appropriate virtualization techniques, immersive audio can also be experienced through headphones.

An example of immersive audio loudspeaker configuration is an eleven-speaker setup with one LFE that has seven loudspeakers positioned on one plane as in multichannel audio and four height loudspeakers at elevated positions, as specified in ETSI/ITU-R BS.2051-2 [103] as system J. This setup is also informally known as 7.1+4H or 7.1.4.

For stereo playback, the immersive audio **shall** be decoded to a stereo downmix under the control of the format indicated in the preferred stereo downmix parameter in the audio metadata, i.e. a matrix encoded compatible stereo downmix (Lt/Rt signal) or to a normal stereo downmix (Lo/Ro signal), and **shall** be fed to the (stereo) analogue output connectors (~~SCART~~, RCA, headphones and/or built-in loudspeakers if present).

The choice and priority between different stereo audio streams, downmixed multichannel audio streams and downmixing of immersive audio streams for the analogue outputs **shall** then be as specified in section 6.5 (Audio prioritisation). When AC-4 immersive audio is present, it is recommended to show a visual indication.

See more details in section 6.5 Audio Prioritisation and section 6.8 Audio Output Signals.

### *6.4 Stereo Audio*

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to output an audio stream as stereo audio if there is a stereo or mono audio stream present for the chosen service in the incoming transport stream.

See more details in section 6.2 Audio decoding, 6.5 Audio Prioritisation and 6.8 Audio Output Signals.

### *6.5 Audio Prioritisation*

#### 6.5.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to automatically select audio PID/stream according to user preference settings. The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall,** after PID/stream selection be able to automatically select NGA Preselection within an NGA stream according to user preferences.

In addition, the user **shall** be able to manually select between all audio streams and/or NGA Preselections (1) that are associated with the active service, these settings should be stored in the IRD´s memory separately for each service.

If manually selected audio is not able to be stored in the IRD´s memory per service, a global setting should be made possible to set manual prioritisation of stream type for all services.

For Audio language, Audio type (e.g. Normal or Supplementary Audio mode) and Audio format (stereo or multichannel), the priority for the selected audio source **shall** be based on the user preference settings and the audio PID/stream **shall** be selected according to the prioritisation schema selection in 6.5.2 for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs and in 6.5.3 for non-NGA capable NorDig IRDs below. (see section 16.2.3 for requirements of audio user preference settings for the NorDig IRD).

If the user preference settings are not matching any of the incoming audio streams, the NorDig IRD **shall** always select one of the audio streams which most closesly matches the user preference settings and will hereby provide audio to end-user.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: NGA Preselections only applicable for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs. |

### 6.5.2 Audio Prioritisation for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD

This section describes how NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs **shall** prioritise and select the audio PID/stream to be decoded for services with several audio PIDs/streams.

NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** prioritise the selection of NGA/AC-4 audio PID/stream over other audio PIDs/streams using other audio codecs when:

- NGA stream signalised a language that matches IRD user preference settings for primary audio language. (See section 6.5.4.1 how IRD shall detect language for PMT signalling), or
- NGA stream does not signalise any language (in PMT), or
- No NGA stream matches the user preference settings for primary audio language and no non-NGA stream matches the IRD user preference settings for primary and secondary audio language.

Otherwise, the non-NGA audio PIDs/streams **shall** be selected in accordance with section 6.5.3 below.

If NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD finds more than one NGA stream that matches the primary audio language or finds that none of the NGA streams match the primary audio language, the NGA stream with lowest PID **shall** be selected.

The selection among available presentation/preselections inside the AC-4 stream, **shall** be in accordance with section 6.5.6.

### 6.5.3 Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation for non-NGA streams

This section describes how NorDig IRDs **shall** prioritise and select the non-NGA audio PID/stream to be decoded for services with several non-NGA audio PIDs/streams.

For prioritisation between non-NGA audio PIDs/streams (for non-NGA capable NorDig IRDs or NGA capable NorDig IRDs that has not prioritised NGA stream(s) according to section 6.5.2), the audio source priority **shall** be based on the property of the supported audio streams and for different user preference settings of audio format and audio type as selected by the user according with table 6.1 below. See section 16.4 for factory default user preference settings related to audio.

| IRD settings → | | Normal audio mode | | Supplementary audio mode | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | **stereo mode (factory default)** | **multichannel mode** | **stereo mode** | **multichannel mode** |
| IRD behaviour depending on above IRD settings | | | | | |
| **Property of priority for audio** | **Priority** | **Order of priority** | | | |
| Audio type | 1 (highest) | 1.1 Normal<br>1.2 supplementary audio | 1.1 Normal<br>1.2 Supplementary audio | 1.1 supplementary audio<br>1.2 Normal | 1.1 supplementary audio<br>1.2 Normal |
| Language | 2 | 2.1 audio match primay audio language settings<br>2.2 audio match secondary audio language settings<br>2.3 (if no match) Normal audio<br>2.4 (if no Normal audio) any audio | 2.1 audio match primay audio language settings<br>2.2 audio match secondary audio language settings<br>2.3 (if no match) Normal audio<br>2.4 (if no Normal audio) any audio | 2.1 supplementary audio match primay audio language settings<br>2.2 supplementary audio match secondary audio language settings<br>2.3 (if no match) Normal audio<br>2.4 (if no Normal audio) any audio | 2.1 supplementary audio match primay audio language settings<br>2.2 supplementary audio<br>match secondary audio language settings<br>2.3 (if no match) Normal audio<br>2.4 (if no Normal audio) any audio |
| Audio format | 3 | 3.1 stereo<br>3.2 multichannel<br>3.3 mono | 3.1 multichannel<br>3.2 stereo<br>3.3 mono | 3.1 stereo<br>3.2 multichannel<br>3.3 mono | 3.1 multichannel<br>3.2 stereo<br>3.3 mono |
| Stream type | 4 (lowest) | 4.1 MPEG-1 Layer II<br>4.2 HE-AAC<br>4.3 E-AC-3<br>4.4 AC-3 | 4.1 HE-AAC<br>4.2 E-AC-3<br>4.3 AC-3<br>4.4 MPEG-1 Layer II | 4.1 MPEG-1 Layer II<br>4.2 HE-AAC<br>4.3 E-AC-3<br>4.4 AC-3 | 4.1 HE-AAC<br>4.2 E-AC-3<br>4.3 AC-3<br>4.4 MPEG-1 Layer II |

*Table 6.1 Audio Priority between incoming audio streams where a lower number refers to higher priority.*

In the event that the NorDig IRD finds more than one stream with same audio property parameters (type, language, format and stream type) that fully or partially matches the IRD user preference settings, of the remaining streams (which have the same audio properties) the stream with the lowest PID shall be selected.

#### 6.5.3.1 Audio PID/stream Prioritisation, Type (Normal or supplementary)

This section is for selection among non-NGA audio PIDs/streams (for the case that non-NGA capable NorDig IRDs or NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs do not prioritise the NGA stream(s) as above in section 6.5.2).

If the IRD's user preference setting for audio type is set to prioritise Normal audio, for non-NGA audio PID/streams, the NorDig IRD **shall** only use audio PID/stream of types other than Normal if no Normal audio is available at input for the selected service (see 6.1.2 for definition of Normal audio).

If the IRD's user preference setting for audio type is set to prioritise Supplementary audio, for non-NGA audio PID/streams, the NorDig IRD **shall** prioritise Supplementary Audio streams for the selected service that has language matching user preference settings for primary and secondary audio language. If the selected service has no Supplementary Audio with a language matching IRD's user preference settings for either primary or secondary audio language, the NorDig IRD **shall** instead prioritise Normal audio (before any Supplementary audio with a language not matching audio language preferences).

#### 6.5.3.2 Audio PID/stream Prioritisation, Languages

If an audio stream according to the primary audio language preference is not associated with the chosen service, the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically choose the audio stream according to the secondary audio language preference, if present.

#### 6.5.3.3 Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation, Format (multichannel or stereo)

This section is for selection among non-NGA audio PIDs/streams (for the case that non-NGA capable NorDig IRDs or NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs do not prioritise the NGA stream(s) as above in section 6.5.2).

If the IRD's user preference setting for audio type is set to multichannel mode and if both multichannel and stereo (non-NGA) streams are available for the selected language and audio type, the NorDig IRD **shall** use the multichannel audio stream to provide downmixed audio in analogue audio output(s), if applicable, and suitable digital bitstream format in digital audio output(s).

If stereo mode is selected and if both multichannel and stereo (non-NGA) streams are available for the selected language and audio type, the NorDig IRD **shall** use the stereo audio source to provide audio in analogue audio output(s), if applicable, and PCM stereo in digital audio output(s) as e.g. in examples in Annex G (Guidelines for NorDig IRD audio selection: "Example table when more than one audio stream is received").

If the NorDig IRD has an optional external audio system mode, then when that external audio system mode is selected as the primary audio output, the NorDig IRD **shall** follow user preferences and the priorities in Table 6.1.

### 6.5.4 Signalling to be used for audio property

The NorDig IRD **shall** use the signalling information in the PMT to determine the audio property (language, audio type, audio format and stream type) (1).

| Audio Property | Supplementary audio descriptor | AAC descriptor, Enhanced AC-3 descriptor, AC-3 descriptor | ISO 639 descriptor | PMT stream type | if no signalling/ descriptor |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Audio Language | 1st | - | 2nd | - | - |
| Audio type | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | | Normal |
| Audio format | - | 1st | - | - | stereo |
| Stream type | - | 2nd | - | 1st | - |

*Table 6.2 NorDig IRD priority inside each audio property between different signalling for audio streams and right column the IRD's interpretation if no signalling available for an audio stream.*

See Annex I for some example cases of priority between different incoming signalling for the audio property.

~~Note 1: The behaviour of the NorDig IRD depends upon this signalling in the PMT to make the audio priority decision, so it is expected that all broadcasts will include this signalling.~~

The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** use the signalling information in the PMT to determine the audio property (language, audio type, audio format and stream type).

| Audio Property | Audio Preselection Descriptor (*if supported*) | Supplementary audio descriptor | AAC descriptor, Enhanced AC-3 descriptor, AC-3 descriptor, AC-4 descriptor | ISO 639 descriptor | PMT stream type | if no signalling/ descriptor |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Audio Language | 1st (2) | 2nd | - | 3rd | - | - |
| Audio type | 1st | 2nd | 3rd | 4th | - | Normal |
| Audio format | 1st | - | 2nd | - | - | stereo |
| Stream type | - | - | 2nd | - | 1st | - |

*Table 6.3 NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD prioritization based on the available SI and descriptors.*

Note 1: The behaviour of the NorDig IRD depends upon this signalling in the PMT to make the audio priority decision, so it is expected that all broadcasts will include this signalling.

Note 2: Audio Language inside the Audio Preselection Descriptor is the only property used for PID/stream selection, while Audio type and Audio format inside the Audio Preselection Descriptor are used for presentation selection.

#### 6.5.4.1 Signalling to be used for audio language

For the selection of audio language (see Table 6.1 and Table 6.2), the NorDig IRD **shall** use the ISO 639 language code from the supplementary audio descriptor and/or the ISO 639 language descriptor.
The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** use the ISO_639_language_code from all preselections in the Audio Preselection Descriptor.

If several of these descriptors are available for the same audio stream describing language, then the language inside the Audio Preselection Descriptor **shall** have highest priority, the supplementary audio descriptor has second priority and lowest priority is ISO 639 descriptor.

#### 6.5.4.2 Signalling to be used for audio type

For the selection of audio type (see Table Table 6.1 and Table 6.2), the NorDig IRD **shall** use the signalling from supplementary audio descriptor (mix_type and editorial_classification), AAC descriptor (AAC_type), Enhanced _AC-3_descriptor (service type flags), AC-3 descriptor (service type flags) and/or the ISO 639 langauge descriptor (audio_type).

If several of these descriptors are available for the same audio stream, then the supplementary audio descriptor **shall** have highest priority, second priority is the AAC/Enhanced_AC-3/AC-3 descriptor and lowest priority is the ISO 639 descriptor.

Audio type **shall** be ignored for NGA PID/stream selection. The audio type that is used for audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream is taken either from the Audio Preselection Descriptor or from the ac4_toc, as specified in ESTI TS 103 190–2 [98] in the elementary stream.

It is assumed that an NGA stream carries all audio types for each language for the service, for example Normal audio, audio descripton and spoken subtitling are carried within the same NGA PID/stream, therefore the audio type in the audio descriptors is normally set to ‘undefined’ even though the NGA stream carries Supplementary audio.

#### 6.5.4.3 Signalling to be used for audio format

For the selection of audio format (mono, stereo or multichannel, see see Table 6.1 and Table 6.2), the NorDig IRD **shall** use:

- the *AAC_type* field in the AAC_descriptor for AAC audio,

- the *number of channels flags* in the AC-3 descriptor and Enhanced AC-3 descriptor for AC-3 and E-AC-3.

In any case where, for some reason, this information is not carried in the PMT for a particular audio stream, then the IRD **shall** prioritise based on the assumption that that audio stream contains Normal stereo content.

Audio format **shall** be ignored for NGA stream/PID selection. The audio format that is used for audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream is taken either from the Audio Preselection Descriptor or from the ac4_toc, as specified in ESTI TS 103 190–2 [98] in the elementary stream.

##### 6.5.4.4 Signalling to be used for audio stream type

For the selection of audio stream type (see see Table 6.1 and Table 6.2), the NorDig IRD **shall** use stream_type in the PMT and any complementing descriptor (AAC, Enhanced AC-3, or AC-3 descriptor or AC-4 descriptor) to decide which audio codec the stream has.

For example, the presence of an AC-4 descriptor in the ES_info_loop of the PMT indicates it is an AC-4 audio stream.

### 6.5.5 Examples of priority

Below are two examples aimed at explaining how the priority table **shall** be used. In general, the IRD's priority decision is completed once a single stream is identified when moving down the priority table. Hence it can occur that e.g. 4$^{th}$ priority rules do not have to be applied because the streams to decode have already been identified.

Example 1: IRD is in stereo mode, two audio streams are available to the IRD, both have same language, normal hearing, and are stereo, stream A is coded using HE-AAC and stream B is encoded using MPEG-1 Layer-II. IRD **shall** decode and playback MPEG-1 Layer II since, priority 1, 2 or 3 does not provide a preference between the two streams, but MPEG-1 Layer-II has higher priority than HE-AAC.

Example 2: IRD is in multichannel mode, two audio streams are available to the IRD, both have same language, normal hearing, stream A is multichannel coded using E-AC-3 and stream B is stereo encoded using HE-AAC. IRD **shall** decode and playback the E-AC-3 stream since, priority 1, 2 does not provide a preference between the two streams, but the IRD is in multichannel mode and there is only one multichannel stream; the E-AC-3 stream. In this example, the stream type priority is not used since already in the audio format priority a single stream could be identified.

In case of multiple audio streams being broadcasted, a clarifying example table can be found in Annex G "Example table when more than one audio codec is received", for how to select which audio stream to decode in multichannel or stereo user selected situation. That table is given by the property rules of Table 6.1.

### 6.5.6 Audio Prioritisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream

This section applies only to the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD.

Audio Prioritisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream can be done based on the Audio Preselection Descriptor or based on the ac4_toc, as specified in ETSI TS 103 190–2 [98] in the elementary stream.

The information from the elementary stream (ac4_toc) **shall** be used for audio prioritisation inside the NGA audio PID/stream based on the user preference settings.

For manual selection, the information from the Audio Preselection Descriptor (APD) **shall** be used.

The NGA audio stream(s) may contain additional or fewer preselections than those listed in the Audio Preselection Descriptor.

If the presentation corresponding to a manually selected preselection from the Audio Preselection Descriptor is not found in the bitstream, then the IRD **shall** fall back to preference-based presentation selection based on IRD settings and signalling in the elementary stream as specified above.

In case the presentation currently playing does not have corresponding information in the Audio Preselection Descriptor (APD), the information should be extracted from the elementary stream (ac4_toc) or, if that is not feasible, a default called "currently playing" or similar could be displayed.

Similarly, when a presentation present in APD but not present in the elementary stream (ac4_toc) is manually selected by the user, the NorDig HEVC IRD applies preference-based presentation selection based on the elementary stream (ac4_toc), resulting in a selection different to the user's. This selection should be reflected in the UI by extracting the information from the elementary stream (ac4_toc) or, if that is not feasible, a default called "currently playing" or similar could be displayed. Additionally, when a presentation present in APD but not present in the elementary stream (ac4_toc) is manually selected by the user, the NorDig HEVC IRD may inform the user that the selected audio presentation is not available in the current broadcast. It is expected that quasi-static APD signaling could result in an overrepresentation of presentations in the APD e.g., during advertisement breaks, where during the advert break there could be only one audio track available to all languages.

**Language:**
For audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream based on the Audio Preselection Descriptor the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD shall use the ISO 639 language code per preselection. For audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream based on the ac4_toc, as specified in ETSI TS 103 190–2 [98] in the elementary stream the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** use the primary language subtag of the IETF BCP 47 [101] language code in the content_type of the main audio or dialogue substream group.

**Audio Type:**
For audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream based on the Audio Preselection Descriptor the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** use the audio_description and spoken_subtitles flags per preselection. For audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream based on the ac4_toc, as specified in ETSI TS 103 190 – 2 [98] in the elementary stream, the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD shall use the presentation_config and, if present, the content_classifier of the associated audio substream group.

**Audio Format:**
NGA preselections can carry rendering information for immersive, multichannel, and stereo playback scenarios. Therefore, the audio format is not relevant for audio prioritisation inside the NGA PID/stream.

**Audio Prioritisation:**
The NGA capable NorDig IRD **shall** prioritise the preselection in the NGA stream according to Table 6.4. below.

Table 6.4 uses the terminology from the Audio Preselection Descriptor, however the ac4_toc is used for audio prioritisation based on user preferences. The ac4_toc functionality is typically part of audio decoder components. Therefore, the corresponding properties for Audio Type and Language are used which are described in the section above.

| **IRD settings →** | **Audio Description (AD) OFF** | | **Audio Description ON** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **Spoken Subtitles OFF** | **Spoken Subtitles ON** | **Spoken Subtitles OFF** | **Spoken Subtitles ON** |
| IRD behaviour depending on above IRD settings and preselection properties | | | | |
| **Priority** | **Priority with respect to best matching preselection** | | **Priority with respect to best matching preselection** | |
| 1 | AD **off** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | AD **off** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **primary** audio language ~~(1)~~ | AD **on** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **primary** audio language |
| 2 | AD **off** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | SpS **on** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **primary** audio language |
| 3 | Preselection matching **primary** audio language | Preselection matching **primary** audio language | SpS **off** Preselection matching **primary** audio language | SpS **on** Preselection matching **primary** audio language |
| 4 | AD **off** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | AD **off** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | Preselection matching **primary** audio language | Preselection matching **primary** audio language |
| 5 | AD **off** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | SpS **on** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language settings | AD **on** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language |
| 6 | Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **on** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | AD **on** and SpS **off** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language |
| 7 | (if no match) default Preselection | (if no match) default Preselection | SpS **off** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | SpS **on** Preselection matching **secondary** audio language |
| 8 | | | Preselection matching **secondary** audio language | Preselection matching **secondary** audio language |
| 9 | | | (if no match) default Preselection | (if no match) default Preselection |

*Table 6.4 Audio Priority between NGA Preselections for **NGA "Accesibility Services" with Audio description on/off and Spoken Subtitles on/off**. A lower number refers to higher priority.*

### 6.6 Audio Output Formats

The following Table 6.5 shows the expected output format based on the currently decoded audio and per digital audio out setting (multichannel mode or stereo mode) as selected by the user. It should be noted that this section defines minimum requirements; no restriction to use any new and innovative method to carry audio via digital audio interfaces is implied.

*Please note that Table 6.5 defines audio output formats after audio priority has been made between incoming audio streams (see section 6.5 and Table 6.1 for audio priority between incoming streams).*

| **Currently Decoded Audio** | **Output on S/PDIF and HDMI (incl. HDMI ARC and HDMI eARC, see note 9) (see note 4)** | | **Output on 2 ch analogue output(s) and/or built in loudspeaker(s) (see note 5)** |
|---|---|---|---|
| | **When Stereo mode is selected** | **When multichannel mode is selected** | |
| MPEG-1 layer II | PCM stereo | PCM stereo (see note 7) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II |
| HE-AAC stereo | PCM stereo | PCM stereo or optionally<br>HE-AAC stereo on HDMI (if IRD supports HE-AAC on HDMI, see note 3)<br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF | Decoded HE-AAC |
| E-AC-3 stereo | PCM stereo | E-AC-3 on HDMI (see note 2)<br>E-AC-3 transcoded to AC-3 on S/PDIF (see note 1) | Decoded<br>E-AC-3 |
| AC-3 stereo | PCM stereo | AC-3 (see note 1) | Decoded<br>AC-3 |
| AC-3 multichannel | Downmixed PCM stereo | AC-3 (see note 1) or PCM multichannel (see note 6) | Decoded downmixed<br>AC-3 |
| E-AC-3 multichannel | Downmixed PCM stereo | E-AC-3 on HDMI (see note 2)<br>E-AC-3 transcoded to AC-3 on S/PDIF (see note 1)<br>PCM multichannel (see note 6) | Decoded downmixed<br>E-AC-3 |

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| HE-AAC multichannel | Downmixed PCM stereo | HE-AAC multichannel on HDMI (if IRD supports HE-AAC on HDMI, see note 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF<br><br>PCM multichannel (see note 6) | Decoded downmixed<br><br>HE-AAC |
| AC-4 | Rendered to PCM stereo | AC-4 on HDMI (if IRD supports AC-4 on HDMI, see note 8)<br>E-AC-3 on HDMI (see note 2)<br>AC-3 on S/PDIF (see note 1)<br>PCM multichannel (see note 6)<br>MAT (PCM and metadata, see note 9) | AC-4 decoded and rendered to stereo signal |

*Table 6.5 Audio Output formats*

Note 1: The S/PDIF output **shall** in any case comply with the content of the table above. For HDMI however, the following feature should be implemented:
If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that it only supports Basic Audio (i.e. two-channel L-PCM from the original stereo signal or from a stereo down-mix from the multichannel signal), then the IRD output will be Basic Audio. This feature would then take precedence over the requirement of AC-3, E-AC-3, HE-AAC multichannel and DTS in the table above whenever the receiving device indicates that only Basic Audio is supported. Observe however that the HDMI output could be different from S/PDIF output, since S/PDIF still has to comply with multichannel format requirements as in the table above.

Note 2: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC or HDMI eARC receiving device indicates that AC-3 decoding is supported, but E-AC-3 decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode E-AC-3 streams to AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 3: For IRDs that support the optional output HE-AAC on HDMI: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC or HDMI eARC receiving device indicates that AC-3 or DTS is supported, but HE-AAC decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode HE-AAC streams to AC-3 or DTS prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 4: For IDTVs, this **shall** apply when External Audio System (if supported) is selected as audio output. If built-in loudspeakers are selected for audio output the minimum requirement is to have PCM output signal in the digital output, where supported.

Note 5: When external audio system (if supported) is selected as main audio output, IDTVs may optionally mute the TV speakers.

Note 6: If the IRD supports PCM multichannel over HDMI or HDMI eARC (not applicable for HDMI ARC).

Note 7: If content is stereo, output **shall** be PCM stereo also in case of multichannel mode.

Note 8: For IRDs that support the optional output AC-4 on HDMI: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC or HDMI eARC receiving device indicates that E-AC-3 decoding is supported, but AC-4 decoding is not supported, the IRD shall re-encode AC-4 streams to E-AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission. If an HDMI, HDMI ARC or HDMI eARC receiving device indicates that AC-3 decoding is supported, but neither of E-AC-3 or AC-4 decoding is supported, the IRD shall re-encode AC-4 streams to AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 9: NorDig recognises that HDMI eARC will enable delivery of multichannel audio between suitably equipped iDTVs and A/V decoders. Revisions of this document will consider including recommendations/requirements regarding this output method. For example, MAT [99]~~[100]~~.

## 6.7 Audio Video Synchronisation

The NorDig IRD **shall** not introduce more than ±5 ms of relative delay between the audio and video components on the primary output (1) and not more than ±25 ms between the primary video output and a secondary audio output (2).

The requirement for the relative delay **shall** be met from 5 seconds after the start of decoding a service. The relative delay between the audio and video components **shall** be synchronised continuously using the service's PCR and PTS values in the MPEG transport stream, resulting in maintaining correct synchronisation until a change of service.

If the NorDig IRD, as a part of an integrated digital TV set (IDTV) has an audio output, the audio and/or decoded PCM digital audio output **shall** be in sync with the video display.

Where audio leaves the IRD in an encoded form (such as in IEC 61937 [41] bitstream from S/PDIF, HDMI, HDMI ARC or HDMI eARC outputs, the IRD **shall** compensate for the decoding latency of the selected audio format, as specified for the relevant reference decoder for the selected format (e.g AC-3), such that the output of the reference decoder would be ±5 ms with respect to the decoded video. This applies for all audio systems that the IRD supports.

Note 1: In this case, primary output for STB is primary HDMI ~~and TV SCART~~, and for IDTV is the video display and internal loudspekars (see sections 8.5 and 8.6).

Note 2: In this case, primary video output is the same as note 1. Secondary audio outputs for STB are i.e. secondary HDMI, ~~VCR SCART~~, analogue RCA, and S/PDIF (see section 8.5). Secondary audio outputs for IDTV are i.e. ~~SCART,~~ analogue RCA, S/PDIF, HDMI ARC, HDMI eARC, headphone output, and "external audio system".

### 6.7.1 Adjustment of Audio/Video delay

The NorDig IRD (1) **shall** support the possibility to adjust the audio-delay on the HDMI and S/PDIF output (if available) at least up to 250 ms and it should be adjustable in 5 ms steps or smaller steps, as the IRD may have several different user set-ups, resulting in different a/v delays; e.g. the IRD may be connected to several types of external audio amplifiers and the IRD may be connected to several types of external screens.

The NorDig IRD should also be able to automatically adjust the audio/video synchronization via HDMI (minimum) version 1.3 interface to compensate for delay times of video displays.

Note 1: Optional (recommended) for NorDig IDTV.

## *6.8 Audio Output Signals*

### 6.8.1 Analogue Audio Output (~~SCART,~~ RCA)

If the IDTV has an analogue stereo audio output on a pair of RCA connectors and/or headphone connector, the audio **shall** be in sync with the video display, see section 6.7.
If the NorDig IRD has analogue stereo output(s), it **shall** be capable of decoding and downmixing the supported audio formats for the analogue outputs.

The NorDig IRD with ~~SCART and/or~~ analogue outputs **shall** always have an audio signal present on the analogue outputs (~~SCART and~~ stereo out, see section 8.5 and to built-in loudspeakers (see note 1) if any of the supported formats is received.

For the NorDig IRD with analogue audio outputs (~~SCART and/or~~ e.g. built-in loudspeakers), it **shall** be possible to control the audio level on the analogue outputs primarily used for TV viewing (~~TV SCART and~~ e.g. built-in loudspeakers) with the remote-control unit and buttons on the IRD (if present). It should be possible to control the audio level on other analogue audio outputs (like RCA, headphone etc) using the same controls.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: For IDTVs that provide a setting to choose the audio output between the built-in TV speakers and the external audio system, it is optional to have signal in the built-in TV speakers when the external audio system setting is selected. The reasons for this are that when the user selects output to an external audio system as the priority, then the audio levels and compression settings are optimized for an external audio system and may not be suitable for output to TV speakers (e.g., lower dialogue level, high dynamic range). |

### 6.8.2 Digital Audio Output (HDMI, HDMI ARC, HDMI eARC and S/PDIF)

For NorDig iDTV that cannot reproduce multichannel audio using built-in loudspeakers and/or connected loudspeakers, it should have an S/PDIF output and/or an HDMI Audio Return Channel (HDMI ARC) and/or HDMI eARC output, see sections 8.5 and 8.6.

The NorDig STB **shall** have an HDMI output and should have an S/PDIF output, see sections 8.6 (HDMI audio) and 8.5.3 (S/PDIF).

For NorDig STB, where only PCM audio will be carried on the HDMI output primarily used for TV viewing (e.g. stereo only HDMI sink (2), selection of "Stereo mode" by the user), it **shall** be possible to control the audio level on this HDMI with the remote control unit and buttons on the IRD (if present). Where only PCM audio will be carried on other digital audio outputs (S/PDIF, secondary HDMI port etc), it should be possible to control the audio level on other digital audio outputs using the same controls.
The digital audio output as defined in section 8.5.3 (S/PDIF) and 8.6 (HDMI) **shall** always give either a valid PCM-output according to IEC 60958 [40] or a non-PCM audio bit-stream according to IEC 61937 [41]. The user **shall** be able to choose between the following storable output modes on the digital audio output interface (1):

1. Forced PCM output according to IEC 60958 [40] (Part1 General, Part 3 Consumer).

2. Non-PCM audio bit-stream output according to IEC 61937 [41] when present and if not present output PCM according to IEC 60958 [40]. Non-PCM audio bitstream formats like AC-3, and DTS **shall** be possible to order and enable/disable according to priority set by the user.

3. This chapter is also valid for HDMI, HDMI ARC and HDMI eARC, as HDMI transmits digital audio according to IEC 60958 [40] and IEC 61937 [41]. Observe that HDMI supports more stream types than S/PDIF.

See sections 6.3 and 6.5 for more details.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: The IRD's different digital audio outputs may use use different audio output formats, for example HDMI using PCM stereo and S/PDIF using non-PCM audio bitstream (like AC-3 or DTS). |
| Note 2: A "stereo only HDMI sink" refers here to a downstream device to which the STB is connected to and which can only render stereo audio, for example a TV set without a multichannel decoder. |

### 6.9 Dynamic Changes in the audio streams

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle dynamic changes of audio component(s) (PID/PIDs/preselections) in a service. The IRD **shall** automatically identify if an audio component is added or removed. The NorDig IRD should gracefully handle change of service or audio format at the audio outputs without significant disturbances to the end user.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle the following dynamic changes without user interaction and start decoding within one second after reception of a change (like PMT update, elementary stream header signalling, audio metadata):

- change of number of audio channels (still same audio codec), (for example from mono to stereo to multichannel, from multichannel to stereo to mono, from immersive to multichannel to stereo to mono, from mono to stereo to multichannel to immersive).
- changes in audio metadata such as loudness, downmix coefficients, DRC, etc. (this does not apply to MPEG-1 Layer II.).
- change of bitrate for an audio component (for example from 192 kbps to 160 kbps).
- change of audio PID value (typical examples are during regional news insertions) (case SVT regional news insertion), the NorDig IRD **shall** use next preferred audio component/PID.
- removal of one or more audio component(s), the NorDig IRD **shall** use next preferred audio component (for example; a service broadcasts two or more audio components and then removes one of them, like removal of AC-3 during regional news broadcast) (case SVT regional news insertion).
- addition of one or more audio component(s) with higher preferred user settings (for example; a service adds an audio component/PID, like add AC-3 audio component, after a regional news broadcast) (case SVT regional news insertion).

The NorDig IRD **shall** handle the dynamic changes after change of selected service ("zapping") or dynamic PMT update (i.e., **shall** not require to re-install services) and **shall** be able to handle the following dynamic changes without user interaction and start decoding within one second after reception of change:

- change of the audio codec, (for example change from MPEG-1 Layer II into AC-3).
- change of ISO 639-2 [68] language for an audio component.
- AC-4 internal configuration changes: Change of accessibility service(s), Audio Description, language, see 6.7.4 (Multiple audio programme components) of ETSI TS 101 154 [26]

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to read the audio information contained in the DVB_SI stream_content and component_type of the component descriptor as defined in ETSI EN 300 468 [13], see also chapter 12 and section 13.3.2. The NorDig IRD should be able to present the audio information, including the descriptors for audio description for the visually impaired and audio for the hard of hearing, contained in the component descriptor to the user for information and selection purposes.

### 6.10 Dialogue enhancement

Next Generation Audio enables Dialogue Enhancement which gives the possibility to adjust the relative level of the dialogue, to aid speech intelligibiltiy or to suit the preference of the user. See section 16.2.3 for the user preference settings that are related to Dialogue Enhancement.

## *6.11 Supplementary Audio*

This section describes how NorDig IRDs **shall** handle supplementary audio for non-NGA PIDs/streams.

### 6.11.1 Informative for Supplementary Audio

A supplementary audio service (as defined in ETSI TS 101 154 [26]) is specified below for the "in-service delivery" and applies when (non-NGA) Normal audio PIDs/streams and the supplementary audio PIDs/streams are available within the same service (i.e. listed within same PMT). A supplementary audio service as specified in this section 6.11, including all subsections, does not apply to the NGA PIDs/streams. Accessibility services for NGA PIDs/streams are specified in section 6.14.

A Supplementary Audio (SA) service may be broadcast as either:

- "Broadcast mixed": pre-mixed audio by the broadcaster where the Supplementary Audio stream is a complete self-standing audio which contains both the Normal audio mixed together with the supplementary audio content.
- "Receiver mixed": audio containing only the supplementary audio content which is not a complete self-standing audio and is not intended to be presented on its own. The receiver mixed supplementary audio and Normal audio is typically mixed together inside the IRD, under some control of the broadcaster (mixing level).

### 6.11.2 General requirements for supplementary audio

The Nordig IRD's audio decoder **shall** be capable of supporting 'visual impaired' Supplementary audio (SA) services, as defined in ETSI TS 101 154 [26] (however, control of pan and fade is optional).

The NorDig IRD **shall** (1) support both Broadcast mixed and Receiver mixed Supplementary Audio.

### 6.11.3 IRD settings for Supplementary Audio

#### 6.11.3.1 IRD user preference settings for Supplementary Audio

The user **shall** be able to enable and disable Supplementary audio and to change the default user preference setting(s), (see section 16.2 for IRD factory default settings).

The NorDig IRD user selection of audio preferences for 'Normal' and 'Supplementary' Audio (see 6.1.1) **shall** be a fixed setting (i.e. remain when changing service and when re-starting the IRD). (The wording for supplementary audio may typically be 'Audio Description', 'AD', referring to all versions of supplementary audio types).

#### 6.11.3.2 Temporary selection for Supplementary Audio

The NorDig IRD should have an alternative metod to temporarily select supplementary audio, e.g. via an audio key or an AD key on the remote control (i.e. a temporary selection that does not change the IRD's stored user preference settings). This temporary selection of 'Audio Type' **shall** not remain when changing service, language, stream type or when re-starting the IRD.

#### 6.11.3.3 Audio priority for Supplementary Audio

Enabling a Supplementary Audio mode **shall** change the 'Audio Type' priority (see section 6.5). If no Supplementary audio streams are received, then the NorDig IRD **shall** use Normal audio from the same selected language.

If several supplementary audio streams are available for the same language and the same IRD user supplementary audio preference settings (for example both Audio Description and Spoken Subtitling), then the IRD **shall** by default prioritise the audio that is first listed in the PMT.

#### 6.11.3.4 Display of available Supplementary audio streams

The IRD should present information to the user if the service has a supplementary audio available, for example in “info banner” after selecting such a service.

If the IRD offers the option to select a supplementary audio track as a temporary selection, then the IRD should indicate that this is of a supplementary audio type together with its language.

#### 6.11.3.5 Audio mixing level

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to adjust the relative audio mixing level between the incoming receiver mixed supplementary audio and the Normal audio.

This relative adjustment of audio mixing level should be able to both enhance and reduce the supplementary audio level compared to the Normal audio before mixing depending on user settings.

### 6.11.4 Selection of audio streams

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to select the correct audio type stream according to user preference settings, see section 6.5.

When the user has selected Normal audio as preferred audio, the NorDig IRD **shall** by default select the Normal audio stream for services which have several audio streams with different audio type for selected language.

When the user has selected Supplementary Audio as preferred audio, the NorDig IRD **shall** by default select the supplementary audio stream for services which have several audio streams with different audio type for selected language.

The NorDig IRD with separate user preference settings for Audio Type selection of Audio Description and Spoken Subtitles (see section 16.2.3) shall select the appropriate Supplementary audio stream based on supplementary_audio_descriptor signalling. Furthermore, if the Supplementary Audio is signaled via ISO 639(1) language descriptor but no supplementary_audio_descriptor (i.e. supplementary_audio_descriptor is missing, meaning that the IRD can not distinguish if Supplementary Audio is Audio Description or Spoken Subtitles), the Supplementary Audio shall be selected if any of the user preferences settings Audio Description or Spoken Subtitles are turned on.

~~Note 1: ISO_639_language_descriptor audio_type 0x03 (visually impaired commentary) is used in combination with one particular language, while Normal Audio is signalled as audio_type 0x00.~~

Observe that the Supplementary Audio descriptor overrides the language and audio type stated in the ISO639 descriptor, see section 6.5.4.

Note 1: ISO_639_language_descriptor audio_type 0x03 (visually impaired commentary) is used in combination with one particular language, while Normal Audio is signalled as audio_type 0x00.

### 6.11.5 Signalling for Supplementary Audio

All Supplementary Audio streams (both Broadcast mixed and Receiver mixed) will be signalled by the broadcaster by means of Supplementary Audio descriptors and for services with several audio streams (e.g one Normal/ plus one Supplementary Audio stream) also an ISO 639 language descriptor.

Broadcast mixed Supplementary Audio streams will, in the ISO 639 descriptor use audio type 0x00 'undefined' (to avoid issues in legacy IRDs).

Receiver mixed Supplementary Audio streams will in the ISO 639 descriptor use audio type 0x03 'visual impaired' or 0x00 'undefined' (to avoid issues in legacy IRDs).

See section 6.5.1 for priority between different descriptors for audio streams and section 12.1.6 for more information about the descriptors for audio.

*Legacy IRDs currently in the market are known to handle supplementary audio in a variety of ways, and there are some cases where legacy IRDs are even "disturbed" by the presence of Supplementary Audio. To mitigate this and avoid unwanted behaviour, some Networks use special signalling for the Supplementary Audio. This means for example that in some networks a broadcast pre-mixed supplementary audio may be signalled in the ISO639 descriptor as Normal ('undefined') audio type but with language code 'nar', or a receiver mixed supplementary audio may be signalled in the ISO639 descriptor as 'visual impaired' audio type but with a different language to that of the associated Normal audio. Language code 'nar' refers here to as 'narrative'.*

The IRDs may/should support to translate language code 'nar' in ISO639 descriptor as 'narrative' language for the user and may/should support 'narrative' as user selectable for audio language in user preference settings. The IRD may interpret audio signalled with language code 'nar' in ISO639 descriptor as Broadcast mixed Supplementary Audio (if no supplementary audio descriptor is available for the PID/stream).

### 6.11.6 Receiver mixing

The NorDig IRD **shall** support Receiver mixed Supplementary Audio when the two audio streams are of the same codec family, sampling rate and on two different PIDs. The NorDig IRD **shall** support receiver mixing of Supplementary Audio services encoded as MPEG-1 Layer II, HE-AAC and E-AC-3 coding standards, where those codecs are supported.

The NorDig IRD is not required to support receiver mixing when Normal and Supplementary Audio are broadcast within the same E-AC-3 stream/PID.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to mix the Normal audio stream together with the supplementary audio stream ('visual impaired').

The NorDig IRD **shall** not decode a 'receiver mixed' supplementary audio stream without also decoding and presenting it with the associated Normal audio stream either mixed to the same audio output, or optionally presenting Supplementary Audio on its own on the headphones output while presenting the Normal audio on the other audio outputs, see section 6.11.7.

#### 6.11.6.1 Receiver mixed, Pan and fade control

For MPEG-1 Layer II and HE-AAC, the NorDig IRD should support pan and fade control of the receiver mixing via inband control metadata in the audio stream as described in ETSI TS 101 154 Annex E [26] and for E-AC-3 as in TS 102 366 [33].

For MPEG-1 Layer II and HE-AAC, the supplementary audio stream may carry the AD descriptor in its PES_private_data, as defined in ETSI TS 101 154 [26] Annex E.2. This AD descriptor provides the audio decoder with the information needed to control the mixing of the supplementary stream with the main stream (pan and fade). For MPEG supplementary audio streams without an AD descriptor in the PES header, the NorDig IRD **shall** use mixing as central forward presentation (pan = 0x00) and no fade (fade = 0x00).

For the E-AC-3 codec, the mixing data is carried in the supplementary E-AC-3 stream, as defined in ETSI TS 102 366 [33], and, for this codec, any AD descriptor **shall** be ignored.

#### 6.11.7 Receiver mixed on its own for headphones output

The IRD with headphones output should also support presenting the receiver mixed Supplementary Audio on its own on the headphones interface and at the same time presenting the Normal audio on its own on the other main audio outputs (HDMI, S/PDIF etc).

The reason behind this alternative is that:

- other family members may not want to be disturbed by the Supplementary Audio, but still be able to watch a programme together with family members who are helped by the Supplementary Audio and/or
- use of a separate loudspeaker for the Supplementary Audio compared to the Normal audio, which can help to localise the different audio types and thereby give better intelligibility.

#### 6.11.8 Broadcast mixed

The NorDig IRD **shall** support broadcast mixed supplementary audio services encoded as MPEG-1 Layer II, HE-AAC, AC-3 and E-AC-3 coding standards, where those codecs are supported.

### *6.12 IRD Internal Reference Level*

The level for reference tones for transmission will be 18 dB below clipping level, in accordance with EBU Recommendation R.68 Alignment level in digital audio production equipment and in digital recorders as recommended by ETSI TS 101 154 [26].

### *6.13 Loudness Levels – Dynamic Range Control and Downmixing*

To achieve loudness and dynamic range consistency over codec formats, the Nordig IRD **shall** follow the following guidelines on audio levelling and dynamic range control. This section does not cover NGA AC-4. For NGA streams, see section 6.15.

A typical implementation for loudness levels on an IDTV-implementation is found in Annex H, “Loudness levels – Typical IDTV Audio Block diagram”.

#### 6.13.1 HE-AAC Audio Input and AC-3/E-AC-3 Audio Input

The NorDig IRD **shall**, by default, be able to present the decoded HE-AAC /AC-3/ E-AC-3 bitstream at an average loudness level of -23 LUFS. Where prog_ref_level as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] or dialnorm as of ETSI TS 102 366 [33] is included in the stream, it **shall** indicate the loudness of the audio essence contained within the bitstream using the numerically equivalent dBFS value (e.g. a measured loudness of -23 LUFS **shall** be indicated by a prog_ref_level / dialnorm value of -23 dBFS).

##### 6.13.1.1 HE-AAC Decoding

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -23 dBFS, the following applies:

> If program level data of the form prog_ref_level as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used; otherwise a prog_ref_level of -23 dBFS **shall** be used.
>
> If drc_presentation_mode as of ETSI TS 101 154 Annex C.5.2.2.3 [26] is present in the bitstream and indicates DRC Presentation Mode 2, then any dynamic range control data of the form dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctlas of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] also present in the bitstream **shall** be used and may not be scaled if they indicate negative gains. Otherwise if dynamic range data of the form compression_value as of ETSI TS 101 154 Annex C 5.2 [26] or of the form compression_value as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used and it may be scaled.
>
> It is expected that the broadcaster **shall** ensure that sufficient headroom and/or dynamic range control values are included in the transmission to prevent any overload when downmixing.

For NorDig IRDs that supports a multichannel audio output, the Nordig IRD should be able to decode utilizing a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS. See section 6.13.3 for audio output levels.

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS, the following applies:

If program level data of the form prog_ref_level as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used; otherwise a prog_ref_level of -23 dBFS **shall** be used.

If dynamic range control data of the form dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used, and it may be scaled.

If downmixing is performed and dynamic range data of the form dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] is present in the bitstream, those **shall** be applied without scaling if they indicate negative gains.

#### 6.13.1.2 E-AC-3 and AC-3 Decoding

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -23 dBFS, the following applies:

If program level data of the form dialnorm as of ETSI 102 366 [33] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used, if dynamic range control data of the form compr as of ETSI 102 366 [33] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used and it may not be scaled.

It is expected that the broadcaster **shall** ensure that sufficient headroom and/or dynamic range control values are included in the transmission to prevent any overload when downmixing. For NorDig IRDs that supports a multichannel audio output, the NorDig IRD should be able to decode utilizing a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS. See section 6.13.3 for audio output levels.

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS, the following applies:

Program level data of the form dialnorm as of ETSI 102 366 [33] **shall** be used.

If dynamic range control data of the form dynrng as of of ETSI 102 366 [33] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used, and it may be scaled.

If downmixing is performed and dynamic range data of the form dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl as of ISO/IEC 14496-3 [53] or of the form dynrng as of of ETSI 102 366 [33] is present in the bitstream, those **shall** be applied without scaling if they indicate negative gains.

#### 6.13.1.3 Summary

A summary of which levelling data and dynamic range control parameters **shall** be used in conjunction with which stream type target reference level and DRC presentation mode can be found in Table 6. below.

| Stream type | Target reference level | Levelling data | DRC Presentation Mode | Dynamic range control parameter |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| AC-3 and E-AC-3 | -23 dBFS | dialnorm per ETSI TS 102 366 | n/a | compr per ETSI TS 102 366 |
| AC-3 and E-AC-3 | -31 dBFS | dialnorm per ETSI TS 102 366 | n/a | dynrng per ETSI TS 102 366 |
| HE-AAC | -23 dBFS | prog_ref_level per ISO/IEC 14496-3 | Mode 1 | compression_value per ETSI 101 154 Annex C |
| HE-AAC | -31 dBFS | prog_ref_level per ISO/IEC 14496-3 | Mode 1 | dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl per ISO/IEC 14496-3 |
| HE-AAC | -23 dBFS | prog_ref_level per ISO/IEC 14496-3 | Mode 2 | dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl per ISO/IEC 14496-3 |
| HE-AAC | -31 dBFS | prog_ref_level per ISO/IEC 14496-3 | Mode 2 | dyn_rng_sgn/dyn_rng_ctl per ISO/IEC 14496-3 |

*Table 6.6 Target reference levels*

### 6.13.2 MPEG-1 Layer II Audio Input

For MPEG-1 Layer II audio input, the default loudness is assumed to be -23 LUFS and therefore no level adjustments are expected to be made for decoding to a target reference level of -23 dBFS. It is expected that the broadcaster ensures that MPEG-1 Layer II audio stream has an equivalent loudness level of -23 LUFS.

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS (i.e. digital audio output), the following applies:

An attenuation of 8 dB **shall** be made to the audio stream.

### 6.13.3 Audio Output Levels

In order to match the loudness of audio streams in a downstream AV receiver, PCM streams at a target reference level of -23 dBFS **shall** be reduced in level by 8dB before being output on S/PDIF or HDMI to that device. PCM streams at a target reference level of -31 dBFS **shall** not be increased in level prior to output. If an HDMI (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that it supports multichannel PCM audio, then stereo or multichannel PCM should be output at a target reference level of -31 dBFS.

If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that it only supports Basic Audio (i.e. two-channel L-PCM), then the output should be levelled to a target reference level of -23 dBFS.

For analogue (stereo) outputs, the target reference level should be levelled to -23 dBFS (as measured on a digital signal).

## *6.14 NGA Accessibility Services*

The NGA capable Nordig HEVC IRD audio decoder **shall** be capable of supporting the NGA Accessibility services “Audio Description”, “Spoken Subtitles” and “Dialogue Enhancement”, as defined in section 6.1.

#### 6.14.1 IRD Settings for NGA Accessibility Services

The user **shall** be able to enable and disable Accessibility services and to change the default setting (see section 16.4 for IRD factory default settings).

The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** enable a persistent setting of audio preferences for Normal audio and Accessibility services (see section 6.1.1), as defined in section 16.2. (i.e. remain when changing service and when re-starting the IRD).

The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD should enable an easy, but temporary, method to select NGA Accessibility Services, e.g., via an audio key or an AD key on the remote control (see also section 13.6), i.e., a temporary selection that does not change the IRD's stored user preference settings. This temporary selection of Accessibility services **shall** not remain when changing service, language, stream type or when re-starting the IRD.

If no NGA Accessibility service preselection is available, then the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** use Normal audio preselection from the same selected language.

#### 6.14.2 Display of available NGA Accessibility Services

The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD should present information to the user if the service has a NGA accessibilty service available, for example in "info banner" after selecting such a service.

If the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD offers the option to select an NGA accessibility service preselection as a temporary selection, then the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD should indicate which accessibility service type it is (Audio Description, spoken subtitles and/or dialogue enhancement) together with its language.

#### 6.14.3 NGA Accessibility signalling

All NGA Accessibility Services will be signalled in the broadcast stream by means of the Audio Preselection Descriptor (see section 12.6.12).

The signalling of the NGA Accessibility Services in the Audio Preselection Descriptor **shall** be mapped to the NGA codec specific values according to ETSI EN 300 468 [13] Table M.1.

#### 6.14.4 NGA Preselection with Audio Description over headphones output

The NGA capable Nordig HEVC IRD with headphones output should support presenting, if available, the Audio Description NGA Preselection on its own on the headphones interface and at the same time presenting the Normal NGA Preselection on its own on the other main audio outputs (HDMI, S/PDIF etc).

The Audio Description NGA Preselection may be identified by the audio_description element in the Audio Preselection Descriptor, or similarly by the corresponding signalling in the NGA audio stream according to ETSI EN 300 468 [13] Table M.1.

### *6.15 Loudness Levels and Dynamic Range Control for NGA*

#### 6.15.1 Loudness and Dynamic Range Control for AC-4

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -23 dBFS, the following applies:

> Program level data of the form dialnorm as of ETSI 103 190-1 [97] **shall** be used.
>
> If dynamic range control data according to section 4.3.13 of ETSI 103 190-1 [97] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used, and it may not be scaled.
>
> The broadcaster must ensure that sufficient headroom and/or dynamic range control values are included in the transmission to prevent any overload when downmixing.

For NorDig IRDs that supports a multichannel audio output, the NorDig IRD should be able to decode utilizing a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS.

For decoding to a Target Reference Level of -31 dBFS, the following applies:

Program level data of the form dialnorm as of ETSI 103 190-1 [97] **shall** be used.

If dynamic range control data according to section 4.3.13 of ETSI 103 190-1 [97] is present in the bitstream, it **shall** be used and it may be scaled.

# 7 Teletext and Subtitling

## 7.1 General

DVB Subtitling (ETSI EN 300 743[17]) and EBU Teletext Subtitling (ETSI EN 300 706 [16]) are mandatory in the NorDig IRDs. NorDig HEVC IRDs **shall** also support TTML subtitling (ETSI EN 303 560[94]).

The user **shall** be able to enable and disable displaying of subtitles and to select primary and secondary subtitling language, see sections 7.1.2, 7.3 and 7.4.

For the graphic compositing of subtitles over video, see section 5.14 (all supported formats).

The NorDig IRD **shall** be capable of decoding one subtitle-stream at a time; it is not expected that the IRD **shall** display more than one subtitle stream (Note ~~1~~ 3).

Note 1: The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** support Subtitling preferences and requirements as stated below also for broadband distributed content where applicable.

Note 2: TTML is primarily intended to be used for MPEG-H/HEVC based services.

Note ~~1~~ 3: In case of multiple subtitle types within the same elementary stream/PID, it is up to the broadcaster to ensure that all necessary subtitle types are included in the appropriate subtitle-streams in order to match their editorial intent (for example a hard-of-hearing stream could therefore include hard-of-hearing subtitles plus translation subtitles).

### 7.1.1 Wordings and definitions for subtitles

EBU Teletext, DVB Subtitling and DVB TTML specifications are using different wordings for the different types of subtitling. See table 7.1 below for NorDig's wording and the relationship to EBU Teletext, DVB and TTML subtitling specifications.

| Wordings related to subtitling | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **NorDig** | **EBU Teletext** | **DVB Subtitling** | **TTML** | **Interpretation** |
| Translation dialogue subtitles (or Normal subtitles) | (0x02) subtitling | Normal subtitles | Translation dialogue subtitles | Subtitles that includes a translation of foreign language dialogue |
| Non-translation dialogue subtitles | - | - | Non-translation dialogue subtitles | Subtitles that includes a transcription of same language dialogue |
| Hard-of-hearing subtitles | (0x05) subtitle for hearing impaired | Hard of hearing subtitles | Hard-of-hearing subtitles | Subtitles that includes descriptions of non-dialogue sounds. (e.g. gun fire, explosion, lions roar). |
| Audio Description subtitles | - | - | Audio Description subtitles | Subtitles that includes description of the visual scene. (e.g. "a lion lies in the sun."). Intended for text-to-speech. |
| Content-related commentary subtitles | - | - | Content-related commentary subtitles | Subtitles that includes commentary related information. (e.g. director's commentary). |

*Table 7.1 Wordings related to subtitling*

See Annex F for recommended translation in menus for above wordings.

*Informative: For EBU Teletext and DVB Subtitling broadcasters often includes the 'non-translation dialogue' subtitles as part of their hard-of-hearing subtitling stream. In order to handle that IRDs only decode one EBU Teletext or DVB Subtitling stream/page at the time, the broadcaster may typically also include the translation dialogue ('normal') subtitles into the hard-of-hearing subtitling stream so the hard-of-hearing stream becomes complete.*

Note: In some other markets where audio dubbing is frequently used and/or translation dialogue is always burnt-in into video, may refer DVB Subtitling "normal subtitles" for non-translation dialogue subtitles.

### 7.1.2 Subtitling user preferences

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least have user selection of subtitling preferences for 'translation dialogue' ('normal') and 'hard-of-hearing' subtitles.

The NorDig HEVC IRD should also have user selection of subtitling preferences for 'non-translation dialogue' subtitles. NorDig HEVC IRDs not supporting subtitling preferences for 'non-translation dialogue' subtitles, should instead group incoming 'hard-of-hearing' and 'non-translation dialogue' subtitles into the 'hard-of-hearing' IRD setting (see table 7.3 in section 7.1.6 below).

The IRD may also have user preference settings for 'content-related commentary' subtitling.

The user preference settings for subtitling should be common for EBU Teletext subtitling, DVB Subtitling and TTML Subtitling (~~1~~ 2), see section 16 for factory default settings of the subtitling.

Note 1: Correct functionality for the Hard of Hearing/hearing impaired service, requires that the Content Providers delivers this service as a mix of translated subtitling and Hard of Hearing/hearing impaired subtitling.
Note ~~1~~ 2: TTML Subtitling is only mandatory for the NorDig HEVC IRD.

### 7.1.3 Only display subtitling if match language in user preferences

The NorDig IRD **shall** only display subtitles, if a language of the received subtitle matches any of the NorDig IRD's user preference settings for language for subtitling. (This means that if none of the languages for the received subtitle(s) match any of the IRD's user preference settings language for subtitling, then the NorDig IRD **shall** not display any subtitles).

### 7.1.4 Temporary changes to subtitling settings

In case of the user has made temporary changes of the subtitling settings (i.e. without changing the IRD's user preference setting), then this change **shall** (at least) remain until the user changes service. (Clarification, this means the NorDig IRD **shall** not change back temporary subtitling setting based on EIT events for the service).

### 7.1.5 Subtitling mode (Normal and Hard of hearing subtitling)

In case of 'translation dialogue' ('normal') subtitling mode is selected, then the NorDig IRD **shall** only display 'translation dialogue'/'normal' subtitles (signalised in subtitling descriptor and/or teletext descriptor). In this 'translation dialogue'/'normal' subtitling mode the NorDig IRD **shall** not display any (hard-of-hearing) subtitling if the subtitling stream only includes 'hard-of-hearing'/'hearing impaired' pages.

In the case 'hard-of-hearing' subtitling mode is selected and if no 'hard-of-hearing'/'hearing impaired' pages are received (signalised in subtitling descriptor and/or teletext descriptor), then the NorDig IRD **shall** as a default use 'translation dialogue' ('normal') subtitling pages from the same selected language. (For Teletext, see section 7.2).

| **IRD subtitling mode** | **Subtitles to display for** | |
|---|---|---|
| **TTML Subtitling alternatives** | **normal** | **HoH** |
| Translation dialogue subtitles | x | x |
| Non-translation dialogue subtitles | | x |
| Hard-of-hearing (HoH) subtitles | | x |
| Audio Description (AD) subtitles | | - |
| Content-related commentary subtitles | | - |

*Table 7.2 Behaviour for NorDig HEVC IRDs that in user preferences only have two subtitling modes (normal and Hard-of-hearing, HoH)*

### 7.1.6 Handling of simultaneous subtitle streams

If more than one subtitle stream with the same language code is received, the NorDig IRD **shall** only display a single subtitle stream based on the priority shown in the table below.

| **Subtitle stream** | **IRD Subtitle priority (1=highest)** |
|---|---|
| EBU Teletext subtitling | 3 |
| DVB Subtitles | 2 |
| TTML Subtitles (1) | 1 |
| Note 1: Only mandatory for Nordig HEVC IRD | |

*Table 7.3 Subtitle priority*

### 7.1.7 Simultaneous EBU Teletext and HbbTV Digital Teletext

For services that have both an EBU Teletext service and an HbbTV Digital Teletext application signalled and available, the NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** be able to start and display the HbbTV Digital Teletext application as well as being able to start and display the EBU Teletext service (one at a time).

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** start teletext and be able to toggle between any HbbTV Digital Teletext and any EBU Teletext service as described in clause 5.3.4 ("Starting digital teletext applications") of HbbTV specification ETSI TS 102 796 [27].

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | An EBU Teletext service refers here to classical Enhanced Teletext specification EN 300 472 [14], while a Digital Teletext Service refers here to an HbbTV application which is identified with an application_usage_descriptor in the AIT with usage_type equal to 1 as defined in the HbbTV specification ETSI TS 102 796 [27]; and typically launched by the TEXT key on Remote control. The HbbTV based Digital Teletext could typically be a more modern version and replacing the EBU Teletext for HbbTV IRD IRDs. |

### 7.1.8 Simultaneous Subtitling and HbbTV

A NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** support simultaneous display of HbbTV application and subtitles (DVB subtitling and EBU teletext subtitling), both for broadcast and at least for MPEG2 TS delivered via broadband [27].

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** display the HbbTV application over the subtitles as described in clause 10.1 ("Display model") of HbbTV specification ETSI TS 102 796 [27]. This means that if the video is up or down-converted, to other than full screen video, the subtitles **shall** either be rescaled/repositioned appropriately or not displayed at all.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | The requirement for simultaneous display of HbbTV application and subtitles is optional (should) within HbbTV ETSI TS 102 796 [27], while within NorDig HbbTV IRDs this is mandatory (**shall**) to support. |

## *7.2 EBU Teletext*

### 7.2.1 General

During normal operation, the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to demultiplex in parallel the EBU Teletext service transmitted in a packetised format according ETSI EN 300 472 [14].

The NorDig IRD **shall** include a teletext decoder to be able to display EBU Teletext using the OSD. The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display EBU Teletext subtitling, both 'translation dialogue' ('normal') Teletext subtitling pages of type 0x02 and Teletext subtitling pages for hearing impaired people of type 0x05, meeting the requirements for level 1.5 in ETSI EN 300 706[16], "Enhanced Teletext Specification".

The Nordic characters defined in the Latin G2 supplementary set **shall** be supported.

The NorDig IRD with OSD presentation **shall** be able to cache at least 200 decoded EBU Teletext pages in order to improve the access time for frequently used pages.

### 7.2.2 ~~Additional requirements for~~ Analogue video Interface

The NorDig IRD that include ~~**shall** for the~~ analogue output~~s~~ can be recommended to also support VBI insertion of the EBU Teletext data in the VBI of the analogue CVBS video output. ~~In this case the teletext decoder of the TV set might be used instead of the one in the STB. The VBI insertion **shall** be compliant~~ according to ~~with~~ ETSI/ITU-R BT.653-3 [60]. ~~The EBU Teletext data **shall** be inserted in the lines 6 to 22 and lines 320 to 335.~~

## *7.3 DVB Subtitling*

### 7.3.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** be capable of decoding, as a minimum, a subset of the DVB subtitle services as specified in section 7.3.2 and transmitted in conformance with ETSI EN 300 743 [17], and displayed using the OSD capabilities whilst decoding the full television service (video and audio) to which it is associated.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display both 'normal' ('translation dialogue') and 'hard-of-hearing' subtitles, according to user preference settings.

Within DVB Subtitling it is possible to transmit common pages for all languages and subtitling streams inside one DVB subtitling PID, this is referred to as 'ancillary pages'. Support for ancillary pages is optional for NorDig IRD. The enabling or disabling of the subtitle ancillary pages, if available, should be user controlled, with subtitle ancillary pages enabled as default option. The selection of subtitle ancillary pages **shall** be independent of the enabling of subtitle composition pages.

The precision of the presentation of the subtitles **shall** be within 2 frames.

### 7.3.2 Subtitling subset

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least be capable of decoding the following DVB subtitling services:

| | |
|---|---|
| DDS | The Display Definition Segment for a subtitle service **shall** be supported for services that implement DDS, as defined in EN 300 743 [17]. Absence of a DDS implies that the display segment width **shall** be assumed as 720 pixels and the height as 576 lines. |

| | |
|---|---|
| Object types: | The handling of the object type (0x00) 'basic object, bitmap' **shall** be supported. The handling of the other object types (i.e. 0x01), 'basic object, character' and (0x02) 'composite object, string of characters') is optional. |
| Regions: | The number of regions **shall** be according to the ETSI EN 300 743 [17] specification, however a limitation in the display area due to memory restrictions is allowed. The total number of regions to handle **shall** be able to cover four complete subtitle rows (per frame) where:<br>One subtitle row **shall** be extendable to 1906 pixels * 60 pixels. The regions **shall** have the possibility to cover 457440 pixels per frame. |
| Number of objects: | The number of objects **shall** be at least 128. |
| CLUT: | The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle at least one colour look-up table (CLUT) with a minimum of 16 entries per region and the possibility to have one colour scheme applied in each of the regions.<br>It **shall** be possible to choose any 24-bit RGB colour into the 16 entries. The decoder **shall** be able to handle the mapping to the closest colour match if the decoder has some limitation in the colour presentation.<br>The use of the non_modifying_colour flag is optional. |
| Transparency: | The NorDig IRD **shall** implement at least 5 levels of transparency; 0% (opaque), 30%, 50%, 70% and 100% (completely transparent). Implementation of additional intermediate levels of transparency is optional.<br>Where the NorDig IRD cannot complement a particular value of semi-transparency it **shall** replace it with the nearest value of transparency it can implement.<br>However, if the encoded value of transparency is in the range 10%-90% it **shall** not be approximated as either 0% or 100% transparency.<br>So, 9% may be approximated as 0% but 10% **shall** be represented with a value in the range 10% to 90%%, such as 30%. Similarly, 91% may be approximated as 100%. |
| Number of streams: | The NorDig IRD **shall** support at least one DVB-subtitling streams i.e. at least support decoding of one subtitling composition page while support of one simultaneously available ancillary page is optional. |

### *7.4 TTML Subtitling*

The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** be capable of decoding, as a minimum, the DVB TTML subtitle service that are in conformance with ETSI EN 303 560 [94], and displayed using the OSD capabilities whilst decoding the full television service (video and audio) to which it is associated.

The NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** support the full DVB TTML specification (ETSI EN 303 560 [94]) with following exceptions:

- Audio Description (and text-to-speech of subtitles) is optional
- content-related-commentary is optional
- font download is optional

The precision of the presentation of the subtitles **shall** be within 2 frames.

For IRDs supporting TTML Audio Description subtitles and converting these to text-to-speech (optional), these NorDig HEVC IRDs shall be able to display one subtitle type (e.g., translation subtitle stream) at the same time as rendering text-to-speech subtitles (see DVB TTML specification ETSI EN 303 560 [94].

Note: If nothing else is said in operational practices it can be assumed that the colours (both luminance and chrominance) picked for subtitles are chosen while, as an author, viewing the standard dynamic range (SDR) programme version.

# 8 Interfaces and Signal Levels

### 8.1 Introduction

This chapter includes requirements to the various external interfaces, except for the front-ends (tuner/demodulators) that are treated in chapter 3.

The main functional blocks are described in chapter 2 for the case with embedded tuner/demodulator.

### 8.2 RF- bypass (option)

NorDig IRD should have an RF-bypass ($RF_{in}$ – $RF_{out}$), see sections 3.3.3 and 3.4.7.

### 8.3 Two-way Interface

The NorDig IRD with the HbbTV capability or an IP-based front-end **shall** support at least one of the following interaction channel interfaces:

1. Ethernet (IEEE 802.3[43] (100 Base-T, Auto-sense).
2. EuroDocsis in accordance with ETSI/ITU-J.122 [57] (ref IRDs with a cable front-end).
3. Wireless LAN, Ethernet 802.11 n [42].
4. Power line [HomePlug AV Specification, IEEE 1901.2010].
5. USB 2.0 [63] or higher.

### 8.4 Analogue Video Interfaces (Option)

Video signals output via any type of analogue interface **shall** be of maximum 720x576 (SDTV) resolution, see section 5.11.

#### 8.4.1 Void ~~SCART Interface (Option)~~

~~The NorDig STB should have one SCART Interface in accordance with EN 50049-1 [4] and EN 50157-2-1 [6].~~

~~The following table summarises the input/output signals available at all SCART interfaces:~~

| ~~SCART~~ | ~~requirement~~ | ~~CVBS/AUDIO~~ | ~~RGB~~ | ~~PIN 8~~ | ~~PIN 16~~ |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| ~~1 TV~~ | ~~Mandatory*~~ | ~~Out~~ | ~~Out~~ | ~~out (1)~~ | ~~out (2)~~ |
| ~~2 VCR~~ | ~~Optional~~ | ~~in and out (3)~~ | ~~In~~ | ~~In~~ | ~~In (4)~~ |

~~*Table 8.1 SCART requirements*~~

~~* Not relevant for iDTV~~

~~(1): the voltage **shall** be forwarded from in to out (12V or 6V)~~
~~(2): the voltage **shall** be forwarded from in to out (0V or 1 - 3V)~~
~~(3): the OSD graphics should not be present on the VCR SCART output except for DVB subtitling (if present and chosen)~~
~~(4): the voltage should be forwarded from in to out (0V or 1 - 3V)~~

~~Control signal definitions:~~
~~PIN 8: nom. 0 Volt/DC: internal source of the TV set~~
~~nom. 6 Volt: external source, 16:9 format~~
~~nom. 12 Volt: external source, 4:3 format~~

~~PIN 16: nom.0 Volt/DC: CVBS active~~
~~1-3 Volt/DC: RGB active~~

## *8.5 Audio Output Interfaces (Option)*

### 8.5.1 Void ~~VCR SCART connector for analogue audio~~

~~The NorDig IRD may provide analogue audio output signals via SCART interfaces. The audio interface of the VCR SCART **shall** deliver the same audio signal as available at TV SCART Interface. The internal volume control should only affect the audio signal at TV SCART interface, but not the audio signal of the VCR SCART audio interface.~~

### 8.5.2 RCA connector for analogue audio

The NorDig IRD may provide analogue audio output signals via RCA connectors. For ~~The~~ NorDig IRD with analogue audio interface based on RCA connectors, it **shall** be:

- Two RCA connectors, female type IEC 60603-14 [39].

~~The audio signals **shall** be as specified in section 6.6 Audio .~~

### 8.5.3 S/PDIF connector for digital audio

The NorDig IRD should include digital audio interface, based on S/PDIF, (IEC 60958 [40]) and a non-PCM encoded audio bit stream according to IEC 61937 [41], with a coaxial and/or an optical connector.

The audio signals **shall** be as specified in section 6.6 Audio Output Format.

### 8.5.4 Headphone connector for analogue audio

The NorDig IRD should include analogue audio interface based on headphone connectors with 3.5 mm TRS stereo mini tele jack or ¼" TRS stereo tele jack.

## *8.6 HDMI (High Definition Multimedia Interface)*

### 8.6.1 General

#### 8.6.1.1 NorDig iDTV

A NorDig iDTV is, by definition, capable of receiving and decoding the relevant NorDig broadcast signals. Whilst NorDig recognises that specifying the HDMI input connector requirements on iDTVs is generally beyond its scope, for the avoidance of doubt the NorDig (non-HEVC) iDTV **shall** include at least one HDMI 1.4b [36] or later version input while a NorDig HEVC iDTV **shall** include at least one HDMI v2.1~~2.0b~~ [93]or later version input.

| |
|---|
| Note: A NorDig iDTV may have several other HDMI inputs with HDMI-versions selected at the manufacturer's own discretion. |

#### 8.6.1.2 NorDig STB

A NorDig STB **shall** have at least one High-Definition Multimedia Interface (HDMI) output connector. STBs not using type A connector should provide an adapter to type A. For the (non-HEVC) NorDig STB the HDMI **shall** be compliant with HDMI v1.4b or later [36] and for the NorDig HEVC STB be compliant with HDMI v2.1~~2.0b~~ [93] or later.

### 8.6.2 Video Output and Display

#### 8.6.2.1 NorDig STB

The NorDig STB **shall** recognise E-EDID information provided by the display and subsequently follow the below requirements.

The NorDig STB **shall** use 1920x1080p@50 Hz as the default output format, if supported by the display.

If 1920x1080p@50 Hz is not supported by the display, the NorDig STB should use 1280x720p@50Hz, rather than 1920x1080i@25Hz, as the output format – although this priority requirement may not comply with the specified priority order in the HDMI specifications regarding E-EDID information exchange.

The user **shall** be able to override the above behaviour in two different ways:

1. By choosing an "Original Format" option, i.e. to output the same format as received, if supported by the display. If the received format is not supported, the STB **shall** select the display mode providing the best possible video quality, as indicated by the E-EDID information. This is to avoid the STB output to go black, if there is a mismatch between received format and display capability.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | In the case of received 1080p@25Hz, and if the display does not accept this, the STB should perform 2:2 pulldown (a.k.a. frame-doubling) to reach 50 Hz and subsequently retry with the E-EDID information exchange. |

2. By choosing a "Fixed Format" option, i.e. to manually set, preferably with a dedicated knob on the remote control, the default output format from the NorDig STB to a fixed video format. The video format options **shall** include 1920x1080p@50Hz, 1280x720p@50Hz and 1920x1080i@25Hz.

#### 8.6.2.1 NorDig HEVC STB

The NorDig HEVC STB **shall** recognise E-EDID information provided by the display and subsequently follow the below requirements.

The NorDig HEVC STB **shall** use 3840x2160p@50 Hz as the default output format, if supported by the display.

If 3840x2160p@50Hz PQ10 (including all decimated sub-resolutions) is not supported by the display, the NorDig HEVC STB should primarily convert to 3840x2160p@50Hz HLG10 and secondarily 3840x2160p@50Hz WCG+SDR (i.e. ETSI/ITU-R BT.2020 [88]).

If 3840x2160p@50Hz HLG10 (including all decimated sub-resolutions) is not supported by the display, the NorDig HEVC STB should primarily convert to 3840x2160p@50Hz PQ10 and secondarily 3840x2160p@50Hz WCG+SDR (i.e. ETSI/ITU-R BT.2020 [88]).

If 3840x2160p@50 Hz, no matter colorimetry, is not supported by the display, the NorDig HEVC STB should primarily convert to BT.709-based 1920x1080p@50Hz and secondarily BT.1847-based 1280x720p@50Hz, rather than BT.709-based 1920x1080i@25Hz, as the output format – although this priority requirement may not comply with the specified priority order in the HDMI specifications regarding E-EDID information exchange.

The user **shall** be able to override the above behaviour in two different ways:

1. By choosing an "Original Format" option, i.e., to output the same format as received, if supported by the display.

If the received format is not supported, the STB shall select the display mode providing the best possible video quality, as indicated by the E-EDID information, and perform colorimetry conversion if needed because of display capability. This is to avoid the STB output to go black, if there is a mismatch between received format and display capability.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | In the case of received 25 Hz progressive scan, and if the display does not accept this, the STB should perform 2:2 pulldown (a.k.a. frame-doubling) to reach 50 Hz and subsequently retry with the E-EDID information exchange. |

2. By choosing a "Fixed Format" option, i.e. to manually set, preferably with a dedicated knob on the remote control, the default output format from the NorDig HEVC STB to a fixed video format. The video format options **shall** include 3840x2160p@50Hz PQ10, 3840x2160p@50Hz HLG10,

3840x2160p@50Hz WCG+SDR (i.e. ETSI/ITU-R BT.2020 [88]), 1920x1080p@50Hz, 1280x720p@50Hz and 1920x1080i@25Hz.

### 8.6.3 Audio Output

The HDMI Audio Output is specified in section 6.6 (Audio Output Formats). For IRDs integrated in IDTVs, an HDMI ARC (or eARC output) should be implemented.

### 8.6.4 Signal protection

The NorDig IRD's HDMI interface (output or input) used to transport audio & video content **shall** support the High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection (HDCP) rev. 1.4 or higher [35].

The NorDig HEVC IRD's HDMI interface (output or input) used to transport audio & video content **shall** support High-bandwidth Digital Content Protection (HDCP) rev. 2.2 or higher [91].

NorDig HEVC STB **shall** only fall back to HDCP rev. 1.4 when connected to an HDMI sink that doesn't support HDCP rev. 2.2 or higher [91].

Broadcast received services may be flagged with a need for content protection or not (CP "ON" or "OFF") via the CA-system or similar, as specified by the relevant network/CA-operator. Signals that the IRD is entitled to receive **shall** be sent to the HDMI-sink (display) in accordance with the following conditions:

A. In case the received service is flagged with <u>no need</u> for content protection, the signal may be sent to the sink with HDCP disabled (1).

B. In case the received service is flagged with content protection <u>required</u> via the CA-system, the signal **shall** only be sent to the sink with the HDCP enabled, i.e. when the HDMI sink satisfies the HDCP requirements <u>and</u> HDCP protection is established on the HDMI-link.

If the NorDig IRD has an HDMI output (ie: is an HDMI source) it should (2) provide an option for setting the preferred HDCP-state, ("HDCP-user setting"), that can be set between following modes:

- ON (where ON refers to 'always on') and~~or~~
- OFF and/or AUTO mode, (where OFF refers to 'always off' and AUTO refers to 'automatic; on when required and off when not required').

The HDCP-user setting **shall** apply to all services receivable by the IRD. Changes to this setting **shall** survive channel change, standby and power on/off.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Disabling of HDCP is optional. |
| Note 2: This option – when available- **shall** be available via the IRD's menu system, unless otherwise specified by the relevant network/CA-operator. |

Table 8.2 defines the required actions of the IRD, based on the required content protection for the received service and the selected HDCP-user setting. The required content protection level and the required HDCP-state may be flagged via the CA-system (as specified by the relevant network/CA-operator).

| mode | Signalled Content Protection level incoming service, CA-system (1) | STB's HDCP-user preference setting (optional) | Description (STB actions) |
|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | CP Not needed | ON | HDCP active and service content is presented on the HDMI output |
| 2 | CP Required | ON or 'AUTO' | HDCP active and service content is presented on the HDMI output |
| 3 | CP Not needed | OFF (2) or 'AUTO' | HDCP is inactive/disabled and service content is presented in the clear on the HDMI ouput. |
| 4 | CP Required | OFF (2) | HDCP is inactive and service content **shall not** be presented on the HDMI ouput, instead STB **shall** display a message that inform the end user that the HDCP user setting must be turned ON in order to view protected content. |
| Note 1: The specified modes may be omitted or redefined by the relevant network/CA-operator.<br>Note 2: "HDCP OFF" is not recommended for the HDCP user setting in networks where some programmes will require "HDCP ON", because it may lead to excessive zapping times. | | | |

*Table 8.2 IRD actions versus required (signalled) Content Protection level and HDCP user setting.*

## 8.7 User Control functions (Remote Control)

### 8.7.1 General

The functions described in the below tables consist of those operations which are considered to be necessary to implement a fully operational IRD (dependant on the class of device like: Basic IRD, HbbTV IRD or PVR). These operations may be implemented as logical functions, as physical buttons on a remote control or a combination of the two.

NorDig strongly recommends that the mandatory functions defined here are implemented in a manner which makes them easily accessible for a user.

Where these functions are implemented as dedicated physical buttons they will implicitly be accessible.

Where the functions are implemented as logical functions, NorDig strongly recommends that the User Interface renders these functions at a high enough menu level that a user will be able to easily locate and select them. Ideally this would be at the first or second level menu structure.

### 8.7.2 Handling of Persistent and Temporary settings

Remote control functions can be used to change persistent or temporary IRD settings. NorDig does not mandate which remote control functions are persistent and which are temporary, but Table 8.3 states the recommended type for each function. Where appropriate, temporary changes **shall** in addition be able to be made persistent.

### 8.7.3 Accessibility

Functionality which is directly related to accessibility features (Subtitles, Supplementary audio, Dialogue Enhancement, Talking menus etc.) should also be implemented in an easily accessible area of any IRD User Interface. See chapter 13.6.

### 8.7.4 Grouping of User Control settings

NorDig recommends device manufacturers to use good practice when considering the layout of core remote control functions. This applies whether the implementation is as a set of physical buttons or rendered as an on-screen display. Good practice would typically dictate that common functions are

grouped in reasonable, useable proximity to each other. This recommendation would, for example, include:

- Number buttons being grouped
- PVR buttons being grouped
- Colour buttons being grouped
- Arrow buttons, OK/select, Back and Exit being grouped

All buttons within a group should be presented in equal way for the user to select between all buttons in the group (for example during an IRD status mode of presenting EBU Teletext page all colour buttons should be presented and not just one colour button at the time).

For clarity, this recommendation does not mean all the above functions need to be grouped.

### 8.7.5 User Control, basic functions

| Basic Functions | STB | iDTV | Recommendation for Temporary/ Persistent |
|---|---|---|---|
| Power On/Off<br>Turns the IRD on and off | M | M | - |
| Programme Up/Down<br>Function to switch between programmes. It is recommended to start at the same channel after a power off/on. | M | M | P |
| Volume Up/Down<br>Function to adjust the volume output level. Optional for receivers without display. It is recommended to keep the volume level when changing channels and power off/on. | O | M | P |
| TV/ Radio<br>If this function is provided this is what it should do: Function that puts the IRD directly into conventional television state, i.e. only audio, video and subtitling or radio state (i.e. toggle between TV and Radio category list of services). | O | O | - |
| Subtitles<br>Options for subtitling (On/Off/Hard of hearing, Languages) | M | M | P |
| Audio Description/Spoken Subtitles | M | M | Tp |
| Audio<br>Selection of audio language and/or audio stream | M | M | Tp |
| Mute<br>Mutes audio | O | O | T |
| Program Guide<br>This function displays an Electronic Programme Guide. | M | M | - |
| Info<br>Provides additional event information | M | M | - |
| Teletext<br>This function launches the EBU Teletext or HbbTV Digital Teletext if present, see section 7.1.6. | M | M | - |
| Numerals 0-9 | M | M | - |

| Basic Functions | STB | iDTV | Recommendation for Temporary/ Persistent |
|---|---|---|---|
| Menu<br>This function starts the main menu for all the persistent settings (ref chapter 16) and the navigator (ref chapter 13) functionality. | M | M | - |
| Navigation (e.g. Arrow keys)<br>A navigation or pointing system for navigation on the OSD | M | M | - |
| OK or Select<br>A function that selects or confirms current choice or statement | M | M | - |
| Back<br>This function exits from the current menu or "page" and returns to the previous state. In TV/Teletext it should return to previous channel/page. | O | O | - |
| Exit<br>Exits the current menu/info/program guide (back to TV screen) | O | O | - |
| Colours<br>Four color-coded controls for non-dedicated functions. The colours **shall** be red, green, yellow and blue (in that order) | M | M | - |
| High Contrast User Interface<br>This function enhances the contrast of the User Interface menus over the video. | O | O | P |
| Talking Menus<br>see section 13.6.2 | O | O | - |
| Key: M = Mandatory, O = Optional, T = temporary change, P = persistent change, - = not applicable,<br>Tp = Temporary change of a persistent system setting | | | |

*Table 8.3 User Control, basic functions.*

### 8.7.6 User Control, NorDig HbbTV functions

| NorDig HbbTV Functions in addition to basic functionality | HbbTV |
|---|---|
| HbbTV function activation<br>Please refer to the HbbTV specification.<br>This function activates the HbbTV Digital Teletext application. Typically this function is covered by the Teletext or Red control. | M |
| Back<br>Please refer to the HbbTV specification.<br>This function is always available to applications once an HbbTV application is active | M |
| Exit<br>This function terminates the currently running HbbTV application. It does not disable the HbbTV feature, therefore if the current service has an auto-start application then it **shall** be re-launched and broadcast video **shall** be reset to its default position. | M |
| Key: M = Mandatory, O = Optional, T = temporary change, P = persistent change, - = not applicable,<br>Tp = Temporary change of a persistent system setting | |

*Table 8.4 User Control, NorDig HbbTV functions*

### 8.7.7 User Control, PVR functions

| PVR Functions in addition to basic functionality | PVR |
|---|---|
| List of Recordings<br>Opens a screen with list of recordings (should be both existing and scheduled). | M |
| Record/One Touch Record<br>Start manual recording / start recording of present event. | M |
| Play<br>Start playing timeshift TV / start playback of recording. | M |
| Pause<br>Pause playback of recording or timeshift TV | M |
| Stop<br>Stops playback/timeshift/recording | M |
| Fast Forward/Fast Rewind<br>Fast forward/rewind of the timeshift or recording (with different speeds). | Mc |
| Skip Back/Skip Forward (Previously JUMP)<br>go to a specific time in the recording / fast jump to a manufacturer defined fixed time or to next index point (also have to update section14.4.2) | Mc |
| Key: M = Mandatory, O = Optional, T = temporary change, P = persistent change, - = not applicable,<br>Tp = Temporary change of a persistent system setting<br>Mc = Conditional Mandatory that either forward/rewind or Skip back/forward functions are available in the NorDig IRD. If skip back/forward function is not available, then NorDig recommends implementation of higher forward/rewind speeds | |

*Table 8.5 User Control, PVR functions*

### 8.7.8 User Control, other optional functions

Other functions are left to the discretion of manufacturers.

It is expected that a production IRD will include additional functions not described here which may be implemented entirely at the device manufacturer discretion. See table below.

| Other Optional Functions |
|---|
| Display resolution<br>Toggles through all available display resolutions (original format, 720p, 1080i and more) |
| Aspect ratio<br>Normally find on TVs. Toggles through different aspect ratios, 16:9, 4:3, Zoom, |
| Option / short menu<br>A way of accessing menu functions that are used more often than the set-up menu, but not as often to need separate function. |
| User manual<br>If the IRD has an interactive on-screen user manual |
| Help<br>Shows help about where You are in the menu |
| 3D<br>Toggles through different 3D functions |
| Smart TV / Internet<br>Gives access to smart TV functions and/or Internet web browsing functions |
| Channel list<br>Gives access to a list of available services. Often combined with OK-button. |
| Search<br>Search for content, web search etc. |
| Other Teletext functions<br>Mix modes, next/prep page, enlarge Teletext, show hidden text, etc. |
| Digital / Analogue<br>Toggles between digital and analogue services |

*Table 8.6 User Control, other optional functions*

### 8.7.9 Design and Labelling for physical Remote Control

The manufacturer is responsible for the design of the remote control and the labelling of the remote control functions.
Manufacturers should consider the needs of visually impaired users when designing remote control handsets. Items to consider include the size/texture/tactile response of buttons and the colour/typeface/size of labelling. Frequently used remote control functions such as Volume Up/Down, Programme Up/Down should be placed in an easy accessible manner.

### 8.7.10 Mapping of Key Events for NorDig HbbTV IRD profile

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** generate (HbbTV) events according to Table 8.7 in response to user control functions, (e.g., when a key is pressed on the NorDig IRD remote-control).

| User Control functions | HbbTV Key event |
|---|---|
| Numerals 0-9 | VK_0 to VK_9 |
| Navigation Up | VK_UP |
| Navigation Down | VK_DOWN |
| Navigation Left | VK_LEFT |
| Navigation Right | VK_RIGHT |
| OK | VK_ENTER |
| Back | VK_BACK |
| Colour Red | VK_RED |
| Colour Green | VK_GREEN |
| Colour Yellow | VK_YELLOW |
| Colour Blue | VK_BLUE |
| Stop | VK_STOP |
| Play | VK_PLAY or<br>VK_PLAY_PAUSE (1) |
| Pause | VK_PAUSE or<br>VK_PLAY_PAUSE (1) |
| Fast Forward | VK_FAST_FWD |
| Fast Rewind | VK_REWIND |

*Table 8.7 Mapping of NorDig HbbTV IRD Key Events to HbbTV.*

Note 1: VK_PLAY and VK_PAUSE is used for PVRs with separate remote-control keys for these two functions, while VK_PLAY_PAUSE is used for PVRs with one common toggling multifunctional key for these two functions.

| User Control functions | Key Event |
|---|---|
| Power On/Off | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Programme Up | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Programme Down | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Volume Up | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Volume Down | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Teletext | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Subtitling/Option | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Guide | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| Info | Not available to HbbTV applications |
| TV/Radio | Not available to HbbTV applications |

*Table 8.8 User Control functions that are not available to HbbTV applications.*

# 9 Interfaces for Conditional Access

## 9.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** (1) support at least one Common Interface Plus (for CA module) for conditional access and/or it **shall** support at least one smart card interface (2) for conditional access. The smart card interface with associated embedded functions should support use of external smart card(s) for at least one CA-system.

All NorDig iDTV sets with screen diagonal larger than 30 cm **shall** be equipped with at least one Common Interface that comply with the Common Interface Plus specification, see section 9.2. The Common Interface is optional/recommended for other NorDig IRD types (e.g. STB).

Note 1: Mandatory for the NorDig IRDs that are intended for use in networks broadcasting signals that are accessed controlled, as well as not access controlled.

Note 2: The requirements for conditional access interfaces are specified by the relevant network/CA operator.

## 9.2 Use of the Common Interface

### 9.2.1 General

The Common Interface can be used for conditional access and other purposes. A Conditional Access (CA) Module (CAM) may be connected to the Common Interface of the NorDig IRD in order to provide access control of the incoming services.

The Common Interface **shall** be able to be used with modules that comply with the DVB Common Interface Plus specification (version 1.3 or later), see ref. CI Plus specification [64]; such modules are referred to as CIP-CAM.

NorDig HEVC IRDs should have a CI Plus implementation that fully comply with the CI Plus ECP Specification v1.1 (2017-11) [96] available from CI Plus LLP.

The Common Interface **shall** also be able to be used with CA-modules that comply with the DVB Common Interface specification, see EN 50221 [7]; such modules are referred to as CI-CAM.

### 9.2.2 Minimum requirements for the Common Interface

Each CI-slot of the NorDig IRD **shall** (1) be in compliance with the Common Interface Plus (CIP) specification [64]. Each CI-slot **shall** support both CIP-CAMs and CI-CAMs in accordance with the interoperability matrix that is specified in the CI Plus specification [64], table 4.1.

Note 1: As stated in section 9.1 CI is mandatory for NorDig iDTV-sets (with screen diagonal above 30 cm) (and is optional for other NorDig IRD types).

The CI Plus interface for the NorDig IRD **shall** support at least the maximum bitstream that can be provided via the front-end, see section 4.1 (1). The CIP-CAM **shall** support 96Mbit/s.

Note 1: The CI Plus specification [64] states that the IRD **shall** support 72Mbit/s and may support 96Mbit/s on the PCMCIA interface. 96Mbit/s **shall** be supported if the front-end can provide higher bitrates than 72Mbit/s. This applies e.g. for the satellite front-end, which can provide up to 80.4 Mbps.

#### 9.2.3 Minimum requirements for the NorDig CA-Module

##### 9.2.3.1 General – the CA-modules

The CA-module may contain the CA security device ("CA-module with fully embedded CA-system") or a smart card interface for connection to an external smart card ("CA-module with partly embedded CA-system").

##### 9.2.3.2 CA-module with fully embedded CA-system

The CA-module will be CA-system specific and contain all CA-functions, including the security device. For this case the relevant specifications have to be obtained from the relevant CA-system vendor.

##### 9.2.3.3 CA-module with partly embedded CA-system

Proprietary CA-module (CIP-CAM or CI-CAM):

- The CIP-CAM or the CI-CAM will be connected to a security device (smart card).
- The CIP-CAM **shall** provide the CI-functions specified in the CI Plus specification [64] and the additional functions specified by the relevant CA-system vendor for the smart card interface.
- The CI-CAM (1) **shall** provide the CI-functions specified in EN 50221 [7] and the additional functions specified by the relevant CA-system vendor for the smart card interface.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Use of CI-CAM is not supported in all NorDig networks and may be phased out in most networks. |

## *9.3 Use of Smart Card Reader*

### 9.3.1 General

The smart card hardware with associated software can be used for conditional access and other purposes. This section will only consider use related to conditional access.

The smart card reader **shall** support an interface as partially specified in section 9.3.2 below and hardware/firmware for descrambling as specified in chapter 4. In addition, there **shall** be filtering of ECM/EMM streams and program interfaces as specified below for conditional access.

The IRD **shall** be capable of replacing the CA-system software by download of new IRD and CA-system software via the bootloader, over air or locally.

### 9.3.2 The Smart Card Interface

#### 9.3.2.1 All NorDig profiles

The embedded smart card reader is used with conditional access and/or other applications.

The smart card interface **shall** comply with ISO/IEC 7816 Part 1-3 [56]. The NorDig IRD does not need to support synchronous cards. The NorDig IRD **shall** implement all aspects related to asynchronous cards with the following exceptions:

- support for Vpp is not required
- support for AFNOR pin-out is not required
- Vcc range is 5V+/- 5%
- Icc max is 65 mA
- The clock frequency **shall** be at least 5 MHz.

The possibility of using the data exchange protocol T=0 **shall** be supported. It **shall** be possible to include support for the data exchange protocol T=1 through an IRD software upgrade.

### 9.3.3 ECM and EMM Filtering

The NorDig IRD **shall** implement ECM and EMM acquisition in accordance with ETSI ETR 289 [22].

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to simultaneously acquire at least two ECM streams. The ECMs **shall** be filtered based on PID, TID and toggle bit.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to acquire EMMs from at least one EMM stream (one PID). The EMMs **shall** be filtered based on PID, TID and section address field. The section address field is CA system specific, and described as part of the smart card application interface. The IRD **shall** be able to filter on three TID and address field combinations simultaneously.

### 9.3.4 Descrambling of selected services

The NorDig IRD **shall** implement descrambling of selected services, see section 4.2.

### 9.3.5 Application Level Interface for Conditional Access.

The application level smart card interface for conditional access is CA-system specific. The application level interface definitions are restricted information that can be obtained from relevant CA-system vendors.

# 10 The System Software Update

## 10.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** provide a software download mechanism that enables download of system software, to add a new system software or replace an existing software. The system software may constitute a complete system, i.e. drivers, operating system and applications, or individual system components like updated parts of the system software or new applications. When individual components are downloaded, a mechanism **shall** be provided that assures that dependencies between separate modules are fulfilled. It **shall** be possible to replace all parts of the system software.

For NorDig IRD requirements related to updates of CIP CAM, see section 10.5.5.

Connected IRDs with an IP-based network connection to Internet (like a NorDig HbbTV IRD) may provide a range of additional services and content using the IP-based network (like broadband distributed media content, HbbTV content, web browsing, social media etc). The network connection is also the fastest and often most efficient way of applying software updates to such a Connected IRD, especially since the rapidly evolving service proposition for a connected IRD may necessitate regular updates. A connected IRD receiving updates in this way **shall** still arbitrate between software versions available via the broadcast network and the IP-based broadband network to ensure that only newer versions are downloaded and installed (according with section 10.1.4.2).

Non-connected connectable IRDs (see definition in chapter 1.1) may be informed of the availability of new software by use of the SSU notification feature – using an update_type of 0x04 in the system_software_update_info structure, where a broadcast UNT signals the availability of software updates from the Internet.

| |
|---|
| Note: The NorDig IRD may in addition to below requirements have other alternatives related to update of the IRD's system software. |

### 10.1.1 User control of SSU

The upgrade of NorDig IRD software **shall** be initiated by the user (by update user preference setting and/or by user interaction). The user **shall** be able to choose the update approach for the IRD (see 10.2.1) and the user **shall** be able to disable any automatic update. See section 16 for the NorDig IRD requirements of user preference settings for SSU.

In cases where the user is prompted to confirm an update, the user **shall** be able to confirm or to abort/postpone the update (for example with a Yes and No option). If the user selects to abort/postpone an available update or by other ways cancel an available update, the NorDig IRD **shall** (1) remind the user as stated in section 10.1.6.

The user should be able to control when the installation will be performed, like proceed immediately or perform update in standby.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Only mandatory with reminder for updates via broadcast channel and for IRDs where main FE is IP-based ("IPTV" IRD) that use SSU according to 10.4 (i.e., optional for System Software Updates via Internet). |

### 10.1.2 SSU procedure

The NorDig IRD manufacturer **shall** provide the necessary procedure and functions for carrying out the upgrade in the IRD for the supported delivery and approach alternative(s) as defined in section 10.2.

The NorDig IRD manufacturer should provide a mechanism for indicating when new system software is available for download (mandatory for some of the approaches, see 10.2.1).

### 10.1.3 User messaging for SSU

Any (pop-up) messaging to the user related to SSU **shall** be displayed in the same language as the language setting of the IRD.

If the system software update does not allow the normal utilization of the NorDig IRD, the user **shall** be warned by some means. For example, by displaying information according to below if the display is available, and/or by a visual indication.

This User messaging (prompt, pop-up message) about SSU updates **shall** (1) display at least the following information:

- If the system software update is expected to take more than 2 minutes in the operational mode, then display information that this update may take some time (preferably with approximation of expected time and/or displaying the progress of the download)
- If the system software update does not allow the normal utilization, then display information that warns the user about this (for example that there might be a black screen during this time).
- If the IRD has restriction of the usage to get a successful update, then display information about these restrictions to get a successful update (for example that the user **shall** not turn off or remove the power cable to the IRD during this period).
- If the System software update affects or delete the IRD's previous installation, user preference settings and/or service list(s), then before or after installation of a new system software, display information (2) about these effects of the update (for example if previous user preferences will be/have been erased).

This user messaging about update should also display the following information:

- That the software update is required or recommended to improve the IRD usage.
- If the IRD can detect that the user had unplugged the power to the IRD when the IRD was prepared to perform an update when going to standby mode or during standby mode, then display information after start-up (1) to the user with an option to update immediate or at next standby (for example with a reminder to the user to not unplug the power to the IRD for this occasion).
- Indicate which network the user is connected to (in the case of SSU is coming via broadcast, then network information from NIT, SI, see section 12 and in the case of SSU via local or IP-based interface, then information about which interface).

If update is done in standby the user messaging should (1) then be displayed when the NorDig IRD is powered on next time.

Note1: This **shall** not apply when IRD starts automatically to perform scheduled actions, e.g. perform recordings. In this case, no user messaging **shall** be prompted on screen (and software download **shall** not be performed) or user messaging **shall** have a mode that automatically times out this user messaging and with a time-out of less than 5 minutes.

Note 2: Recommended also for NorDig IRDs that the system software update does not affect or delete the IRD's previous installation, user preference settings and/or service list(s).

### 10.1.4 Security requirements for SSU

#### 10.1.4.1 Protection against non-certified system-software

The IRD manufacturer **shall** ensure that download of non-certified system-software is prevented.

#### 10.1.4.2 Only accept newer software versions

The NorDig IRD **shall** be provided with a mechanism ensuring that only newer software versions than the existing System Software are accepted.

#### 10.1.4.3 Protection for corrupt system software

If the NorDig IRD System software is corrupt (due to normal operation of the IRD or due to updating the system software), the IRD manufacturer **shall** provide a backup mechanism, either on local storage or via download, which can make the IRD operational again.

#### 10.1.4.4 Protection against interrupted SSU

The NorDig IRD **shall** be implemented with a protection mechanism for the existing system software. It **shall** ensure that the existing software will not be corrupted in case the System Software Update (SSU) is interrupted before the new system software is fully downloaded.

### 10.1.5 Previous user settings and installation after SSU

The NorDig IRD should avoid re-installation of user data (see chapter 16) due to a software update. All user preferences, user defined lists, etc, should remain unchanged.

### 10.1.6 Rejection and Reminder for SSU

If the user when asked chooses to postpone/abort/reject the current system software update:

- as long as the new system software is signalled over the broadcast channel (2), the NorDig IRD **shall** (1) remind the user each time the IRD comes out of standby or shutdown and the user **shall** be able to confirm or to abort/postpone the installation (3).
- as long as the new system software is signalled (published) over the broadband/Internet channel, the NorDig IRD may (1) remind the user at least once during next restart or shutdown of the IRD.

Note1: This **shall** not apply when IRD starts automatically to perform scheduled actions, e.g. perform recordings. In this case, no message **shall** be prompted on screen and software download **shall** not be performed.

Note 2: this refers to both cases when new system software is signalized and downloaded over broadcast channel and when new system software is signalized in broadcast but downloaded over broadband/Internet with the exception if new software can somehow be signalised as a non-important update.

Note 3: For the reminder, the NorDig IRD may offer a third alternative to permanently abort this update version, but then when an even newer update version is available the user **shall** be asked again.

### 10.1.7 IRDs with access to multiple SSU services

When the NorDig IRD has access to multiple SSU services (for example from multiple terrestrial networks/countries or both from broadcast and from Internet via IP-based interface) the following **shall** apply:

1. Only SSU streams targeting the IRD (brand, model etc) **shall** be accepted by the NorDig IRD (and the NorDig IRD **shall** not be disturbed by other SSU streams for other IRD brands and/or models).
2. Only SSU streams with a higher software version than already installed **shall** be accepted by the IRD (according with section 10.1.4.2).
3. The IRD manufacturer **shall** ensure that there are not any compatibility issues if different System Software versions are broadcast via different operators (1). In case there are different certified System Software versions available for different networks, the IRD **shall** indicate to the user if the new System Software is not certified for the same network as the existing System software.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: In some cases, an IRD might have access to two or more download services, carrying software updates with different version numbers, possible from different operators/networks, different channels (via broadcast channels and/or local data interface). In this case toggling between different software versions have to be avoided.<br>Individual networks may have network specific requirements in addition to the common NorDig requirements. In such cases the IRD will have to satisfy both the common NorDig requirements and the relevant network specific requirements in order to provide certified system software for the networks |

### *10.2 SSU functionality*

The NorDig IRD **shall** support SSU functionality according to Table 10.1 below. Requirements depend on whether the NorDig IRD is a non-connectable or connectable IRD as shown in Table 10.1 below (see definitions of connectable and non-connectable in section 1.1).

The SSU procedure is here divided into the following parts:

- Settings for SSU user preferences in the NorDig IRD (including factory default setting, see 16.4)
- Any user interaction during or starting of a SSU (confirmation of proceed update, user messaging, manual update, etc, see 10.1.3)
- Search: IRD searches for and detects if new System Software Update is available for the NorDig IRD (from broadcast, local interface and/or IP-based interface)
- Download: IRD downloads (caches) the System Software Update data file(s) to the NorDig IRD (from broadcast, local interface and/or IP-based interface)
- Install: IRD installs the downloaded System Software Update into the IRD's persistent memory, replacing the IRD's existing active software.
- Any re-installation of IRD and receivable services (if applicable, observe see section 10.1.5)

| | **Delivery alternatives** | **Non-connectable NorDig IRD** | **Internet Connectable NorDig IRD** |
|---|---|---|---|
| #D1 | **OTA search + OTA download**,<br>The IRD **shall** be able to search for and download system software from the broadcast channel, see section 10.5 | Mandatory | Mandatory to implement at least one of the alternatives #D1, #D2, #D3 or #D4. |
| #D2 | **OTA search + OTN download**,<br>The IRD **shall** be able to search for system software from broadcast channel and download from return channel (DVB's SSU Update_type 0x03), see section 10.5 | n/a | |
| #D3 | **OTA notification + OTN/local download**,<br>The IRD **shall** be able to search/get notification from broadcast channel (DVB's SSU Update_type 0x04) and download from Internet/broadband channel and/or local interface (e.g. USB), see section 10.5.4 | Optional | |
| #D4 | **OTN search + OTN download**,<br>The IRD **shall** be able to search for and download system software from the Internet / broadband channel, see section 10.3. | n/a | |
| #D5 | **Local search + Local download**,<br>The IRD **shall** be able to search for and download system software from the local interface (e.g. USB), see section 10.3. | Optional | Mandatory for IRDs not supporting #D1 or #D2 otherwise Optional |
| | **Approach (method) alternatives** | **Non-connectable NorDig IRD** | **Internet Connectable NorDig IRD** |
| #A1 | **Fully Automatic**<br>Automatic search, automatic download and automatic install (no user interaction when IRD set to this mode), see section 10.2.1.1 below. | Mandatory to implement at least one of the alternatives #A1, #A2 or #A3. | Mandatory to implement at least one of the alternatives #A1, #A2, #A3 or #A4. |
| #A2 | **Semi Automatic**<br>Automatic search, automatic download and manual install (automatic search and download but wait for user confirmation before install), see section 10.2.1.2 below. | | |
| #A3 | **Automatic search** and **manual download** and install<br>wait for user confirmation before download, install without futher user confirmation, see section 10.2.1.3 below. | | |
| #A4 | **Automatic Notification,**<br>Automatic search for an IRD manufacturer message to be presentated to the user informing of software update availability and necesary actions to install it, see section 10.2.1.5 below. | Optional | |
| #A5 | **Manual** search, **manual** download and install<br>manually initiated search, wait for user confirmation before download, install without futher user confirmation, see section 10.2.1.4 below. | Optional | Optional |

OTA: "Over-the-Air", refers here to over the broadcast channel (via terrestrial, cable, satellite or managed IPTV interface)
OTN: "Over-the-Network", refers here to over the Internet channel (via IRD's two-way interface)

Note: IRDs may have one common user setting for selecting approach or several settings, for example one for download mode (auto/manual) and another for install mode (auto/manual).

*Table 10.1Minimum Delivery and Approach SSU alternatives for NorDig IRDs.*

'***Automatic***' refers here to the IRD performing an action in the background without user interaction (TV viewing mode or standby mode).

'***Manual***' refers here to the IRD performing an action after user interaction (request and/or confirmation).

**'*Automatic search*'** means that the IRD regularly searches for new system software that targets the IRD. For broadcast channel, specific parts of Automatic search, see section 10.5. The NorDig IRD **shall** support at least one of following alternatives:

- Search continuously/frequently in the background of normal operation without restricting TV viewing. It should start action within 10 minutes after software is published according to the IRD's selected SSU approach. ("Published" refers here in the case of broadcast channel is used from when signalling is included in actual received transport stream(s) and in the case of Internet IP-based channel is used from when IRD manufacturer publish new software for the IRD).
- Search at least once per day (for example in standby mode). Any user messaging **shall** be made after IRD comes out of standby according to 10.1.3.
- Search at least once from the time IRD has been turned off until the time it has been turned on (i.e. during standby mode), with exception for shorter standby periods than 10 minutes (to allow IRDs to have fast start-up if user changes their mind and wants to use the IRD again). Any user messaging **shall** be made after IRD comes out of standby according to 10.1.3.

### 10.2.1 SSU approaches

A number of approaches for software update functionality are defined below

#### 10.2.1.1 Fully Automatic (automatic search, automatic download and automatic install).

For this approach the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically perform a regular search for new system software, when new system software is available the IRD automatically downloads the new software in the background and when download is completed the new software **shall** be installed and replace the existing system software without any further user interaction.

This approach should mainly be used for IRDs that can perform System software upgrade without effecting or deleting the IRD's previous installation, user preference settings and/or service list(s).

It is recommended for this approach that actions that limit or disturb the use of the IRD (e.g. download and installation) is performed when the IRD is not used by the user or the user's scheduled actions (e.g. when going to standby mode or during standby mode).

#### 10.2.1.2 Semi-Automatic (Automatic search, automatic download and manual install)

For this approach the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically perform a regular search for new system software and automatically download the new software in the background when available. Once the software download is completed, the NorDig IRD **shall** give a message to the user that software is ready to be installed (according to 10.1.3). The user **shall** be able to control the update as stated in 10.1.1 and be reminded as stated in 10.1.6.

If the user selects to confirm the upgrade, then NorDig IRD **shall** install the downloaded new system software without any further user interaction and may provide warning messaging if installing the update interrupts viewing (according to 10.1.3).

#### 10.2.1.3 Automatic search, manual download and install

For this approach the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically perform a regular search for new system software and whenever new software is available, prompt the user with a pop-up message (according to 10.1.3). The user **shall** be able to control the update as stated in 10.1.1 and be reminded as stated in 10.1.6.

If user selects to confirm the upgrade, then NorDig IRD **shall** download and install the new system software without any further user interaction and may provide warning messaging if installing the update interrupts viewing (according to 10.1.3).

##### 10.2.1.4 Manual search, manual download and install

For this approach, when selected by the user, NorDig IRD **shall** initiate an immediate search for new software and before or after downloading the new system software, prompt the user with a pop-up message if an update is available or not (for example with a user confirmation to proceed or that no new software is available). The user **shall** be able to control the update as stated in 10.1.1. (The NorDig IRD should here not remind the user of the new system software, if the user selects to abort an available update).

If user selects to confirm upgrade, then NorDig IRD **shall** download (if not already downloaded) and install the new system software without any further user interaction and may provide warning messaging if installing the update interrupts viewing (according to 10.1.3).

##### 10.2.1.5 Automatic Notification, manual download and install

For this approach the NorDig IRD **shall** automatically perform a regular search for a notification signal (using DVB SSU's Update_type 0x4) indicating the availability of new system software and, whenever new software is available, prompt the user with the IRD manufacturer's message associated with that notification. The message can be a default message that is pre-stored in the IRD (typically notification signal pointing to which pre-stored message) or a specific message sent within the notification signal.

The message informs the user that new software is available and recommends the necessary action for the user to take. For example, it can advise the user to connect an un-connected connectable IRD to the Internet (so the IRD can search for and download the new software via Internet) or if no Internet connection is available, direct the user towards a local interface (e.g. USB memory stick) download via manufacturer support services.

## *10.3 System Software Update via local interface or IP-based interface (Internet)*

### 10.3.1 System Software Update via local interface (e.g. USB)

Download should be possible using a local data interface (like USB) and/or IP-based interface (see chapter 8.3). The NorDig IRD manufacturer **shall** define the protocols and security mechanisms in accordance with section 10.1 and 10.2. The actual download is the user's responsibility and **shall** be performed under the full control of the user.

### 10.3.2 System Software Update via IP-based interface (to Internet)

A connectable NorDig IRD should support the ability to search and download system software via the Internet. The NorDig IRD manufacturer **shall** define the protocols and security mechanisms in accordance with section 10.1 and 10.2.

## *10.4 Network Management and Provisioning for IP-based IRDs (IPTV)*

NorDig IRDs with an IP-based front-end should support system software download through network management and provisioning as specified in ETSI TS 102 034 [29], Chapter 10.

| |
|---|
| Note: Network management and provisioning specifies how NorDig IRDs with an IP-based front-end network configuration **shall** be provisioned, and how NorDig IRDs with an IP-based front-end will be managed over an IP network. |

## *10.5 System Software Update via broadcast channels*

The NorDig IRD supporting SSU via broadcast channel **shall** provide a software download mechanism in accordance with the DVB SSU specification [28]; the IRD **shall** support the SSU Simple Profile and the parts of SSU Enhanced Profile that are specified below.

**Automatic search** (in addition to 10.2) when using broadcast channel may result in the detection of a system software download, in the case of SSU Simple profile (see 10.5.1.1 below), which can be immediately processed as stated in this section 10.5 or a schedule time for a download to be available, in the case of SSU Enhanced profile (see 10.5.1.2 below).

When NorDig IRD searches for new software via the broadcast channel according with the alternatives stated in 10.2, this means:

- For continuously/frequently search, this refers to search in the PSI/SI of the actual received broadcast signal(s).
- For search at least once per day and search at least once from the time IRD has been turned off until the time it has been turned on, this refers to search/scan through all installed Transport Streams.

### 10.5.1 SSU Signalling

#### 10.5.1.1 Simple Profile (update_type 0x0 and 0x1)

The NorDig IRD supporting SSU via broadcast channel **shall** support the DVB SSU simple profile using the signalling in NIT, BAT and PMT, in accordance with the DVB-SSU specification [28]. The Linkage descriptor in the NIT table, for linking to the SSU service is defined in section 12.2.6 (The UNT is not used for this profile, see chapter 5 of ref ETSI TS 102 006 [28]).

#### 10.5.1.2 UNT Enhanced Profile (update_type 0x2, 0x3 and 0x4)

The NorDig IRD supporting SSU download via broadcast channel **shall** support the DVB SSU UNT Enhanced profile using the signalling in NIT, BAT, PMT, and UNT, in accordance with the DVB-SSU specification [28]. The Linkage descriptor in the NIT table, for linking to the SSU service is defined in section 12.2.6. The descriptors of the UNT Enhanced profile are specified in Section 12.7.

Descriptors defined in the DVB SSU Enhanced profile [28], but not specified as mandatory in section 12.7 may be omitted.

The NorDig IRD supporting SSU signalling via broadcast channel **shall** not rely solely on the OUI_hash field, since other manufactures may have the same OUI_hash but a different OUI and **shall** not assume that all sections of a UNT have the same OUI. (A UNT sub-table may contain sections from multiple different OUI but with the same OUI_hash. A UNT may also contain multiple UNT sub-tables for multiple OUI and OUI_hash).

#### 10.5.1.3 Locating the Appropriate SSU

Two principal ways of signalling SSU **shall** be supported.

1. Use of DVB OUI
   In this case, selection is done by further investigating into PMT (and also UNT if Enhanced profile is used).
2. Use of Manufacturer specific OUI
   Use of Manufacturer specific OUI and selector bytes to indicate model type or ranges of models:
   a. The NorDig IRD **shall** access the relevant SSU service without investigating other services if the triggering conditions given by the selector bytes are met.
   b. If the NorDig IRD is already updated with the updated software (i.e. signalled version number is the same as the one in the IRD), there is no need to investigate further into the PMT, UNT or Data-carousel (only NIT needs to be checked).

Table 10.2 shows typical signalling in PMT and NIT that **shall** be handled by the NorDig IRD:

| Manu-facturer | Model/ version | Enhanced/ Simple without UNT | Service_ID | PMT Data_broadcast ID_descriptor | NIT Linkage_descriptor |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 1 | Simple | 1 | Manufacturer specific OUI with selector bytes. | Manufacturer specific OUI with selector bytes. |
| 1 | 2 | Simple | 2 | Manufacturer specific OUI with selector bytes. | Manufacturer specific OUI with selector bytes |
| 1 | 3 | Enhanced | 3 | DVB OUI | DVB OUI |
| 2 | 1 | Enhanced | 3 | DVB OUI | DVB OUI |
| 3 | 1 | Enhanced | 3 | DVB OUI | DVB OUI |
| 4 | 1 | Enhanced | 4 | Manufacturer specific OUI without selector bytes | Manufacturer specific OUI without selector bytes |

*Table 10.2 Example of signalling in the PMT and NIT.*

For signalling in the PMT, two principal ways **shall** be supported.

1. Data_broadcast_ID_descriptor using DVB OUI (0x00015A):
   - Further investigation in UNT and Data-carousel needed to locate the software image.
2. Data_broadcast_ID_descriptor including manufacturer specific OUI and selector bytes:
   - The IRD **shall** investigate the hardware ID and the software ID from the selector bytes in the PMT table. The IRD **shall** only trigger on a software update as long as the software ID is higher than the currently installed software in the IRD.
   - If the triggering conditions are met, the IRD **shall** investigate the UNT to find out if a software update is targeted to this specific IRD.

### 10.5.2 Update Notification Table (UNT)

The use of the Compatibility_descriptor, including hardware and software descriptors **shall** be supported by the NorDig IRD, in accordance with ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

Any table section and carousel group referring to a specific OUI that does not match the IRD's OUI **shall** be ignored by the IRD. The NorDig IRD **shall** be robust against any non-compliance of such transmitted data not intended for NorDig IRD use.

### 10.5.3 Data carriage over broadcast channel

The NorDig IRD supporting delivering SSU data carriage (downloading) over the broadcast channel **shall** (1) support the DVB SSU standard update carousel data (update_type 0x1 or 0x2) as specified in ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

In addition, the IRD may support proprietary data format (update_type 0x0). The definition of the proprietary format is up to the IRD manufacturer (In accordance with ETSI TS 102 006 [28]).

Note 1: Several system software updates, for a number of different IRDs may be transmitted as groups in this carousel. The DownloadServerInitiate message (DSI) will be used as the entry point in the carousel and may be shared by multiple manufactures.

One manufacturer can have multiple updates, each update in a separate group. It is assumed that all groups and modules can be transmitted on a shared elementary stream.

#### 10.5.3.1 Minimum bandwidth for SSU over broadcast channel

The NorDig IRD should support SSU file broadcasted with bitrate down to 100 kbps (without IRD timing out due to slow download).

### 10.5.4 SSU Notifications (update_type 0x4)

The NorDig IRD supporting SSU notification **shall** support the DVB SSU update type 0x4 using UNT, in accordance with the DVB-SSU specification [28].

A typical use case for SSU Notification is to reach all non-connected connectable IRDs via broadcast channel with information that new SSU software is available but the new SSU software size is too large to be distributed via broadcast channel and/or requires a higher bandwidth over broadcast channel than is available.

Manufacturers are recommended to:

- Pre-store SSU messages in their IRDs and messages should be in all available languages that the IRD supports,
- Mainly using the message_index (in the enhanced_message_descriptor, see 12.7.10) to reference which pre-stored message to be displayed for the user,
- Minimise the broadcast text (in the enhanced_message_descriptor and/or message descriptor, see 12.7.10).

### 10.5.5 CIP-CAM software updates

The descriptors for the SSU Notification in the UNT are specified in Section 12.7.CIP-CAM software updates. In the case of IRDs with DVB Common Interface Plus (CIP) CAM, the IRD **shall** also support to update the System Software on the CIP-CAM when such software is broadcast. In this case there could be two software images. The IRD **shall** inform the user whether there is an IRD update or CIP-CAM update.

All requirements in this chapter apply to NorDig IRDs. Requirements for download functions in the CIP-CAM are defined in the CI Plus specification [64].

# 11 Performance

### 11.1 Introduction

In this chapter the performance of decoded digital video and audio signals are specified (only relevant for IDTV in case of external interfaces). It also includes zapping performance regarding the time to recover when changing services. The performance for demodulated analogue video and audio signals (optional for NorDig IRD with embedded analogue cable front-end) is also specified.

Other performance issues are treated in other chapters.

### 11.2 Video Performance of RGB ~~and PAL~~ Signals

The RGB- and CVBS-signals at the appropriate interfaces of the NorDig IRD **shall** meet the characteristics given in ITU report 624-4 [59].

### 11.3 Audio Performance of the Decoded Digital Signal

Reference for the performance of all audio measurement is full scale minus 12 dB and the measurement **shall** be made at a sampling rate of 48 kHz.

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least satisfy the performance as stated below:

| Measurement item | Min | Typical | Max. |
|---|---|---|---|
| Output impedance (Ohm) | | 600 | 1000 |
| Output level for sine wave at 1kHz of 0 dBTP (mV RMS) | 1590 (i.e. -1 dB) | 2000 (note 1) | 2520 (i.e. +1 dB) |
| Output level for sine wave at 1kHz of -12 dBTP (mV RMS) | 397 (i.e. -1 dB) | 500 | 630 (i.e. +1 dB) |
| Flatness of amplitude response: (dB) (at 40 Hz to 80 Hz)<br>80 Hz to 13,5 kHz<br>13,5 kHz to 20 kHz | <br>-2<br>-1<br>-2 | | <br>+2<br>+1<br>+2 |
| Dynamic range (dB) | 80 | | |
| Harmonic distortion ratio (%) | | | 0.1 |
| Cross-talk between channels (dB, at 20 Hz to 20 kHz) | | | -60 |
| Hum suppression (dB) | 60 | | |
| S/N (dB, weighted, quasi peak, ITU/R rec. 468) | 66 | | |
| Phase difference between channels (°),<br>40 Hz to 13,5 kHz<br>13,5 kHz to 15 kHz | | | <br>10<br>15 |
| Amplitude difference between channels (dB, 20 Hz to 20 kHz) | | | ±1 |
| Volume control (affected steps with 3 dB/step) | | 6 | |
| Signal attenuation at mute (dB) | 70 | | |

*Table 11.1 Audio performance*

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | Full scale is defined, for a digital signal, as the maximum signal in accordance with the encoding system specification. Full scale amplitude is defined after pre-emphasis and is the same for all frequencies after encoding. |

### 11.4 Zapping Time for TV Services

The NorDig IRD's zapping time for the services **shall** satisfy the requirements given in Table 11.2.

The figures in Table 11.2 **shall** be met for an input signal which has:

- video GOP length of around half a second (i.e. 12 frames for interlaced 50Hz video, 24 frames for progressive 50 Hz/fps video).
- a repetition rate of ECM of 2 per second (for scrambled services)
- repetition rate of PAT and PMT of 10 times per second and
- maximum PTS-to-PCR relative delay **shall** be 700ms.

The picture on the display during the zapping time **shall** be either frozen or black and the sound **shall** be muted until the new session has been stabilised.

The figures in the table are valid for two services on one multiplex as well as for two multiplexes and for both scrambled and unscrambled (FTA) services.

| IRD Type | Average max zapping time |
|---|---|
| IRD with embedded CAS | 2.5 seconds |
| IRD with CI and using a CAM | 3.5 seconds |

*Table 11.2 Maximum zapping time*

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | An IRD may have several methods of changing selected service to be decoded (zapping), for example via P+/P-, service list, numeric keys, from EPG/ESG menu etc. The different methods of zapping may have slightly different zapping time, for example due to response time, time-out for keying etc. Figures above are for the IRD's fastest method, other method should not introduce more than 1s of extra zapping time. Observe that CAMs from different vendors can have different performance and this can have an impact on the zapping time. Figures above are for CAMs with well proven performance. Different CAS broadcast settings (e.g. CI+ messages) can also impact on the zapping time, which must be taken into account when evaluating the result. Figures above are for CAS broadcast settings with fastest zapping time. |

# Part B: The system software with application

# 12 Service Information

## 12.1 General

### 12.1.1 General Requirements

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to process, i.e. sort out, store and make available through the Man-Machine Interface (NorDig Basic IRD) the incoming SI data (descriptors) as tabulated in sections 12.1.8-12.8, i.e. these are (minimum) mandatory descriptors for the receiver to decode and interpret, (see also Table 12.2 for an overview over minimum broadcast and receiver requirements). The processing **shall** be compliant with ETSI EN 300 468 [13] and ETSI TR 101 211 [25].

Descriptors or other data structures that are currently undefined or are unknown to NorDig IRD **shall** be skipped and **shall** not cause any harm. This means for example that NorDig IRD **shall** ignore/skip the complete text string that is using DVB character tables that the IRD does not support.

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to process the PSI/SI tables, both for the 'Actual' and for 'Other' transport streams. SI tables for the 'Other' transport streams, $SI_{other}$, should be seen as informative and **shall** always be double checked with the corresponding SI tables for the 'Actual' transport stream, $SI_{actual}$.

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least start updating for any changes in the received "quasi-static" SI data after it returns to active from standby mode at least once per day. (Once per day refers here to daily usage of the IRD and that the IRD is daily put into standby). "Quasi static" SI-data includes NIT and SDT, i.e. SI that is typically stored in the flash memory for service navigations, such as service name, service_ID, number of services. (The 'running status' is not included in the quasi-static SI data. As a guideline for the implementation, this updating may be performed in the background, to shorten the start-up of the basic video and audio).

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least start action for any changes in the received "dynamic" PSI and SI data, (PMT, EIT, TDT/TOT, running status and CA mode) within 1 second. (As a guideline for the implementation, the trigger for changes in received tables can be based on comparing the 'version id' in the tables).

NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-end **shall** support "TS Full SI" and should support "TS Optional SI", as specified in ETSI TS 102 034 [29]. With respect to DVB SI as specified in ETSI EN 300 468 [13], the following general requirements and comments apply:

a) The NorDig IRD with IP-based front-end **shall** process the following DVB SI tables if present in the transport stream (see also Table 12.1):

- Service Description Table (table_id = 0x42 – Actual transport stream)
- Event Information Table, Present/Following and Schedule
- Time and Date Table/Time Offset Table
  See section 12.5 for complete procedure to retrieve network time.
- Conditional Access Table (CAT)
- Programme Map Table (PMT)

b) For NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-ends the NIT is not used. Instead the IRDs **shall** (1) look for the Service Provider Discovery Information as defined in ETSI TS 102 034 [29]. The entry point(s) for Service Provider Discovery Information **shall** be according to the mechanisms defined in ETSI TS 102 034 [29]. A service list **shall** be built based on the information in the Service Provider Discovery Information. See also Annex C.

c) In order to locate possible bootloader streams retransmitted from e.g. satellite, the NorDig IP IRD **shall** (1) look in the Broadcast Discovery Record (according to ETSI TS 102 034 [29]). A bootloader service **shall** be signalled as a particular service with service_type set to 0x81.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Use of ETSI TS 102 034 is suspended, as it is currently not used in most IP-based networks. For information about required performance related to this item, contact the relevant network operator. |

As the NorDig IRD needs information like manufacturer, HW version, SW version etc., the NorDig private Linkage Descriptor **shall** be included in the Broadcast Discovery Records. The XML scheme of the private Linkage Descriptor is given in section 13.4.

### 12.1.2 PSI/SI classification

Static PSI/SI data is defined as the PSI/SI data that must be updated by the IRD in Installation mode (channel search or first time initialization).

Quasi static PSI/SI data is defined as the PSI/SI data that must be updated by the IRD in (automatic) Update mode (i.e. when it is toggled between standby mode and active mode or vice versa).

Dynamic PSI/SI data is defined as the PSI/SI data that must be updated by the IRD in active/TV viewing mode (i.e. within 1s after a change in the data occurs).

### 12.1.3 Private data specifier value

NorDig defined private descriptors and data inside PSI and/or SI tables are recognised with private_data_specifier_value set to 0x00000029, used according to ETSI TR 101 211 [25] and ETSI ETR 162 [21].

### 12.1.4 Service Types

The NorDig IRD **shall** minimum handle the service types listed in Table 12.1 below.

Service types that are not supported by the NorDig IRD should be ignored.

| **Class of service** (description of service type) | **Service type (SDT)** | **Component descriptor (SDT)** | **Status** | **Category type** | **Priority within category** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **TV service** (mainly MPEG-2/H.262 based SDTV) | 0x01 | Ob Or | M | TV | 5 |
| **Radio service** (mainly MPEG-1 Layer II based) | 0x02 | Ob Or | M | Radio | 2 |
| **Teletext service** | 0x03 | Ob Or | M | others | |
| Advanced codec based **Radio service** (MPEG-4 HE-AAC, AC-3/E-AC-3, AC-4 (1)) | 0x0A | Ob Or | M | Radio | 1 |
| **Data broadcast service** (e.g. for SSU service) and HbbTV standalone services | 0x0C | Ob Or | M | others | |
| AVC/H.264 based **SDTV service** | 0x16 | Ob Or | M | TV | 4 |
| AVC/H.264 based **HDTV service** | 0x19 | Ob Or | M | TV | 3 |
| HEVC/H.265 based TV service (up to UHD, SFR and SDR compatible, incl HDR/HLG10) | 0x1F | Mb Mr (2) | M (1) | TV | 2 |
| HEVC/H.265 based TV service with PQ10 HDR (up to UHD, SFR/HFR) | 0x20 | Mb Mr (2) | M (1) | TV | 1 |
| Others | others | | O | Others | lowest |

| |
|---|
| M; Mandatory, R; (Highly) Recommended, O; Optional item to support, Alt; minimum one among several options.<br>Priority; lower value refers to higher priority.<br>Note 1: Mandatory for NorDig HEVC IRDs, optional for IRDs not supporting HEVC.<br>Note 2: Used in addition to service_type to identify components' complexity for a service. See section 12.3.6 for mandatory types for the NorDig HEVC IRD. |

*Table 12.1 Overview of service types, service category groups and priority between the service types*

*Informative: During migration period simulcasting of the content in (MPEG2) SDTV and in (MPEG4 AVC) HDTV may occur. Simulcasting may be under the same service (service_id) or on separate services (separate service_ids).*

*For service simulcasting on separate service_ids a linkage 'NorDig Simulcast replacement service' (linkage type 0x82) will be broadcasted from the SDTV version pointing to the HDTV version of the same service, in order to help the IRD to know that these services are two versions of the "same" service/content,*

*The service types 'Advanced codec based Radio service' (0x0A), 'advanced codec based SDTV service' (0x16) and 'advanced codec based HDTV service' (0x19) will be used for services where the main component is an advanced codec stream. For TV services the main component is the video stream while for Radio services the main component is the audio stream. These service types will be used when it is not desirable that an old MPEG2 only IRD install and list a MPEG4 service.*

*The service type 'digital TV service''(0x01) will be used for services including MPEG-2 video stream. It may also be used for service simulcasting MPEG2 and MPEG4 AVC video and for services only including MPEG-4 AVC video. All IRDs will install service type 'digital TV service' (0x01). This service type (0x01) may be used for a service that only includes MPEG-4 AVC video when it is desirable that an old MPEG2 only IRD installs and lists a service (even if old MPEG2 only IRD cannot decode the video, used for promotion purpose).*

*The logical channel number **shall**, as far as possible, be unique within each original network id for each service type category (TV, Radio and Others).*

### 12.1.5 Service Categories

The services are grouped inside the IRD into three service type categories: TV (1), Radio (2) and Others/data (3) services:

(1) TV category includes services with service type: 0x01 digital (MPEG-2) TV service, 0x16 AVC/H.264 SDTV service,0x19 AVC/H.264 HDTV service, 0x1F HEVC/H.265 based HD/UHDTV service and 0x20 HEVC/H.265 based UHDTV HDR service.

(2) Radio category includes services with service type: 0x02 digital radio sound service and 0x0A advanced codec digital radio sound service.

(3) Others/(data) category includes all other service types that are not included in TV (1) and Radio (2) categories.

The NorDig IRD **shall** during installation of services create a common service list for each category (i.e. all 0x01, 0x16, 0x19, 0x1F and 0x20 within same TV category list and so on for the Radio and Other/data categories).

*Informative: These categories enable the IRD to create a common TV category service list for all TV service types (0x01, 0x16, 0x19, 0x1F and 0x20) and similar for Radio and Other/data service lists.*

### 12.1.6 Used PSI/SI descriptors

| Descriptor | Tag value | NIT (3) | BAT | SDT | EIT | TOT/ TDT | CAT | PMT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| audio_stream_descriptor | 0x03 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Or |
| target_background_grid_descriptor | 0x07 | - | - | - | - | - | - | Ob Or |
| video_window_descriptor | 0x08 | - | - | - | - | - | - | Ob Or |
| CA_descriptor | 0x09 | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr | mb Mr |
| ISO_639_language_descriptor | 0x0A | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| carousel_identifier_descriptor | 0x13 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr (1) |
| Metadata_pointer_descriptor | 0x25 | Ob Or (3) | - | Ob Or (3) | - | - | - | - |
| Metadata_descriptor | 0x26 | - | - | - | - | - | - | Ob Or (3) |
| [MPEG] Extension_descriptor (7) | 0x3F | - | - | - | - | - | - | Ob Mr |
| network_name_descriptor (2) | 0x40 | Mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| service_list_descriptor (2) | 0x41 | Ob Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| satellite_delivery_system_descriptor (2) | 0x43 | mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| cable_delivery_system_descriptor (2) | 0x44 | mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| service_descriptor | 0x48 | - | - | Mb Mr | - | - | - | - |
| linkage_descriptor (2) | 0x4A | mb Mr | - | Ob Mr | * | - | - | - |
| short_event_descriptor | 0x4D | - | - | - | mb Mr | - | - | - |
| extended_event_descriptor | 0x4E | - | - | - | Ob Mr | - | - | - |
| component_descriptor (6) | 0x50 | - | - | Mb Mr | Ob Mr | - | - | - |
| stream_identifier_descriptor | 0x52 | - | - | - | - | - | - | Ob Mr |
| CA_identifier_descriptor | 0x53 | - | - | Ob Mr | Ob Mr* | - | - | - |
| content_descriptor | 0x54 | - | - | - | mb Mr | - | - | - |
| parental_rating_descriptor | 0x55 | - | - | - | Ob Mr | - | - | - |
| teletext_descriptor | 0x56 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| local_time_offset_descriptor | 0x58 | - | - | - | - | Mb Mr | - | - |
| subtitling_descriptor | 0x59 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| terrestrial_delivery_system_descriptor (2) | 0x5A | mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| private_data_specifier_descriptor (2) | 0x5F | mb Mr | - | mb Or | mb Or | - | - | mb Mr |
| frequency_list_descriptor (2) | 0x62 | Ob Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| data_broadcast_id_descriptor | 0x66 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| AC-3 descriptor (6) | 0x6A | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| application_signalling_descriptor | 0x6F | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr (1) |
| default_authority_descriptor (3) | 0x73 | Ob Mr (3) | - | Ob Mr (3) | - | - | - | - |
| Related_content_descriptor (3) | 0x74 | | | | | | | Ob,Or (3) |
| content_identifier_descriptor (3) | 0x76 | - | - | - | Ob Mr (3) | - | - | - |
| S2_satellite_delivery_system_descriptor (2) | 0x79 | mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Enhanced_AC-3_descriptor (6) | 0x7A | | | | | | | mb Mr |
| AAC_audio_descriptor (6) | 0x7C | | | | | | | mb Mr |
| [DVB] extension descriptor (7) | 0x7F | mb Mr | - | mb Mr | mb Mr | - | - | mb Mr |
| user defined | 0x80-0xFE | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| NorDig private: logical_channel_descriptor (Version 1) (3) | 0x83 | Ob Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |

| | | | | | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| NorDig private: logical_channel_descriptor (Version 2) (3) | 0x87 | Ob Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| CI_protection_descriptor | 0xCE | | | Mr(5) | | | | |
| Forbidden | 0xFF | Fb | Fb | Fb | Fb | Fb | Fb | Fb |

- *Descriptor not applicable or not yet used as minimum within NorDig*
Mb Mandatory to broadcast, always/all time
mb Mandatory to broadcast if applicable, i.e. if certain criteria is met (e.g. if scrambling is used)
Ob Optional to broadcast, but recommended (if applicable)
Fb Forbidden to broadcast (may cause misinterpretation)
Mr Mandatory to receive and interpret if broadcast
Or Optional to receive and interpret (if broadcast)

Note 1: Only mandatory for IRD with HbbTV capability
Note 2: Descriptors carried in the NIT are not relevant for IRDs with IP-based Front-end,
See Annex C. Delivery descriptors requirements depends of which tuning and demodulation the IRD supports, see table 12.7.
Note 3: Only applicable for NorDig PVR IRDs only.
Note 4: Only applicable for NorDig IRD-T2
Note 5: Mandatory to receive from SDT-actual for IRDs that support use of CIP-CAMs,
See section 9.2.
Note 6: The value of component_type to be used within the component_descriptor **shall** be equal to the value of component_type held in the AC-3_descriptor or Enhanced_AC-3_descriptor or AAC_descriptor.
Note 7: The DVB extension_descriptor is defined in DVB-SI (EN 300468) [13]

Comment: Descriptors used for the UNT of the DVB SSU Enhanced profile are given in table 12.30
Descriptors used for the RCT (only applicable for PVRs) are given in table 12.21

*Table 12.2 Overview over minimum used descriptors in NorDig broadcast and receivers*

| **DVB] Extension Descriptor** | **Tag extension value** | **NIT (1)** | **BAT** | **SDT** | **EIT** | **TOT/ TDT** | **CAT** | **PMT** |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| T2_delivery_system_descriptor | 0x04 | mb Mr | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| Supplementary_audio_descriptor | 0x06 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr |
| Message descriptor | 0x08 | - | - | Ob O~~M~~r ~~(1)~~ | - | - | - | - |
| AC-4 Descriptor | 0x15 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr (1) |
| S2X_satellite_delivery_system descriptor | 0x17 | Mb Mr (2) | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| audio_preselection_descriptor (3) | 0x19 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Or |
| TTML_subtitling_descriptor | 0x20 | - | - | - | - | - | - | mb Mr (1) |
| reserved for future use | 0x09-0x7F | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |
| user defined | 0x80-0xFF | - | - | - | - | - | - | - |

- Descriptor not applicable or not yet used as minimum within NorDig
Mb Mandatory to broadcast, always/all time
mb Mandatory to broadcast if applicable, i.e. if certain criteria are met (e.g. if scrambling is used)
Mr Mandatory to receive and interpret if broadcast
Or Optional to receive and interpret (if broadcast)
Ob Optional to broadcast, but recommended (if applicable)

| DVB] Extension Descriptor | Tag extension value | NIT (1) | BAT | SDT | EIT | TOT/ TDT | CAT | PMT |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| Note 1: Only mandatory for NorDig HEVC IRD<br>Note 2: Only mandatory for NorDig Satellite HEVC IRD supporting DVB-S2X.<br><br>Note 3: The processing of audio_preselection_descriptor is highly recommended in the NGA capable Nordig HEVC IRD and should be supported in new IRDs. It is expected that audio_preselection_descriptor processing, especially languages, will become mandatory in future versions of this specification. | | | | | | | | |

*Table 12.3 Overview over minimum used descriptors in the extension_descriptor (as defined in DVB SI EN 300 468 [13], Tag value 0x7F) in NorDig broadcast and receivers.*

### 12.1.7 Character sets in text strings

The NorDig IRD **shall** support the character tables specified in Table 12.4. Respective character table in NorDig transmission is signalled by using bytes in the beginning of text field according to ETSI EN 300 468 Annex A.2 [13] and as reproduced for convenience in Table 12.4.

| Table description | Character code table | First byte | Second byte | Third byte |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Latin Alphabet | ISO/IEC 6937+ € (2) | N/A | N/A | N/A |
| Latin Alphabet No. 5 | ISO/IEC 8859-9 | 0x05 | N/A | N/A |
| Western Europe | ISO/IEC 8859-1 | 0x10 | 0x00 | 0x01 |
| North and North-East European | ISO/IEC 8859-(4) | 0x10 | 0x00 | 0x04 |
| Latin Alphabet No. 9 | ISO/IEC 8859-15 | 0x10 | 0x00 | 0x0F |

*Table 12.4 Character tables and signalling bytes in the beginning of text string.*

Note 1: The table above is relevant for text strings in SI and ESG.

Note 2: This table is referred in ETSI EN 300 468 as Figure A1: Character code table 00-Latin Alphabet. This table is ISO/IEC 6937 plus Euro-sign (€). This is the default character set to be used if no particular character set is given (ref ETSI EN 300 468, Annex A.2 [13]).

Note 3: The requirements for character table support can also be specified by the network/CA operator.

Note 4: Basic parts of the (Latin based) Nordic minority Sámi languages additional letters is covered by ISO/IEC 8859-4 character table (North and North-East European).

### 12.1.8 Country and Language Codes within PSI/SI

Preferably all (main) country codes in ISO 3166 and all Alpha-3 language codes in ISO 639-2 should be handled. Due to the quite large number of codes in these specifications, Table 12.5 and Table 12.6 specifies the minimum types of codes that **shall** be handled by the NorDig IRD including the recommended translations. NorDig IRDs intended only for a specific network, the operator(s)/regulator(s) in charge for specifying the functionality of the IRD for that network and ensuring that the minimum requirements are met, may exclude some of the mandatory country and language codes.

NorDig has defined the language code ‘nar’ as “narrative”, that may be used for supplementary audio streams (Audio Description etc).

| Country (in English) | ISO 3166 code | Translation to be used (to native) | Possible to select as user's preferred country |
|---|---|---|---|
| SWEDEN | SWE | Sverige | Mandatory |
| DENMARK | DNK | Danmark | Mandatory |
| IRELAND | IRL | Éire | Mandatory |
| FINLAND | FIN | Suomi | Mandatory |
| NORWAY | NOR | Norge | Mandatory |

*Table 12.5 ISO 3166, Country codes for NorDig IRDs*

| Language (in English) | ISO 639-2 | Translation to be used in DTT | Possible to select as user's preferred languages | Comments |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | Code | To native | | |
| Danish | dan | Dansk | mandatory | |
| English | eng | English | mandatory | |
| Finnish | fin | Suomi | mandatory | |
| Irish / Gaelic | iri | Gaeilge | mandatory | ISO 639-2 Bibliographic |
| Irish / Gaelic | gle | Gaeilge | mandatory | ISO 639-2 Terminological |
| Norwegian | nor | Norsk | mandatory | |
| Narrative | nar | | recommended (optional) | may be used for supplementary audio streams |
| Original language | qaa | Original (dan)<br>Original (eng)<br>Alkuperäinen (fin)<br>Bunaidh (gle)<br>Original (nor)<br>Original (swe) | recommended (optional) | See DVB SI spec ETSI 300 468 Annex F for "original audio" |
| Sami | smi | Sámegiella | mandatory | |
| Swedish | swe | Svenska | mandatory | |
| Undefined | und | Udefineret (dan)<br>Undefined (eng)<br>Määrittelemätön (fin)<br>Neamhshainithe (gle)<br>Undefined (nor)<br>Odefinierat (swe) | optional | treated same as original language (qaa) |

*Table 12.6 ISO 639-2 Language codes for NorDig IRDs*

### 12.1.9 NorDig common EPG/Event metadata exchange format (informative)

The NorDig EPG/Event Metadata Exchange format specification covers EPG / Event program information both for live and on demand content on all media platforms (broadcast TV, PC, mobile, Tablets, etc.) and various distribution networks (DTT, Sat, internet, etc.) and include rights managements.

The NorDig EPG/Event metadata exchange format is based on the TV-Anytime specification (hereafter TVA), latest version, with supports NorDig requirement including rights management and cross platform distribution for both Live TV and On demand.

The NorDig common EPG/Event metadata exchange format is meant for professional B2B (business-to-business) use for all stakeholders in the distribution chain.

For more information see "NorDig Metadata Exchange format specification ver. 1.3" at https://nordig.org/specifications/.

## 12.2 Network Information Table (NIT)

### 12.2.1 The Network Information Table Descriptors

| NIT descriptors | Cable IRD | Satellite IRD | Terrestrial IRD |
|---|---|---|---|
| Metadata_pointer_descriptor (3) | Optional | Optional | Optional |
| Network_name_descriptor | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Service_list_descriptor | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Satellite_delivery_system_descriptor | n/a | Mandatory | n/a |
| S2_satellite_delivery_system_descriptor | n/a | Mandatory | n/a |
| S2X_satellite_delivery_system_descriptor | n/a | Mandatory (4) | n/a |
| Cable_delivery_system_descriptor | Mandatory | n/a | n/a |
| Terrestrial_delivery_system_descriptor | n/a | n/a | Mandatory |
| T2_Terrestrial_delivery_system_descriptor (2) | n/a | n/a | Mandatory (2) |
| Linkage_descriptor | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Private_data_specifier_descriptor | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| Frequency_list_descriptor | Optional | Optional | Mandatory |
| default_authority_descriptor (3) | Mandatory (3) | Mandatory (3) | Mandatory (3) |
| (NorDig) logical_channel_descriptor (Version 1) | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |
| (NorDig) logical_channel_descriptor (Version 2) | Mandatory | Mandatory | Mandatory |

*Table 12.7 NIT descriptors*

Note 1: The NIT is not used with NorDig IRDs with IP-based front ends. Hence if NIT is transmitted, the NorDig IP IRDs **shall** ignore this table. Instead, the information provided by the NIT will be replaced by the Service Discovery and Selection mechanisms, specified in Section 13.4.

Note 2: Descriptor is signalled in the extension_descriptor.

Note 3: NorDig PVR only.

Note 4: only mandatory for satellite NorDig HEVC IRDs that support DVB-S2X.

### 12.2.2 Metadata Pointer Descriptor (NorDig PVR only, Broadcast Record Lists)

This metadata pointer descriptor (see syntax ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50] and additional description DVB/ETSI TS 102 323 [32]) is applicable for IRD supporting NorDig Broadcast record Lists.

For metadata pointer descriptor that is delivered in the NIT, refers that the metadata (NorDig Broadcast record Lists) is valid for the network *(ie original_network_id)*. Located in NIT first common descriptor loop metadata pointer descriptor.

The value of the fields in the metadata pointer descriptor will be set as following signifying the metadata contained conforms to the NorDig BRL:

| Metadata pointer descriptor fields | Value/description | *Remark* |
|---|---|---|
| metadata_application_format | 0x0100 | *NorDig uses TV Anytime and DVB standard value 0x0100, (while DTG uses value 0x0101)* |
| metadata_format | 0x3F | *the IRD **shall** use the metadata_application_format value to interpret the format of the carried metadata* |
| metadata_locator_record | 0b0 | |
| program_number | service_id | |
| transport_stream_location | original_network_id | |

*Table 12.8 NorDig BRL's Metadata pointer descriptor field usage*

#### 12.2.2.1 Metadata Descriptors Extension

The metadata descriptor extension is included in both the metadata pointer descriptor and metadata descriptor, according with DVB/ETSI TS 102 323 [32]. However, the metadata descriptors extension found in the metadata descriptor **shall** have priority in the NorDig IRD over the metadata descriptors extension found in the metadata pointer descriptor.

The value of the fields in the metadata descriptor will be set as following signifying the metadata contained conforms to the NorDig BRL:

| **Metadata pointer descriptor fields** | **Value** | ***Remark*** |
|---|---|---|
| DVB carriage format | 0x0 | *align with TS102 323, section 9.2 Delivery of Containers* |
| metadata service identifier flag | 0b0 | |

*Table 12.9 NorDig BRL's Metadata pointer descriptor field usage*

The fragment types list may appear in the broadcast. NorDig PVR support NorDig BRL **shall** operate correctly in the presence of them.

The metadata_service_identifier will be included and is used to identify the NorDig Broadcast Record List metadata service as profiled in DVB/ETSI TS 102 323 [32] clause 9.6.

The user_data_bytes in the metadata descriptor extension **shall** carry a default group authority structure as defined in 12.2.2.2 below.

#### 12.2.2.2 Default Group Authority Structure

The default group authority structure **shall** convey the authority for the default Record List group CRID.

| **Syntax** | **No. Of Bits** | **Identifier** |
|---|---|---|
| Default_group_authority_structure(){ | | |
| authority_string_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i-0;i<authority_string_length;i++){ | | |
| authority_byte | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| for (i-0;i<N;i++)[ | | |
| user_data_byte | 8 | bslbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

*Table 12.10* Default Group authority structure

**authority_string_length**: The number of authority_bytes in the authority_string.

**authority_byte:** This byte forms part of a string representing the default group authority.

### 12.2.3 Cable Delivery System Descriptor

See DVB SI specification [XX].
~~Reference to analogue services (PAL) may be used in NorDig digital (cable) networks. These services will be signalised in the SI as an own "transport stream". The cable_delivery_system_descriptor for these analogue services will contain the correct centre frequency for the (PAL) vision carrier, while the other delivery parameters will be set to zero (i.e. not defined; FEC Outer = 0, Modulation = 0 etc). The service_list_descriptor for this "transport stream" (analogue service) will list only one TV service, with service_type set according to Table 72 in EN 300 468[13] (0x07, PAL coded signal).~~

### 12.2.4 Terrestrial Delivery System Descriptor

NorDig IRDs should use the modulation parameters (see below) in the terrestrial_delivery_system_descriptor as a recommendation when trying to tune to a multiplex. The NorDig IRD should, however, always be able to detect the modulation from the transmission itself (e.g. assisted by TPS bits).

Operators can broadcast the same transport stream in the same network using different modulation parameter settings. This allows for optimization of the network coverage in frequency planning involving SFN and MFN combination networks.

The modulation parameters carried in the terrestrial_network_descriptor are recommended to be the one applicable to the majority of receivers in that network.

### 12.2.5 T2 Delivery System Descriptor

T2_delivery_system_descriptor is signaled in the extension_descriptor.

The NorDig IRD **shall** use the system parameters in the T2_delivery_system_descriptor to determine the mapping between original_network_id/network_id/transport_stream_id and T2_system_id/plp_id.

The NorDig IRD-T2 should use the other system parameters in the T2_delivery_system_descriptor as a recommendation when trying to tune to a multiplex. The NorDig IRD should, however, always be able to detect these system parameters from the transmission itself (i.e. assisted by L1 signalling).

Operators can broadcast the same transport stream in the same network using different system parameter settings, reflected in a different T2_system_id. This allows for optimization of the network coverage in frequency planning involving SFN and MFN combination networks.

### 12.2.6 Linkage Descriptor

The following linkage_type values **shall** be interpreted by a NorDig IRD, when used inside the NIT:

- 0x01, linkage to a service that contain information about the network
- 0x02, linkage to an EPG service (1)
- 0x04, linkage to transport stream which carries EIT schedule information for all of the services in the network (i.e. “barker channel” service).
- 0x09, linkage to DVB System Software Update service (bootloader), see section 10

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Not relevant for NorDig Basic IRD. |

### 12.2.7 Frequency List Descriptor

The Frequency List Descriptor lists frequencies where the transport stream occurs, in addition to the frequency given by the system delivery descriptor. (e.g., the transport stream is broadcast on the frequency given by the system delivery descriptor or broadcast on one of the frequencies given by the frequency list descriptor. This feature can be used in terrestrial networks where the same transport stream can be received on more than one frequency.)

### 12.2.8 Default authority descriptor (in NIT) (NorDig PVR only)

The Default Authority Descriptor (DAD), defined in DVB document Carriage and signalling of TV-Anytime (TVA) information ETSI TS 102 323 [32], may be used to shorten the CRIDs carried within EIT by defining an appropriate CRID default authority over a defined scope.

The DAD may be used in first loop of NIT to set a common Default Authority (DA) for all services within that Network. It may also be used in second loop (TS loop) to set a common Default Authority for all services within a Transport Stream.

The prefix “crid://” may be omitted from the start of the text string in the Default Authority in the NIT (both first or second loop). See separate section about CRID usage in section 12.4.6.

As described in ETSI TS 102 323 [32], where an event in the EIT does not have a complete URL within the Content Identifier Descriptor (CID) (i.e., a CRID starting with '/'), the NorDig PVR IRD **shall**:

- Use default authority (DA) defined for this service in the SDT.
- If no default authority is defined in the SDT, the PVR **shall** use the default authority in the second TS loop of the NIT for the actual transport stream this service belongs to.
- If no default authority is defined for the actual transport stream in second loop of NIT, the receiver **shall** use default authority in first loop in NIT for the network this service belongs too.

Example of handling of CRID together with Default authority values.

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Broadcast signalling** | | |
| **DAD,** Default Authority Descriptor | Default authority: | |
| in NIT, first loop | 'network.se' | |
| in NIT, second loop for TS1 | 'ts1.network.se' | (no other TS has default authority in NIT TS loop) |
| in SDT, service 1 of TS 1 | 'provider_A' | (no other services has default authority in SDT) |
| *Service 1 in TS 1,Service 2 in TS 1 and Service 3 in TS 2 have all events with above Event1 and Event2* | | |
| **CID,** Content Identifier descriptor | CRID in EIT for services: | |
| Event1 | '/abc/soap_event12345 | Example with non-complete CRID |
| Event2 | 'abc/soap_event6789' | Example with complete CRID |
| **Receiver CRID compilation** | | |
| | | **Interpretation within IRD of CID + DAD** |
| Service 1 belonging to TS 1 | Event 1 | crid://Provider_A/abc/soap_event12345 |
| Service 1 belonging to TS 1 | Event 2 | crid://abc/soap_event6789 |
| Service 2 belonging to TS 1 | Event 1 | crid://ts1.network.se/abc/soap_event12345 |
| Service 2 belonging to TS 1 | Event 2 | crid://abc/soap_event6789 |
| Service 3 belonging to TS 2 | Event 1 | crid://network.se/abc/soap_event12345 |
| Service 3 belonging to TS 2 | Event 2 | crid://abc/soap_event6789 |

*Table 12.11 Example of handling CRID together with default authority values*

### 12.2.9 NorDig private; Logical_Channel_descriptor (LCD)

#### 12.2.9.1 General

The logical channel descriptor is used in the second descriptor loop in the NIT, i.e. in each "TS loop" (1). Several LCDs may be listed in each TS loop.

Note 1: In one satellite network, the NorDig LCD might be carried in the SDT.

Data in this descriptor **shall** be treated as quasi-static and is used to order services in the IRD's default **service lists.** The descriptor enables an IRD to create a (first time) default order of the services in the IRD's service lists controlled by the operator, observe that this **shall** not affect the end-user defined lists in the IRD, if any.

Comment: *The wording 'Channel List' refers here to the transmission side and this LCD is used to transmit a Channel List, while the 'Service List' refers to the IRD's stored list of services. The IRD uses the transmitted LCD Channel List data amongst other SI data to create, update and sort services of its own default Service List).*

#### 12.2.9.2 NorDig Logical Channel Descriptor (version 1) syntax

Note: This older version of the NorDig Logical Channel Descriptor is in some NorDig Networks replaced by the newer version 2 below.

The syntax of the Logical Channel Descriptor (version 1) is shown in Table 12.12.

| Syntax | No. of bits | Identifier |
|---|---|---|
| logical_channel_descriptor(){ | | |
| descriptor_tag | 8 | uimsbf |
| descriptor_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i=0;i<number_of_services;i++){ | | |
| service_id | 16 | uimsbf |
| visible_service_flag | 1 | bslbf |
| reserved | 1 | bslbf |
| logical_channel_number | 14 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |

*Table 12.12 Logical_Channel_descriptor version 1 (LCD v1)*

**descriptor_tag:** This **shall** be assigned to be 0x83 (decimal 131).

**visible_service_flag:** This 1-bit field when set to '1 '/'true' indicates that the service is normally visible and selectable (subject to the service type being suitable etc.) via the NorDig IRD service list. When set to '0'/'false' this indicates that the IRD is not expected to offer the service to the user in normal navigation modes.

**reserved:** All "reserved" bits **shall** be set to '1'(observe, however, that the IRD **shall** be able to handle (neglect) future use of reserved bits).

**logical_channel_number:** this is a 14-bit field which indicates the broadcaster preference for ordering services. The logical channel numbers is intended to be assigned in combination with the service type category and **shall** be grouped into the three service type categories; TV, Radio and Others/data services as specified in section 12.1.5. Each broadcaster **shall**, as far as possible, allocate unique logical_channel_numbers within his original_network for each service type category (TV, Radio and Others). The logical_channel_number use is defined in Table 12.13.

| visible service flag | Logical channel number (decimal value) | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | Service not suitable for selection by the user. For example, the value zero may be used for data services only intended for selection from interactive applications or for firmware download services etc. |
| 0 | 1 – 16383 | Reserved for future use |
| 1 | 0 | Reserved for future use |
| 1 | 1 – 9999 | Service displayed in service list and ESG. Accessible via P+/- keys or from numeric keys (same value as decimal value of logical_channel_number) |
| 1 | > 9999 | Reserved for future use |

*Table 12.13 Logical_channel_number allocation (LCD v1)*

#### 12.2.9.3 NorDig private; Logical Channel Descriptor (version 2) syntax

The syntax of the Logical Channel Descriptor (version 2) is shown in Table 12.4.

| Syntax | No. of bits | Identifier |
|---|---|---|
| Logical_channel_descriptor(){ | | |
| descriptor_tag | 8 | uimsbf |
| descriptor_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i=0;i<N;i++){ | | |
| channel_list_id | 8 | uimsbf |
| channel_list_name_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i=0;i<N;i++) { | | |
| char | 8 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| country_code | 24 | uimsbf |
| descriptor_length | 8 | uimsbf |
| for (i=0;i<number_of_services;i++){ | | |
| service_id | 16 | uimsbf |
| visible_service_flag | 1 | bslbf |
| reserved_future_use | 5 | bslbf |
| logical_channel_number | 10 | uimsbf |
| } | | |
| } | | |
| } | | |

*Table 12.14 Logical_Channel_descriptor (version 2)*

**descriptor_tag:** This **shall** be assigned to be 0x87 (decimal 135).

**channel_list_id**: This is an 8-bit field which serves as a label to identify the channel list (uniquely allocated within each original_network_id). The user should be able to select a preferred channel list to be used, when several are available during the first-time installation (or complete re-installation).

**channel_list_name_length**: This 8-bit field specifies the number of bytes that follow the channel_list_name_length field for describing characters of the name of the Channel List. Maximal length is 23 bytes for the channel_list_name.

**char**: This is an 8-bit field. A string of character fields specifies the name of the channel list, the channel_list_name. (Maximal length is 23 bytes for the channel_list_name). Text information is coded using the character sets and methods described in ETSI EN 300 468 [13], annex A. The IRD is recommended to use the channel_list_name to present information on the OSD, for example when the user chooses a preferred channel list among several to create the IRD's service list(s).

**country_code:** This 24-bit field identifies a country using the 3-character code as specified in ISO 3166 [47]. Each character is coded into 8-bits according to ISO 8859-1 [48] and inserted in order into the 24-bit field. In the case that the 3 characters represent a number in the range 900 to 999, then country_code specifies an ETSI defined group of countries. These allocations are found in ETSI ETR 162 [21].

EXAMPLE: Sweden has 3-character code "SWE", which is coded as:

'0101 0011 0101 0111 0100 0101'.

The IRD may use this field (in combination with the IRD's user preference settings) to propose a channel list to be chosen as preferred when several are available.

**service_id:** A service_id that belongs to the TS (i.e. services from other TS **shall** not be listed). One service may only be listed once in each channel list but may belong to/be listed in more than one channel list.

**visible_service_flag:** This 1-bit field when set to '1'/'true' indicates that the service is normally visible and selectable (subject to the service type being suitable etc.) via the NorDig IRD's service list. When set to '0'/'false' this indicates that the IRD is not expected to offer the service to the user in normal navigation modes.

**Reserved:** All "reserved" bits **shall** be set to '1' (observe, however, that the IRD **shall** be able to handle (neglect) future use of reserved bits).

**logical_channel_number:** This is a 10-bit field which indicates the broadcaster preference for ordering services. The logical channel number is intended to be assigned in combination with the service type category and **shall** be grouped into three service type categories; TV, Radio and Others/data services as specified in section 12.1.5. Each broadcaster **shall**, as far as possible, allocate unique logical_channel_number within his original_network for each service type category (TV, Radio and Others). The logical_channel_number use is defined in Table 12..

| Visible service flag | Logic channel number (decimal value) | Description |
|---|---|---|
| 0 | 0 | Service not suitable for selection by the user. For example, the value zero may be used for data services only intended for selection from interactive applications or for firmware download services etc. |
| 0 | 1 – 1024 | Reserved for future use |
| 1 | 0 | Reserved for future use |
| 1 | 1 – 999 | Service displayed in service list and ESG. Accessible via P+/- keys or from numeric keys (same value as decimal value of logical_channel_number) |
| 1 | > 999 | Reserved for future use |

*Table 12.15 Logical_channel_number allocation*

#### 12.2.9.4 Handling of multiple Channel lists from same network (LCD v2 only)

The Logical Channel Descriptor version 2 enables transmission within same network of multiple Channel lists, meaning that there might it be several channel lists available for a IRD to choose between. The NorDig IRD may treat each channel list as complete with all intended services for that network (original network id) and it is up to the broadcaster to ensure that all intended services are included in all lists.

The NorDig IRD **shall** at least store the sorting from one of the available Channel lists as default, but it is recommended that the NorDig IRD store all the transmitted Channel Lists sorting that matches the IRD's country code settings (especially for IRDs that are not letting the user choose list during installation).

When several Channel Lists are available from same network (original network id) for the IRD during first time installation (or complete re-installation), the NorDig IRD **shall** choose the channel list as the default one with following priority:

1. The list with same country code as the IRD's user preference setting's country code. If several lists available with same matching country code, the IRD **shall** choose the one with lowest list_id value OR let the viewer choose from a list, (typically using the channel_list_name).
2. If no Channel list has a country code that matches the user preference setting's country code, the NorDig IRD **shall** let the viewer choose from a list (recommended) OR choose the one with lowest list_id value.

#### 12.2.9.5 Sorting of services inside a Channel list

All "visible" services **shall** be displayed in the service list(s), sorted according to logical_channel_number and be addressed with a number in the service list equal to the logical_channel_number, as far as possible. The IRD may have several default service lists (or sections inside one) for the different service_types, for example one for each service_type or typically three main categories; TV, Radio and Others ("Others" is not applicable for IRDs without API). If the NorDig IRD has several service lists, the addressing of each service in each list **shall** match, as much as possible the logical_channel_number value (if no collision within a list).

Services **shall** first be ordered depending on their original_network_id, secondly to their service category, thirdly to their logic_channel_number and last on their service_type (independently of several services have collision in the logic_channel_number or if they are listed or not in the logic_channel_descriptor).

~~I.e.~~ For example, if the NorDig IRD has a common service lists for all cathegories, it shall list first all services from one original network and within that original_network first all TV category services, after

that all Radio category services and last all Other category services. After that original network any next original network that the IRD is able to receive and so on.

Services listed in the logical_channel_descriptor, **shall** have higher priority when ordering the services in the default service list, than services that are not listed. With other words, broadcast services may not be listed in any logical_channel_descriptor and these **shall** be displayed and accessible in the default service list, but be located last in the service list, in order to their service_type.

#### 12.2.9.6 Conflict handling of Logical_channel_number

If several services are allocated to the same logical_channel_number, (within the same channel list, as may be the case if several terrestrial regions can be received at the same location), one service **shall** be ordered according to the logical_channel_number and the others **shall** be placed last in that list.

Empty spaces in the broadcast logical channel numbering **shall** then not be used; instead they **shall** be located last, after the service with highest logical channel number of that service_type. (The broadcaster may quite consciously choose to leave empty spaces in the logical channel numbering, for future services, etc, in order to avoid a complete rearrangement of the list).

Whenever two or more services within same category are allocated to the same logical_channel_number, the NorDig IRD **shall** set the priority of the services as stated in Table12.1 above (see chapter 12.1.4 for priority between different services within same service category).

How to choose which service within same service type and same service priority that should be placed according to the channel list is up to the IRD manufacturer.

#### 12.2.9.7 NorDig LCD simultaneous version 1 and version 2 transmissions

When broadcasting both LCD version 1 and version 2 within one Original Network ID, the NorDig IRD supporting both descriptors **shall** only sort according to the version 2 (i.e. NorDig LCD version 2 has higher priority).

#### 12.2.9.8 Reception of multiple (DTT) networks and NorDig LCD

*Comment: There are several areas within the Nordic region where DTT networks from the neighbouring countries can be received (for example southern part of Sweden, where Danish and German DTT can be received). Below follows a clarification to the use of the NorDig logical channel descriptor (LCD), regarding reception from multiple DTT networks*

The NorDig IRD with terrestrial front-end **shall** be able to install several (DTT) original networks (with different original network ids).

For multiple original networks (original network ids) the NorDig IRD **shall** first sort/list all services from one original network (original network id) according to that LCD, before sorting/listing the next original network. The first original network is the primary network and any additional received original networks are referred to as secondary network(s). This means that services from the primary network shall be listed according to its LCN, then services from additional secondary network(s) shall be listed by broadcast LCN after the last valid LCN of the primary network.

The user **shall** be able to set which original network that **shall** be the primary, either via the user preferences, e.g. matching country setting (preferred) or via user selectable list of available original networks or similar mechanism. In order to simplify this, the NorDig IRD should map/translate the original network id into the country name. This means that for IRD where the user has set the country setting, the primary network should automatic be the country matching the original network id (and its services **shall** be listed first in the NorDig IRD's service list).

(Automatic) updates within the NorDig IRD **shall** not change within the IRD's service list the relative order between the installed primary network and secondary network(s).

*For IRDs with terrestrial front-end, intended for the Nordic area it is recommended to include a translation list of all Northern Europe DTT original network ids. For original networks transmitting LCD version 2, the country code will be found directly within the descriptor without any mapping.*

*The primary DTT network* ***shall*** *be listed according to its LCD (version 2 or version 1), then additional (secondary) network(s)* ***shall*** *be listed, one-by-one, with its services after the primary network's last listed services (i.e. not use empty logical numbers within first network). This means that the services from the additional DTT network(s) will not be listed according to its LCN values. Important is to only include visible marked services from additional (secondary) networks and not any service that is marked as non-visible. It is recommended - if possible- to keep the relative order between the listed services within any secondary network(s).*

*If the IRD manufacture chose to have multiple service lists, (one for each original network id or similar), then the primary network* ***shall*** *be the IRD's default service list after the installation.*

*Note: Within DVB's SI code allocation (ETR162), there is normally an un-written code of practise for digital terrestrial networks that the original network id has been allocated by the DVB office to the value of 0x2000 plus the country's ISO 3166 Country code value. This is true for almost all countries, but not for e.g. the Swedish DTT, which has original network id value (0x22F1).*

#### 12.2.9.9 Guidelines of number of services to be handled (Informative)

It is recommended that NorDig IRD with terrestrial front-end are able to handle up to 400 services identities during installation mode and 200 services. It is recommended that NorDig IRD with satellite, cable and IP front-end are able to handle up to 600 services identities during installation mode and 400 services afterwards. (More services are recommended during installation mode due to the possibilities to receive from several transmitter sites and use of multiple Channel lists).

#### 12.2.9.10 Examples of Logical Channel descriptor

*Example of Logical_Channel_descriptor (LCD) (version 1)*

The examples in Table 12.16 and 12.17 below illustrates how broadcasted services **shall** be ordered in the IRD's service lists according to (a terrestrial) broadcast.

| ONID | TSID | SID | NID | VSF | LCN | Service type | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 100 | 10 | 100 | 101 | 1 | 10 | 0x01 (TV) | SD service with linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 140 |
| **200** | 10 | 100 | 200 | 1 | 10 | 0x01 (TV) | other network provider |
| 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 | 1 | 11 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 | - | - | 0x01 (TV) | no logical_channel_descr attached to this service |
| 100 | 20 | 120 | 101 | 1 | 23 | 0x01 (TV) | same service but with lower reception quality than NID 102 below |
| 100 | 20 | 120 | 102 | 1 | 23 | 0x01 (TV) | same service from an other transmitter point with better reception quality than NID 101 |
| 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 | 1 | 23 | **0x02** (Radio) | Radio service |
| 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 | 1 | 25 | **0x0A** (Radio) | Radio service (adv codec) |
| 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 | 1 | 24 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 | 1 | 10 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service (takes LCN 10 as simulcast of 100 10 100) |
| 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 | 1 | 11 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service (no simulcast, only prio to LCN 11 due to its service_type) |
| 100 | 30 | 160 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service with linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 170 |
| 100 | 30 | 170 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x1F (UHDTV) | UHD service (takes LCN 12 as simulcast of 100 30 160) |
| 100 | 10 | 500 | 101 | 0 | 0 | 0x0C (Data) | e.g., SSU/Bootloader or EPG service |

*Table 12.16 Example of broadcast of SI and services (LCD v1). The abbreviations are defined as: S_ID; service_id, ON_ID; original_network_id; TS_ID; transport_stream_id, NID; network_id, VSF; visible_service_flag, LCN; logical_channel_number.*

Table 12.17 exemplifies how services **shall** be sorted and listed in the IRD's service list (from broadcast example above) in a NorDig IRD with at least two service lists, one for TV and one for Radio services. Displayed for the viewer in each service list, will typically be the number (LCN) and the service_name.

**NorDig IRD, service list installation example (IRD with separate lists for TV and radio)**

| TV service list | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** |
| 10 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 |
| 11 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 |
| 12 | 100 | 30 | 170 (1) | 101 |
| 23 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 102 |
| 24 | 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 |
| 25 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 |
| 26 | 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 |
| 27 | 200 | 10 | 100 | 200 |

| Radio service list | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** |
| 23 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 |
| 25 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 |

Note 1: NorDig HEVC IRDs will store SID 170, all other IRDs will store SID 160.

*Table 12.17 NorDig IRD service list example using LCD v1.*

**NorDig IRD with a common service list for TV and Radio**

| Service list | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** |
| 10 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 |
| 11 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 |
| 12 | 100 | 30 | 170 (1) | 101 |
| 23 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 102 |
| 24 | 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 |
| 25 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 |
| 26 | 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 |
| 27 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 |
| 28 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 |
| 29 | 200 | 10 | 100 | 200 |

Note 1: NorDig HEVC IRDs will store SID 170, all other IRDs will store SID 160.

*Table 12.18 NorDig IRD with a common service list example using LCD v1.*

The service [ONID, TSID, SID] = 100, 20, 120 is listed only once (even though that service is transmitted twice). This because the IRD in this example above has a stronger and a better reception (quality) of the TS where service [ONID, TSID, SID, NID] = 100, 20, 120, 102 belongs to, than for the TS where the service [ONID, TSID, SID, NID] = 100, 20, 120, 101 belongs to.

*Example of Logical_Channel_descriptor (LCD) (version 2)*

Table 12.19 below illustrates how broadcast services **shall** be ordered in the NorDig IRD's service lists, by use of LCD Version 2; with an example from a terrestrial broadcast.

| CLID | ONID | TSID | SID | NID | VSF | LCN | Service type | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| 1 | 100 | 10 | 100 | 101 | 1 | 10 | 0x01 (TV) | SD service with linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 140 |
| 1 | **200** | 10 | 100 | 200 | 1 | 10 | 0x01 (TV) | other network provider and other combination channel_list_id, ONID |
| 1 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 | 1 | 11 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| - | 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 | - | - | 0x01 (TV) | no logical_channel_descr attached to this service |
| 1 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 101 | 1 | 23 | 0x01 (TV) | same service but with lower reception quality than NID 102 below |
| 1 | 100 | 20 | 120 | **102** | 1 | 23 | 0x01 (TV) | same service from an other transmitter point with better reception quality than NID 101 |
| 1 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 | 1 | 23 | **0x02** (Radio) | Radio service |
| 1 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 | 1 | 25 | **0x0A** (Radio) | Radio service (adv codec) |
| 1 | 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 | 1 | 24 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| 1 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 | 1 | 10 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service (takes LCN 10 as simulcast of 100 10 100) |
| 1 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 | 1 | 11 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service (no simulcast, only prio to LCN 11 due to its service_type) |
| 1 | 100 | 30 | 160 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service with linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 170 |
| 1 | 100 | 30 | 170 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x1F (UHDTV) | UHD service (takes LCN 12 as simulcast of 100 30 160) |
| 1 | 100 | 10 | 500 | 101 | 0 | 0 | 0x0C (Data) | e.g. SSU/Bootloader or EPG service |
| 2 | 100 | 10 | 100 | 101 | 1 | 20 | 0x01 (TV) | SD service that in SDT incl Linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 140 |
| 2 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 | 1 | 6 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| 2 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 101 | 1 | 5 | 0x01 (TV) | |
| 2 | 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 | 0 | 0 | 0x01 (TV) | Service not intended to be listed in CLID 2 |
| 2 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 | 1 | 20 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD Simulcast service |
| 2 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 | 1 | 6 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service (no simulcast, only prio to LCN 6 due to its service_type) |
| 2 | 100 | 30 | 160 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x19 (HDTV) | HD service with linkage to NorDig Simulcast replacement service at SID 170 |
| 2 | 100 | 30 | 170 | 101 | 1 | 12 | 0x1F (UHDTV) | UHD service (takes LCN 12 as simulcast of 100 30 160) |
| 2 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 | 1 | 13 | **0x02** (Radio) | Radio service |
| 2 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 | 1 | 12 | **0x0A** (Radio) | Radio service (adv codec) |
| 2 | 100 | 10 | 500 | 101 | 0 | 0 | 0x0C (Data) | e.g. SSU/Bootloader or EPG service |

*Table 12.19 Example of broadcast of SI and services, LCN Version 2. The abbreviations are defined as: CL_ID; Channel_list_id, ON_ID; original_network_id; TS_ID; transport_stream_id, NID; network_id, S_ID; service_ID, VSF; visible_service_flag, LCN; logical_channel_number.*

Table 12.20 exemplifies how services **shall** be sorted and listed in the IRD's service list (from broadcast example above) in a NorDig IRD with at least two service_lists, one for TV and one for Radio services and here with the channel list CLID 1 (country code match) and ONID 100 as the chosen preferred channel list. Displayed for the viewer in each service list, will typically be the number (LCN) and the service_name.

**NorDig IRD, service list when selected CLID 1**

| TV service list | | | | | Radio service list | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** | **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** |
| 10 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 | 23 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 |
| 11 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 | 25 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 |
| 12 | 100 | 30 | 170 (1) | 101 | | | | | |
| 23 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 102 | | | | | |
| 24 | 100 | 20 | 130 | 101 | | | | | |
| 25 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 | | | | | |
| 26 | 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 | | | | | |
| 27 | 200 | 10 | 100 | 200 | | | | | |

**NorDig IRD, service list when selected CLID 2**

| TV service list | | | | | Radio service list | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** | **Number** | **ONID** | **TSID** | **SID** | **NID** |
| 5 | 100 | 20 | 120 | 101 | 12 | 100 | 20 | 210 | 101 |
| 6 | 100 | 30 | 150 | 101 | 13 | 100 | 20 | 200 | 101 |
| 12 | 100 | 30 | 170 (1) | 101 | | | | | |
| 20 | 100 | 30 | 140 | 101 | | | | | |
| 21 | 100 | 10 | 110 | 101 | | | | | |
| 22 | 100 | 10 | 90 | 101 | | | | | |
| 23 | 200 | 10 | 100 | 200 | | | | | |
| Note 1: NorDig HEVC IRDs will store SID 170, all other IRDs will store SID 160. | | | | | | | | | |

*Table 12.20 NorDig IRD service list example using LCD v2.*

The service [ONID, TSID, SID] = 100, 20, 120 is listed only once (even though that service is transmitted twice). This due to that the IRD in this example above has a stronger and a better reception (quality) of the TS where service [ONID, TSID, SID, NID] = 100, 20, 120, 102 belongs to, than for the TS where the service [ONID, TSID, SID, NID] = 100, 20, 120, 101 belongs to.

## *12.3 Service Description Table (SDT)*

### 12.3.1 The Service Descriptor Table Descriptors

| SDT descriptors |
|---|
| metadata_pointer_descriptor (1) |
| service_descriptor |
| CA_identifier_descriptor |
| component_descriptor |
| linkage_descriptor |
| service_identifier_descriptor |
| default_authority_descriptor (1) |
| CI_protection _descriptor (2) |
| message descriptor |

*Table 12.21 SDT descriptors*

Note : NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-end: SDT is only used for actual transport stream (table_id = 0x42).

Note 1: Mandatory for NorDig PVR IRD.

Note 2: Mandatory for NorDig IRDs that support use of CIP-CAMs, see section 9.2

#### 12.3.1.1 Metadata Pointer Descriptor (NorDig PVR only, Broadcast Record Lists)

This metadata pointer descriptor is applicable for IRD supporting NorDig Broadcast Record Lists.

For metadata pointer descriptor that is delivered in the SDT, refers that the metadata (NorDig Broadcast Record Lists) is valid for that service(s) and will be placed in the descriptor loop of all services for which this metadata service is relevant.

For the rest see NorDig chapter 12.2.2 (including the metadata pointer extension).

### 12.3.2 Service Descriptor

The service_type (under the service_descriptor) value 0x81 is reserved for the NorDig legacy bootloader use (see section 12.2.9.2).

### 12.3.3 CA Identifier Descriptor

This descriptor may be present in the SDT when at least one service component is scrambled. The CA_system_id is allocated by ETSI and is given by ETSI ETR 162 [21]. The descriptor may be used statically (recommended). It will in that case be set according to the services regular/normal scrambling status. Alternatively, it may be used dynamically, in accordance with the current services scrambling status.

This static use enables IRDs to “grey mark” services that cannot be descrambled due to lack of the required CA-system for the relevant service(s). It allows the IRD to display services that are only temporary (event based) scrambled.

### 12.3.4 Linkage Descriptor

The following linkage_type value **shall** be interpreted by a NorDig IRD when used inside the SDT:

- 0x05, linkage to a service replacement service. When present, the NorDig IRD should automatically switch to the replacement service if the ‘running_status’ is set to “1” (not running) and if the NorDig IRD are able to receive the SDT containing the original service during the replacement, also switch back when ‘running_status” is set to “4” (running).
- 0x82, NorDig Simulcast replacement service, linkage from one TV based service to another TV replacement service with the same content, typical usage it to hide/not include the “old” version of the service and only list the “new” version in the IRD’s service list. For example, it may be used during simulcasting of a service in both an (MPEG2/H.262) SDTV and an (AVC/H.264) HDTV version on separate service ids with same content within the same original network id, or during simulcasting an (AVC/H.264) HDTV and an (HEVC/H.265) UHDTV version with the same content. The linkage will be included in the SDT for the “old” TV service that is intended to be replaced (hidden) and pointing to the “new” replacement service. Whenever it is used, it will be used quasi-static.
- For NorDig IRDs that are able to receive both the “old” TV service that is intended to be replaced (hidden) and the “new” replacement service, they **shall** only include the “new” replacement TV version/(service) of the two services within its TV service list. The “old” TV service that is intended to be replaced (hidden) may be omitted or hidden at the end of the list, dependant of IRD implementation. The method **shall** be service type independent.
- Clarification: If no ‘NorDig Simulcast replacement service’ linkage is included, both services **shall** be included. If only the “old” TV service that is intended to be replaced (hidden) is possible to receive and decode and not the new replacing service (due to e.g. reception problems or codec/service type limitations), then then NorDig IRD **shall** include and display the “old” TV service that is intended to be replaced in the service list even if it carries this linkage ‘NorDig simulcast replacement service’.

### 12.3.5 Default authority descriptor (in SDT) (NorDig PVR only)

The default authority descriptor, defined in DVB document Carriage and signalling of TV-Anytime (TVA) information ETSI TS 102 323 [32], may be used to shorten the CRIDs carried within EIT by defining an appropriate CRID authority over a defined scope.

The DAD may be used in the descriptor loop of each service in the SDT to set a Default Authority for all events in that service which do not have a complete URL (see example in chapter 12.2.8 Default authority descriptor in NIT.

The prefix "crid://" may be omitted from the start of the text string in the Default Authority in the SDT (normally the "crid://" will be omitted within the transmission). See separate chapter for CRID usage in section 12.4.6.

### 12.3.6 Component Descriptor

Zero or several Component descriptor(s) may be present in the SDT (according to DVB SI specification, ETSI EN 300 468 [13]), used in combination with the service_type in the Service descriptor to specify sub-type of service, especially used for HEVC based TV services. It signalises the decoding complexity of the components for the service and Services that are not supported by the NorDig IRD should not be visible in the service list.

If no Component descriptor is included in SDT for a HEVC service, the NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** interpret a HEVC service with service_type 0x1F as an UHD SFR compantible SDR service and a HEVC service with service_type 0x20 as an UHD SFR compatible PQ10 HDR service.

| **Component description in SDT** | **Values {stream_content, stream_content_ext, component_type}** | **Used in** service types | **in SDT** | **Component category** |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| HEVC/H.265 Main Profile 1080p HD video, 50 Hz | 0x9,0x0,0x00 | 0x1F | mb Mr (1) | Video |
| HEVC/H.265 Main 10 Profile 1080p HD video, 50 Hz | 0x9,0x0,0x01 | 0x1F | mb Mr (1) | Video |
| HEVC/H.265 UHD 2160p video, 50Hz compatible | 0x9,0x0,0x04 | 0x1F | mb Mr (1) | Video |
| HEVC/H.265 UHD 2160p video with PQ10 HDR | 0x9,0x0,0x05 | 0x20 | mb Mr (1) | Video |
| HLG10 HDR | 0xB,0xF,0x04 | 0x1F | Ob Mr (1) | Video |
| HEVC temporal video subset for a frame rate of 100 Hz (dual PID backward compatible HFR) | 0xB,0xF,0x05 | 0x1F, 0x20 | Ob Mr (1, 2) | Video |
| HEVC/H.265 UHD 2160p video with PQ10 HDR with SMPTE ST 2094-10 SEI messages (DMI for HDR dynamic mapping) | 0xB,0xF,0x06 | 0x20 | Ob Or | Video |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| HEVC/H.265 UHD 2160p video with PQ10 HDR with SL-HDR2 SEI messages (DMI for HDR dynamic mapping) | 0xB,0xF,0x07 | 0x20 | Ob Or | Video |
| HEVC/H.265 UHD 2160p video with PQ10 HDR with SMPTE ST 2094-40 SEI messages (DMI for HDR dynamic mapping) | 0xB,0xF,0x08 | 0x20 | Ob Or | Video |
| *Others* | | others | Ob Or | |
| Mb Mandatory to Broadcast, always/all time<br>mb Mandatory to Broadcast if applicable, i.e. if certain criteria is met (e.g. if scrambling is used)<br>Ob Optional to broadcast, but recommended (if applicable)<br>Mr Mandatory to receive and interpret if broadcast<br>Or Optional to receive and interpret (if broadcasted)<br><br>Note 1: Mandatory for NorDig HEVC IRDs, optional IRDs not supporting HEVC.<br>Note 2: According with section 5.3 the NorDig HEVC IRD shall be able to receive and decode the first video PID as SFR (50Hz) for a dual PID 100Hz HFR video service. | | | | |

*Table 12.14 Component description in SDT*

Note 1: There is a significant and increasing legacy of IRDs which can fully support HEVC video but may not fully support TTML subtitles.
These IRDs which meet DVB specifications, will consequently display any HEVC services which the video decoder can support in the service list even if the Audio and Subtitle capabilities are not met.
It is expected that IRDs will inform consumers when there is no audio/subtitle service available, it is strongly recommended that when delivering HEVC services NorDig broadcasters simulcast/carry the legacy audio and subtitle services matching those delivered on NorDig HD services (i.e.MPEG-4 HE-AAC and DVB Subtitles respectively) to ensure maximum uptake of any new HEVC services.

### 12.3.7 Message Descriptor

Zero, one or several message descriptor(s) may be present in the SDT (according to the DVB SI specification, ETSI EN 300 468 [13]). Used in combination with the audio_preselection_descriptor in the Program Map Table (PMT), the message_descriptor specifies a textual description for the associated preselection. This is especially used for Next-generation audio (NGA) services.

An NGA preselection is described by the text string carried in text_char of a message_descriptor when the message_id values of both the message_descriptor and the preselection within the audio_preselection_descriptor match.

Textual messages may be provided in several languages by using multiple message descriptors with same message_id, but different ISO_639_language_code values. When multiple languages are available, the IRD should present the text string from the message_descriptor with an ISO_639_language_code value matching the user's menu language preference.

Note: The message_descriptor may be used for other purposes beyond NGA preselection as well.

## 12.4 Event Information Table

### 12.4.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** support EIT present/following (p/f) for both actual and other tables (1).

The NorDig IRD **shall** support EIT schedule (sch) for both actual and other tables (1) up to at least 8 days of schedules.

Note 1: DVB SI 'Other' tables are optional/not applicable for NorDig IRDs with IP-based Front-end.

### 12.4.2 The Event Information Table Descriptors

| Event descriptors | EIT p/f | EIT sch |
|---|---|---|
| Short_event_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Extended_event_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Component_descriptor | M | O |
| Content_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Parental_rating_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| CA_identifier_descriptor (optional) | O | O |
| Content_identifier_descriptor | M (2) | M (2) |

*Table 12.23 EIT descriptors*

Note 1: EIT schedule is recommended (optional) for NorDig IRDs with IP-based Front-end

Note 2: NorDig PVR only.

### 12.4.3 CA Identifier Descriptor

This descriptor is optional; however, it may be present in the EIT whenever at least one service component is scrambled. The CA_system_id is allocated by ETSI and is given by ETSI ETR 162 [21]. When used, it will be used dynamically, i.e. following the services scrambling status, mainly targeting the ESG/EPG applications.

### 12.4.4 Content Descriptor

The NorDig IRD should handle all content nibbles listed in the DVB SI specification (ETSI EN 300 468 [13]), but **shall** at least be able to handle all content nibble level 1 classes. If there is no content coding in conformance with table present for an event, the default content description "unclassified" **shall** be assumed by the receiver.

### 12.4.5 Content Identifier Descriptor (NorDig PVR only)

The Content Identifier Descriptor (CID), defined in DVB document Carriage and signalling of TV-Anytime (TVA) information ETSI TS 102 323 [32], section 12.1, is used to associate a CRID to an event and is placed within the event loop of EIT. One or more instances of the descriptor may be present in the EIT (schedule and p/f) and a single descriptor may contain multiple CRIDs. Usage **shall** be consistent between EIT schedule actual and other within a Network. If a Content Identifier Descriptor is present in EITp/f, a NorDig PVR should use this in preference to the Content Identifier Descriptor for the same event in EIT schedule.

NorDig uses TV Anytime standard values for the crid_type, which are:

- 0x01, TVA programme CRID
- 0x02, TVA series CRID
- 0x03, TVA recommendation CRID

Only a single TVA programme CRID (crid_type 0x01) **shall** be associated with an EIT event.

The Content Identifier Table is not used in NorDig networks, (i.e. only crid_location == '00' is used).

All events having the same programme CRID (type 0x01), regardless of IMI (see ETSI TS 102 822-4 [34], Section 10), refer to the same programme content.

All events having the same series CRID (type 0x02) belong to the same series. An event may be associated with more than one series CRID. A CRID value may be reused after 91 days for other content.

### 12.4.6 CRID encoding and reuse (NorDig PVR only)

The CRID **shall** be according to ETSI TS 102 822-4 [34], Section 8. The use of abbreviated CRIDs **shall** follow the rules set out in ETSI TS 102 323 [32] Section 6.3.1.

The NorDig PVR **shall** support CRIDs that is encoded according to the following rules:

- The CRID is further restricted to only contain characters encoded over the range from ISO 6937 0x20 to 0x7F.

The length of the CRID plus IMI (if any) **shall** not exceed 64 characters as a combined total for the crid's authority, data and instance metadata identifier (including the separator '#').

The CRIDs are not intended to be human readable and **shall** not be displayed on-screen. The CRID is simply an identifier.

The authority part of a CRID **shall** be a registered internet domain name and therefore globally unique. The data part of a CRID is only unique within the scope of the associated CRID authority. An IMI is only unique within the scope of the complete CRID.

Broadcasters **shall** endeavour to use the same CRID whenever a programme is repeated. However, this cannot be guaranteed. A repeat of any content by a different service provider may result in a different CRID being assigned.

CRIDs and IMIs may be reused to refer to different programme concepts with the following restrictions:

**Series CRIDs shall** not be re-used for 91 days after the scheduled end-time of the last event that referenced this CRID.

**Programme CRIDs shall** "never" be reused for different programme content, (i.e. Broadcasters **shall** do their outmost to keep the CRID unique for all time).

**IMI shall** not be reused for a different instance of the same CRID within 3 hours of the scheduled end time (start_time plus duration). Two events greater than or equal to 3 hours apart but with the same CRID & IMI **shall** not be considered to be split parts of the same instance.

#### 12.4.6.1 CRID type 0x01 – programme CRID (NorDig PVR only)

Programme CRIDs are used to identify two or more EIT events as being the same programme. This prevents duplicate programmes being recorded from within the same series and also allows alternative programme instances to be recorded (or offered for recording) if a booking clash occurs.

It is not necessary for all EIT events to have a programme CRID. An event may only include a maximum of one programme CRID. In the current context they are only useful where alternative instances or split programmes are being identified.

#### 12.4.6.2 CRID type 0x02 – series CRID (NorDig PVR only)

Where a series CRID is conveyed in a CID according to the signalling outlined, it is to be used to only refer to an editorial concept of a series.

An event may be associated with more than one series, i.e. an event may include several series CRIDs. Where an event is associated with more than one series, an invitation to record 'programmes in the same

series as this event' would book to record all events in all series associated with the selected event (see more section 14.3.3).

#### 12.4.6.3 CRID type 0x03 – recommendation CRID (NorDig PVR only)

This identifies a looser linkage to another programme or series. A recommendation may point to a single event (programme CRID) or a series (series CRID).

A CRID in the CID **shall** be marked as crid type 0x03 (recommendation) and be a programme or series CRID.

It is not required that the recommendation CRID be present in the current scope of EIT. If the event referenced by the recommendation CRID is not present in the current scope of EIT, the recommendation may be presented to the user when it appears in EIT. If a recommendation CRID does not appear in EIT within 91 days of the referencing event, it **shall** be discarded.

A recommendation may reference an event earlier in the EIT schedule than the linked-from event, e.g. to link to a preview programme.

#### 12.4.6.4 Split programme (split content) (NorDig PVR only)

A programme may consist of multiple EIT events within the same service or over several services. For example, a film might be divided into two parts (blocks) interrupted by a news programme in the middle or a longer sport event might be split into several parts over several services.

To be able to signal a split content programme the events **shall** include a CRID in the Content Identifier Descriptor (CID) that includes a programme CRID (crid type 0x01) with an Instance Metadata Identifier (IMI) extension. A "split programme" is defined as several events which have the same programme CRID and IMI value and the gap between each event is less than 3 hours (measured from the end of the preceding event to the start of the next event). Such events **shall** be considered to be segments of a single item of content. An item of content may be split across more than two events as long as the gap between each event remains less than 3 hours.

Where a broadcaster changes a single programme into a split programme (using IMIs) the broadcaster should ensure that one of the events of the new split programme maintains the event_id of the original single event. Failure to do this will result in lost or incomplete recordings.

### 12.4.7 Event Information Table Schedule

Upon user request for EIT schedule information, the IRD **shall** (1) look for the reference using linkage descriptor mechanism in the NIT and perform a frequency re-tuning if necessary. Linkage_type 0x04 ("Transport Stream containing complete network/bouquet SI") **shall** be used to refer to EIT schedule information.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Recommended for NorDig Basic IRD. |

## *12.5 Time and Date Table and Time Offset Table*

The NorDig IRD **shall** have a real-time clock and time/date (calendar) running continuously. The time/date (calendar) **shall** be updated by incoming TDT and TOT from SI. NorDig IRD **shall** display the correct time for each country based on TDT, TOT, and the country name selected by the user.

NorDig IRDs with an IP-based front-end **shall** be able to establish real time and date (calendar) by any of the following methods:

1. Updates by incoming TDT and TOT from the SI.
2. Retrieval from the IP-network, based on RFC 1305 (Network Time Protocol (Version 3)). The address of the NTP server **shall** be retrieved from the Network Time Server DHCP option (42).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | This protocol may be used for Network time services for the transport stream with accuracy better than 50 ms. |

3. Retrieval from the IP-network, based on RFC 2030 (Simple Network Time Protocol (SNTP) Version 4 for IPv4, IPv6 and OSI). The address of the SNTP server **shall** be retrieved from the Time Server DHCP option (3).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | This protocol may be used for Network time services for applications with an accuracy of 100 ms. |

The NorDig IP IRD **shall** prefer the TDT/TOT, followed by the NTP protocol, in case no TDT/TOT is available in the stream. In case neither TDT/TOT nor a NTP server is available, the IRD **shall** retrieve time and date from the SNTP server.

In order to support offset from UTC time when using NTP or SNTP servers, the IRD **shall** support the DHCP Time Offset option (option number 2), specified in RFC 2132, IETF RFC 2132 [45].

The NorDig IRD should have an internal timer for the possibility to automatically switch from stand-by mode to the operational mode. This timer **shall** (1) be initiated locally (accepted by the end user).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note 1: | During this kind of start up or during any pre-programmed zapping, it is advisable that the NorDig IRD does not try to start anything that requires user acknowledgement or similar, for example updating of service list data or bootloader software. |

### 12.5.1 Time Offset Table Descriptor

| Time Offset Table |
|---|
| local_time_offset_descriptor |

*Table 12.24 TOT descriptors*

## *12.6 Conditional Access and Program Map Tables*

### 12.6.1 Conditional Access Table Descriptors

| Conditional Access Table |
|---|
| CA_descriptor |

*Table 12.25 CAT descriptors*

### 12.6.2 Program Map Table Descriptors

| Program map Table |
|---|
| metadata_descriptor (3) |
| teletext_descriptor |
| Subtitling_descriptor |
| stream_identifier_descriptor |
| video_stream_descriptor |
| CA_descriptor |
| ISO_639_language_descriptor |
| AC-3_descriptor |
| Enhanced_AC-3_descriptor |
| AC-4_descriptor (4) |
| AAC_descriptor |

| |
|---|
| Supplementary_audio_descriptor |
| audio_preselection_descriptor (5) |
| Private_data_specifier_descriptor |
| data_broadcast_id_descriptor (1) |
| application_signalling_descriptor (2) |
| carousel_id_descriptor (1) |
| related_content_descriptor (3) |
| TTML_subtitling_descriptor (4) |

*Table 12.26 PMT descriptors*

Note 1: Use of the data_broadcast_id_descriptor and the carousel_identifier_descriptor for signalling relevant for the SSU is specified in ref ETSI TS 102 006 [28], see also section 12.7.

Note 2: Only mandatory for the NorDig HbbTV IRDs

Note 3: Only mandatory for NorDig PVR IRDs.

Note 4: Only mandatory for NorDig HEVC IRDs.

Note 5: The processing of audio_preselection_descriptor is highly recommended in the NGA capable Nordig HEVC IRD, and should be supported in new IRDs. It is expected that audio_preselection_descriptor processing, especially languages, will become mandatory in future versions of this specification.

### 12.6.3 Component priority multiple video or audio streams

Component priority when multiple video or audio streams are received

The following applies for services that transmit in parallel more than one type of video/audio stream under the same service_id (e.g. simulcasting within the same service):

For video decoding, NorDig IRDs **shall** select the service's video component, and set the default setting in accordance with the priority list in Table 12..

| Video codec | Stream_type | Priority |
|---|---|---|
| HEVC/H.265 up to UHD HDR SFR video stream (incl first PID in dual PID HFR) (1) | 0x24 | 1 (highest) |
| AVC/H264 HP@L4 / L3 HD or SD video stream | 0x1B | 2 |
| MPEG-2/H264 MP@ML video stream (or MPEG1) | 0x02 (0x01) | 3 (lowest) |

*Table 12.27 Default priority order for the IRD between different video streams*

For Audio decoding, NorDig IRDs **shall** prioritise the service´s components according to chapter 6.5, Audio prioritisation.

NorDig IRDs **shall** ignore advanced audio streams when it does not support decoding those streams. For example, an IRD that do not include any AC-3 (downmix) decoder, (maybe only supports pass-through of AC-3 to the digital audio output), **shall** not choose the AC-3 audio stream as default. Instead it **shall** choose among the IRDs supported audio stream types according to chapter 6.5, Audio Prioritisation.

When several audio streams of the same type are received, the primary stream **shall** be selected in accordance with the definitions in section 6.5 (Audio ).

Note 1: Only mandatory for the NorDig HEVC IRD.

### 12.6.4 ISO 639 language descriptor

The NorDig IRD **shall** use the ISO 639 descriptor to select the preferred audio stream according to user preference settings, see section 6.5 Audio Prioritisation. Observe that other audio descriptors have priority compared to this as stated in section 6.5.6. The descriptor will at least be used when a service contains more than one audio stream of same codec. (Used for all NorDig audio codecs streams, ie MPEG-1 Layer II, HE-AAC, AC-3,E-AC-3 and NGA/AC-4 audio streams).

The NorDig IRD **shall** (for non-NGA streams) use the field 'audio type' to select the preferred audio stream. The NorDig IRD **shall** minimum support audio types: 0x00 'undefined' (referred here to as "normal") and 0x03 'visual impaired' (note 1) audio (It is assumed that an NGA stream/PID carries all audio types for each language for the service, for example Normal audio, AD audio and Spoken subtitling are carried within the same NGA stream/PID, therefore the audio type in ISO 639 descriptor is normally set to 0x00 'undefined' even though the NGA stream carries Supplementary audio. NorDig HEVC IRD (according with 6.5.4.2) **shall** ignore audio type value for all NGA audio streams /PIDs during audio stream/PID selection).

To avoid issues in legacy IRDs, language code 'nar' may be used for some supplementary audio streams (audio description etc), ('nar' is a non-allocated code in ISO 639 Part 2, intended here to represent "narrative"). Some networks may even use European language that is not used in that country, e.g. in Finland the language Dutch may be used for the supplementary audio streams in some networks. Due to legacy IRDs, audio type 0x00 'undefined' may be used for some Supplementary Audio streams. See section 6.11 for further information about Supplementary Audio.

An NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD not supporting the audio_preselection_descriptor shall support use of the ISO 639 descriptor for identifying the language of the NGA audio stream/PID. (Informative, Operators and Broadcaster are highly recommended to transmit ISO 639 descriptor also for NGA PIDs/streams to serve early NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs not supporting audio_preselection_ descriptor).

The NorDig IRD **shall** minimum support language codes as stated in section 12.1.8.

### 12.6.5 AC-3 descriptor

The NorDig IRD supporting AC-3 **shall** use the AC-3 descriptor ('Number of channels flags' value) when selecting appropriate audio format (stereo or multichannel), when several audio streams is available for the service, as described in section 6.5.4 Signalling to be used for audio property.

For AC-3 audio streams with no supplementary audio descriptor but the 'service type flags' set to Visually Impaired (VI) in the AC-3 descriptor, this **shall** be the trigger for the NorDig IRD that the audio stream is a broadcast mixed Supplementary Audio.

Note: AC-3 is not suitable for receiver mixed Supplementary Audio and NorDig IRDs are not required to support this.

### 12.6.6 Enhanced AC-3 descriptor

The NorDig IRD supporting E-AC-3 **shall** use the Enhanced AC-3 descriptor ('Number of channels flags' value) when selecting appropriate audio format (stereo or multichannel), when several audio streams is available for the service, as described in section 6.5.4 Signalling to be used for audio property.

For E-AC-3 audio streams with no supplementary audio descriptor but the 'service type flags' set to Visually Impaired (VI) in the Enhanced AC-3 descriptor, this **shall** be the trigger for the NorDig IRD that the audio stream is a Supplementary Audio. In this case the NorDig IRD **shall** use the 'full service flag' to determine whether the stream is broadcast mixed audio (value '1') or if it is a receiver mixed audio (value '0').

### 12.6.7 AAC descriptor

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC **shall** use the AAC descriptor ('audio type' value) when selecting appropriate audio format (stereo or multichannel), when several audio streams is available for the service, as described in section 6.5.4 Signalling to be used for audio property.

The broadcaster may typically signalize the maximum 'profile and level' and 'AAC type' that the audio stream may have in transmission. An audio stream that is signalized as multichannel may for certain periods only be a stereo channel audio stream.

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC **shall** support profile and level values stated in Table 12. below:

| profile and level value | Description | NorDig comment |
|---|---|---|
| 0x51 | LC-AAC Level 2 | no SBR used, up to stereo (mono or stereo) |
| 0x52 | LC-AAC Level 4 | no SBR used, up to 5.1 (e.g. mono, stereo, 5.1) |
| 0x58 | HE-AAC Level 2 | SBR may be used, up to stereo |
| 0x5A | HE-AAC Level 4 | SBR may be used, up to 5.1(e.g. mono, stereo, 5.1) |

*Table 12.28 AAC descriptor's Profile and level values for NorDig IRDs*

The NorDig IRD supporting HE-AAC **shall** minimum support AAC types stated in Table 12. below.

| AAC type value | Description | NorDig comment |
|---|---|---|
| 0x01 | HE-AAC audio, single mono channel | trigger for normal (mono) audio |
| 0x03 | HE-AAC audio, stereo | trigger for normal (stereo) audio |
| 0x05 | HE-AAC audio, surround sound | trigger for normal (multichannel) audio |
| 0x42 | HE-AAC Receiver mixed Supplementary Audio as per annex E of TS 101 154 | If no supplementary audio descriptor is included, then this **shall** be trigger for receiver mixed Supplementary Audio and this audio stream may include any AD_descriptor in PES_private_data for pan and fade control. |
| 0x47 | HE-AAC receiver mix Audio Description for the visually impaired | If no supplementary audio descriptor is included, then this **shall** be trigger for receiver mixed Supplementary Audio and this audio stream may will <u>not</u> include any AD_descriotr in PES_private_data. |
| 0x48 | HE-AAC broadcaster mix Audio Description for the visually impaired | If no supplementary audio descriptor is included, then this **shall** be trigger for broadcast pre-mixed Supplementary Audio |

*Table 12.29 AAC descriptor's AAC type values for NorDig IRDs.*

As stated in section 6.5.4.3, for AAC audio streams without AAC descriptors **shall** be assumed to be of AAC type 0x03 (level 2, Normal stereo).

The AAC descriptor **shall** have priority to any MPEG-4 audio descriptor.

### 12.6.8 Supplementary_audio_descriptor

The NorDig IRD **shall** support the supplementary audio descriptor for both types of Supplementary Audio streams (i.e. Broadcast mixed and Receiver mixed).

The NorDig IRD **shall** for the supplementary audio descriptor minimum support the combinations of *mix type* and *editorial classification* as listed in Table 12. below.

| Audio type | Audio purpose | Mix type | editorial_classification |
|---|---|---|---|
| Normal | Main audio | 1 | 0 |
| SA broadcast mixed | Audio Description | 1 | 1 |
| SA receiver mixed | Audio Description | 0 | 1 |
| SA broadcast mixed | Spoken Subitlies | 1 | 3 |
| SA receiver mixed | Spoken Subtitles | 0 (note 1) | 3 (note 1) |

*Table 12.30 Minimum combinations of the supplementary audio descriptor for the NorDig IRD. SA refers to Supplementary Audio.*

The supplementary audio descriptor may also be used for the Normal audio streams, the IRD has to parse the descriptor to determine the audio type.

Broadcaster and Operators may in some cases need to transmit the Supplementary audio descriptor for NGA PIDs/streams (even if not recommended), this is to address NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs that do not support the audio_preselection_descriptor. However (according with 6.5.4.2) the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD **shall** only use the language code(s) and ignore the audio type(s) from this Supplementary audio descriptor during the PID/stream selection.

For NGA audio, it is assumed that a NGA stream carries all audio types for each language for the service, for example Normal audio, Audio description and Spoken subtitling are carried within the same NGA PID/stream, therefore the audio type (mix type and editorial classification) in Supplementary audio descriptor is normally set to 'Normal'/Main audio (mix type 1, editorial classification 0) even though the NGA stream carries Supplementary audio.

Note 1: Up to some version of the ETSI EN 300 468 (v1.13.1) it has been missed to include the important combination mix_type '0' with editorial classification '3' (referring to receiver mixed Spoken Subtitles) and mentions that this is invalid and may not be used. NorDig however overwrite this and make this combination valid and **shall** be supported by the NorDig IRDs.

### 12.6.9 Metadata descriptor (NorDig PVR only, Broadcast Record Lists)

This metadata descriptor (as described in ISO/IEC 13818-1 [50]) is applicable for IRD supporting NorDig Broadcast record Lists.

Located in PMT ES descriptor loop the metadata descriptor which relates to the carousel carrying the NorDig BRL metadata service.

The metadata descriptor (PMT) and the metadata pointer descriptor (NIT/SDT) for the NorDig BRL will have matching values.

The metadata descriptor for NorDig BRL will also include metadata descriptor extension and Default Group Authority Structure as described in NorDig chapter 12.2.2.

The value of the fields in the metadata descriptor will be set as following signifying the metadata contained conforms to the NorDig BRL:

| **Metadata pointer descriptor fields** | **Value** | ***Remark*** |
|---|---|---|
| metadata_application_format | 0x0100 | *Matching value set in metadata_pointer_descriptor. NorDig uses TV Anytime and DVB standard value 0x0100, (while DTG uses value 0x0101)* |
| metadata_format | 0x3F | *Matching value set in metadata_pointer_descriptor* |
| metadata_service_id | | *Matching value set in metadata_pointer_descriptor* |
| decoder_config_flags | 0b000 | *Referring to that no configuration is required* |
| DSCM-CC_flag | 0x1 | *Referring to that the metadata is delivered in a carousel* |
| service_identification_record | | ***shall** carry the path to the metadata in the carousel to which this descriptor refers. This path follows the convention set out in TS 102 323 [32] clause 5.3.4.2.* |

*Table 12.31 Metadata descriptor*

The metadata descriptor will include Metadata Descriptors Extention in accordance with DVB/ETSI TS 102 323[32], as described in NorDig section 12.2.2.1.

### 12.6.10 Related Content Descriptor (NorDig PVR only)

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking (see 14.3.10), **shall** be able to handle the related content descriptor (as specified in ETSI TS 102 323 [32]).The RCT is signalled in the service's PMT dynamically. The related content descriptor will typically only be referenced in the PMT as long as RCT is availble.

### 12.6.11 Audio Preselection Descriptor (NGA services only)

The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD supporting NGA services should support the audio_preselection_descriptor. The audio preselection descriptor may contain the following information for a list of preselections:

- The language of the preselection
- Indication if the preselection contains audio description
- Indication if the preselection enables dialogue enhancement
- Indication if the preselection contains spoken subtitles
- Indication if the preselection contains enables user interactivity
- Indication for the preselection regarding a preferred reproduction channel configuration (stereo, multichannel, immersive, headphones)
- Indication for the preselection regarding an available textual description provided by message_descriptor(s)

The NorDig HEVC IRD supporting NGA services **shall** select the preferred preselection according to user preference settings, as described in section 6.5.6 "Audio Prioritisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream".

In general, all NGA Preselections described in the audio_preselection_descriptor **shall** correspond to preselections described in the NGA audio stream.

~~Note that~~ The NGA audio stream(s) may contain additional preselections that are not listed in the audio_preselection_descriptor. For example, this may happen in cable/IPTV re-transmission cases, when dynamic updates of the APD are not feasible or when the broadcaster might want to make certain preselections only selectable by an HbbTV application. As per section 6.5.6, such additional preselections may be displayed in the User Interface (UI) menu.

The audio_preselection_descriptor can also remain unchanged when certain or all preselections are temporarily not available, e.g. during commercial breaks or other interstitials. Such preselections may still be displayed in the UI menu and selectable by the user although (according to section 6.5.6 "Audio Prioritisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream") the NorDig HEVC IRD supporting NGA services selects an appropriate preselection based on the user's preferences until the selected preselection is available again.

~~The NorDig HEVC IRD supporting NGA services **shall** select the preferred preselection according to user preference settings, see section 6.5.6 "Audio Priotisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream" based on the audio_preselection_descriptor or on the metadata embedded in the NGA audio stream(s).~~

#### 12.6.12 AC-4 Descriptor

The NGA capable Nordig HEVC IRD **shall** use the AC-4 descriptor to identify a PID/stream with stream_type set to "private data" (0x06) to be an AC-4 stream as described in section 6.5.4 The NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD shall ignore other information in the AC-4 descriptor (like audio format/channel mode and TOC) during the audio PID/Stream selection (see more in 6.5.4 signalling to be used for audio property).

Informative: For NGA audio, it is assumed that for each language not more than one NGA stream is used to address all audio types (Normal, Spoken Subtitles, etc.) and all the IRD's output audio format modes (stereo, multichannel or immersive), therefore that optional information in the AC4 descriptor can be ignored during the PID/stream selection process.

## *12.7 SSU UNT Descriptors*

### 12.7.1 Descriptor Overview

This section specifies the mandatory and optional descriptors for support of the SSU Enhanced profile in NorDig IRDs.

| Descriptor (tag value) | Tag value | Present in loop | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | Common | Target | Operational |
| scheduling descriptor | 0x01 | | | Ob Mr (1) |
| Update_descriptor | 0x02 | | | Ob Mr (1) |
| ssu_location_descriptor | 0x03 | | | Mb Mr (1) |
| Message_descriptor | 0x04 | | | Ob Mr (1) (2) |
| Ssu_event_name_descriptor | 0x05 | | | Ob Or |
| target_smartcard_descriptor | 0x06 | | Ob Or | |
| Target_MAC_address_descriptor | 0x07 | | Ob Or | |
| target_serial_number_descriptor | 0x08 | | Ob Or | |
| Target_IP_address descriptor | 0x09 | | Ob Or | |
| Target_IPv6_address_descriptor | 0x0A | | Ob Or | |
| Ssu_subgroup_association_descriptor | 0x0B | | | Ob Mr (1) |
| enhanced_message_descriptor | 0x0C | | | Mb Mr (2) |
| ssu_uri_descriptor | 0x0D | | | Mb Mr (2) |
| Private_data_specifier_descriptor | 0x5F | | Ob Or | Ob Mr |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| User private | 0x80 to 0xFE | | | |
| Mb Mandatory to Broadcast, if applicable, i.e. if certain criteria is met (e.g. if that SSU alternative is used)<br>Ob Optional to broadcast, but recommended (if applicable)<br>Mr Mandatory to receive and interpret if broadcast<br>Or Optional to receive and interpret (if broadcasted)<br>Note 1 Mandatory only for NorDig IRD supporting SSU UNT Enhanced profile via broadcast channel (“OTA”), see 10.2 and 10.5<br>Note 2 Mandatory only for NorDig IRD supporting SSU notification alternative, see 10.2 and 10.2.1.5 | | | | |

*Table 12.32 Overview of SSU UNT descriptors to be supported by a NorDig IRD.*

### 12.7.2 Scheduling descriptor

The scheduling descriptor **shall** be according to ETSI TS 102 006 [28]. The NorDig IRD **shall** hence support the periodicity parameters of the scheduling descriptor.

### 12.7.3 Update_descriptor

The update_descriptor **shall** be fully supported as specified in ref [28].

### 12.7.4 SSU_location descriptor

The association between the data carousel and the UNT **shall** be found using the association_tag of the ssu_location_descriptor in the UNT and the component_tag of the stream_identifier_descriptor in the PMT.

### 12.7.5 SSU_subgroup_assosiation_table

The subgroup update_descriptor **shall** be supported as specified in ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

### 12.7.6 private_data_specifier_descriptor

The private_data_specifier_descriptor **shall** be supported as specified in ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

### 12.7.7 target_smartcard_descriptor

#### 12.7.7.1 General

This section specifies the NorDig extensions to the target_smartcard descriptor, see also ref ETSI TS 102 006 [28]. The following rules **shall** apply:

- If a target smartcard descriptor is not present in the SSU stream, all individual IRDs for the given IRD model **shall** be updated (as for SSU simple profile).
- If a target smartcard descriptor is present in the SSU stream, the IRD **shall** react on an SSU request only if it is explicitly targeted in the data field of any of the targeting descriptors. This means that if a targeting descriptor without private data bytes is received, no IRDs **shall** be updated.
- If multiple target descriptors are present, the IRD **shall** trigger on the SSU as long as the condition given in at least one target descriptor are met.

#### 12.7.7.2 NorDig smart card private data byte definition

The serial numbers will be represented either as a list of individual smart card numbers or (a) range(s) of smart card numbers.

A smart card number descriptor **shall** contain only one of the targeting modes defined below. If both modes are used, they **shall** be sent in separate target_smart_card_descriptors.

- **List mode= ‘0x01’** as the first byte in the private_data_byte defines a list of smart card numbers.

- **Range mode= '0x02'** as the first byte in the private_data_byte define one or multiple ranges of smart card numbers.
- **0x03-0x1F reserved for future use.**
- **0x20-0x50 to be defined by user of the SSU.**

*Format of the list mode*

Format of the list mode **shall** be:

**01 <smartcard number #1> < smartcard number #2> < smartcard number#3> …< smartcard number #n>**

| |
|---|
| Example (targeting of 3 smart card numbers, 8 bytes each)<br>Serial number 1: 1127154194 (dec)<br>Serial number 2: 1127154196 (dec)<br>Serial number 1: 1127154197 (dec)<br>Will be signaled as:<br>**01** 00 00 00 00 43 2F 02 12 00 00 00 00 43 2F 02 14 00 00 00 00 43 2F 02 15 (hex)<br>The first byte (0x01) indicates that a list of smartcard numbers will follow. The next 8 bytes represent the first smartcard number, the next 8 bytes the next and so on. |

*Format of the range mode*

It is possible to insert multiple ranges of smart card numbers in the range mode:

Format of the range mode **shall** be:

**02 <start smartcard number range#1><stop smartcard number range#1>……**

**<start smartcard number range#n><stop smartcard number range#n>>**

| |
|---|
| Example (targeting range of smart card number ranges, 8 bytes each)<br>Range: 1127154176 (dec) to 1127154432 (dec)<br>Will be signaled as:<br>**02** 00 00 00 00 43 2F 02 00 00 00 00 00 43 2F 03 00 (hex)<br>The first byte (0x02) indicates that a range of serial numbers will follow. Two serial numbers is then defined (8 bytes each). The first serial number is the first in the range and the second is the last in the range. |

### 12.7.8 target_serial_number_descriptor

#### 12.7.8.1 General

This section specifies the NorDig extensions to the target_serial_number descriptor, see also ref [28]. The following rules **shall** apply:

- If a target serial number descriptor is not present in the SSU stream, all individual IRDs for the given IRD model **shall** be updated (as for SSU simple profile).

- If a target serial number descriptor is present in the SSU stream, the IRD **shall** react on an SSU request only if it is explicitly targeted in the data field of any of the targeting descriptors. This means that if a targeting descriptor without private data bytes is received, no IRDs **shall** be updated.
- If multiple target descriptors are present, the IRD **shall** react on an SSU request matching either of the descriptors.

12.7.8.2 NorDig serial number private data byte definition

The serial numbers will be represented either as a list of individual serial numbers or ranges of serial numbers.

A serial number descriptor **shall** contain only one of the targeting types below. If both are used, they **shall** be sent in separate serial_number_descriptors.

- **List mode='0x01'** as the first byte in the serial_data_byte defines a list of smart card numbers.
- **Range mode='0x02'** as the first byte in the serial_data_byte define one or multiple ranges of IRD serial numbers.
- **0x03-0x1F reserved for future use.**
- **0x20-0x50 user defined.**

*Format of the list mode*

Format of the list mode **shall** be:

**01 <serial number #1> < serial number #2> < serial number#3> …<serial number #n>**

Example (targeting of 3 serial numbers, 8 bytes each)

Serial number 1: 1297599827523287111 (dec)

Serial number 2: 184887162952 (dec)

Serial number 1: 2242633 (dec)

Will be signaled as:

| | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **01** | 12 02 00 2B 0C 22 38 47 | 00 00 00 2B 0C 22 38 48 | 00 00 00 00 00 22 38 49 |

(hex)

The first byte (0x01) indicates that a list of serial numbers will follow. The next 8 bytes represent the first serial number, the next 8 bytes the next and so on.

*Format of the range mode*

It is possible to insert multiple ranges of serial numbers in the range mode:

Format of the range mode **shall** be:

**02 <start serial number range#1><stop serial number range#1> …**

**<start serial number range#n><stop serial number range#n>>**

Example (targeting 2 ranges of serial numbers)

Range 1: 289356241698816 (dec) to 289356275253247 (dec)

Range 2: 570831218409472 (dec) to 570831251963903 (dec)

Will be signaled as:

**02** 00 01 07 2B 00 00 00 00 00 01 07 2B 01 FF FF FF 00 02 07 2B 00 00 00 00

00 02 07 2B 01 FF FF FF (hex)

The first byte (0x02) indicates that range(s) of serial numbers will follow. Two serial numbers is then defined (8 bytes each). The first serial number is the first in the range and the second is the last in the range. The remaining 16 bytes gives the second range.

#### 12.7.9 Message descriptor

The message descriptor **shall** be supported in accordance with ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

The text information contained in the Message Descriptor **shall** be presented to the user in the chosen language when new software update is detected. If also target descriptors is signaled, only targeted IRDs **shall** present this message descriptor.

In case of missing descriptor, the default SSU message **shall** be displayed. The default message is operator specific.

#### 12.7.10 enhanced_message_descriptor

For NorDig IRD supporting SSU notification, the enhanced_message_descriptor **shall** be supported in accordance with ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

When multiple text messages are available in different languages in the broadcast signal, the NorDig IRD supporting SSU notification **shall** prioritise the presentation of the text message which matches the IRD's user preference settings for subtitling language (see section 16). If no match, then the IRD **shall** present one of the available text messages (according to IRD manufacture decision).

#### 12.7.11 ssu_uri_descriptor

The ssu_uri_descriptor **shall** be supported in accordance with ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

An ssu_uri_descriptor with a descriptor_length field of 0x02 **shall** indicate a download is available from the IRD's factory default download location (pre-stored in the IRD). A URI can be specified for downloads available from alternative Internet locations, however manufacturers are recommended to only signal the optional URI when absolutely necessary. Manufacturers should take note of the security warning of this mechanism as detailed in ETSI TS 102 006 [28].

### *12.8 Related Content Table (NorDig PVR only)*

The syntax of the Related Content Table (RCT) is described in ETSI TS 102 323 [32] section 10.4.

*Informative: The RCT is typically used during a promotion trailer to give the viewer the opportunity to program/book the PVR to record the event the trailer is referring to, here referred to as a trailer booking (or promotional linking) feature. The RCT may include several trailer/promotion links, see below. The Related Content Table (RCT) provides related content information which is relevant to the content currently broadcast on a service.*

#### 12.8.1 Related Content Table Desriptors

| Related Content Table |
|---|
| short_event_descriptor |
| image_icon_descriptor |

*Table 12.33 RCT descriptors*

### 12.8.2 Description of RCT

*Informative: The RCT carries service specific real-time links to other content. The presence and details of these links change dynamically. When links are available a suitably enabled NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking can display these to a viewer using its native User Interface: firstly, through an indication that links are active (e.g. an icon to say 'press green to book') and then by displaying the list of links (see 14.3.10).*

*If the links in the RCT table point to other broadcast content then the viewer can choose to book that content to be recorded, through the recorder's usual native booking mechanism.*

#### 12.8.2.1 RCT general

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** support:

- RCT sub-table that may be split over multiple sections.
- The total size of an RCT sub-table (all sections) up to 65535 bytes.
- The stream type of the RCT in the PMT reference is 0x05 and RCT use table_id 0x76.

(The NorDig PVR does not have to handle any cross carriage of RCT information).

#### 12.8.2.2 RCT version number and link count

A change of RCT version number and link_count greater than zero refers to that trailer booking icon **shall** appear (be displayed) according to user preference settings.

A change of RCT version number and link_count equal to zero refers to that any trailer booking icon **shall** disappear

See section 14.3.10 for PVR handling of RCT version number and link count.

#### 12.8.2.3 Signalling of icons in multiple links

NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** handle up to one trailer booking icon at the time to be displayed.

*Informative about the broadcast: The set of links of type Trailer or GroupTrailer transmitted in an RCT concurrently **shall** only signal a maximum of one icon to be displayed. As a consequence, within a single RCT, the broadcaster **shall** not signal links requiring both the default icon and the transmitted icon. However, the broadcaster may signal that the default icon **shall** be displayed if the transmitted icon has not been acquired.*

*If any Trailer or GroupTrailer link in the RCT has an icon_id which is non-zero, then all other Trailer or GroupTrailer links in the RCT must either indicate that same icon_id or must have both icon_id and default_icon_flag as 0 (no icon for the link).*

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** be able to handle image_icon_descriptors in the RCT which are unreferenced by any icon_id in the link_info structures currently being transmitted. IRDs may use this to assist caching of transmitted icons.

#### 12.8.2.4 Number of Links

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** handle at least 10 links of the types Trailer and GroupTrailer that are signalled concurrently.

#### 12.8.2.5 Order of Links

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** display Links on-screen in the same order they appear in the link_info loop of the RCT.

#### 12.8.2.6 Link Stacking

The NorDig PVR **shall** assume that link first in the list **shall** be most relevant to the current broadcast content. An IRD may also offer recent related content information with the current set of links.

#### 12.8.2.7 Link Types

The NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** support (only) link_type 0x00 (URI string only). All other link types **shall** be ignored by the NorDig PVR. The URI string within the media_uri_byte can be a programme or series CRID.

The CRID may be resolved to an event through the EIT table (to provide more information to the viewer about the event, ie EIT description (short + extended) has preference compared to RCT description short descriptor).

#### 12.8.2.8 CRID Resolution and Retention

The CRID may not be resolvable from the EIT when the RCT is signalled (due to that event broadcast time is too far ahead) however the NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** still support a booking to be made.

Any booked CRIDs **shall** be retained by a NorDig PVR for up to 91 days. If a CRID has not been seen in EIT after 91 days it **shall** be removed from the NorDig PVR‘s booking list.

For NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking a CRID in the RCT without an IMI **shall** resolve to matching both CRIDs in EIT with and without IMI extension and a CRID in the RCT with an IMI **shall** resolve to first preference matching CRIDs in EIT with IMI extension, ie:

• *crid://dr.dk/ABC* in RCT **shall** match either *crid://dr.dk/ABC* or *crid://dr.dk/ABC#1*

• *crid:// dr.dk//ABC#1* in RCT **shall** as a first preference match *crid:// dr.dk//ABC#1* however, during clash resolution, a IRD may fall back to an alternate instance with or without any IMI.

*Informative about the broadcast: Resolution of a CRID in the RCT to events in EIT **shall** include the complete CRID, including any IMI extension except where a conflict occurs, where a NorDig PVR may fall back to an alternate instance with or without any IMI.*

*Where an IMI is supplied with a CRID in the RCT the associated promotional text **shall** indicate the reason for targeting a preferred instance, e.g. a signed version.*

#### 12.8.2.9 HowRelated Classification Scheme

Each link is described within a TVAnytime HowRelated classification scheme. The how_related_classification_scheme_id **shall** be 0x02 (urn:tva:metadata:HowRelatedCS:2007).

All other classification schemes **shall** be ignored by the NorDig PVR. A NorDig PVR that supports Trailor booking **shall** continue to operate and process links of known classification in the presence of undefined classifications in the link info loop.

#### 12.8.2.10 HowRelated Types

The following TV-Anytime HowRelated types **shall** be supported by NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking. The value coded in column 1 of Table 12._RCT term_id‘**shall** be carried in the term_id field of the link_info structure of the RCT. This is the rank‘of the TVA termId in the HowRelatedCS:2007 classification scheme, see ETSI TS 102 323 [32]. Other types may be signalled in the future and any HowRelated types not defined in this document **shall** be ignored by a NorDig PVR.

A NorDig PVR that supports Trailor booking **shall** continue to operate and process known types in the presence of undefined types in the link info loop or types that the IRD is unable to process.

| RCT term_id as coded | TVA termed In HowRelatedCS:2007 | Name | Definition | NorDig PVR behaviour |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| 0x002 | 1.2 | IsTrailerOf | The reference points to a resource of which the currently described resource is a trailer | NorDig PVR will offer (through dialogue) the user the option book the pointed to programme (programme CRID) for recording. |
| 0x005 | 2.2 | IsGroupTrailerOf | The reference points to a group of resources for which the currently described resource is a trailer. | NorDig PVR will offer the user option to book the pointed series (series CRID) for recording |

*Table 12.34 HowRelated types for Trailer Booking Service*

#### 12.8.2.11 Promotional Text

A NorDig PVR IRD that supports Trailer booking **shall** support Promotional text for each link. The Promotional text **shall** only be used at the time of booking (ie when displaying the trailer booking menu on screen). The character set of the text field is specified in section 12.1.7.

*Informative about the broadcast: Promotional text **shall** accompany each link. It **shall** describe the event being promoted in a form which is suitable for display to the viewer. There **shall** be sufficient information carried to allow the viewer to identify the content.*

*Broadcasters **shall** not indicate the link type in the promotional text: further assistance **shall** be provided by the IRD software, e.g. "Book this series".*

*A short event descriptor **shall** also be included (including the trailor's event name) and displayed according to the rules set out in chapter 12.8.3. (Therefore, there is no need to include the event name in the promotional text).*

### 12.8.3 Short Event Descriptor (when used in RCT)

A NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** support short_event_descriptor and its event name field, (as defined in ETSI EN 300 468 [13]), that is included in the link_info descriptor loop of each link in the RCT.Once a CRID carried in the RCT is resolved to an event in the EIT then the booking list **shall** use the short_event_descriptor in EIT in preference to the descriptor carried in the RCT.

*Informative about the broadcast: The short event descriptor will typically only include event name and the event description text length **shall** be zero.*

### 12.8.4 Image Icon Descriptor

A NorDig PVR that supports Trailer booking **shall** support (as defined in defined in ETSI EN 300 468 [13]):

- image icon descriptor,
- icons delivered inside the image icon descriptor and
- icon image types PNG type and JPEG type.

*Informative: The image icon descriptor, may be used to convey or reference an image, to be used to indicate for the viewer a trailer booking (instead of the PVR's default trailer booking icon). A broadcast icon may be delivered in an image icon descriptor. This descriptor may be delivered in the 'link info' descriptor loops or in the outer loop of the RCT. Where the descriptor is carried in the outer loop multiple links may reference the same icon through icon_id. An icon may be split across multiple*

*descriptors. The icon image type may be either PNG type or JPEG type. SD services* ***shall*** *use image type only at SD resolution. HD services* ***shall*** *carry image types at HD resolution.*

## 12.9 NorDig Broadcast Record List syntax (NorDig PVR only)

NorDig Broadcast Record list is only applicable for PVRs and is an optional to support for NorDig PVR.

### 12.9.1 Introduction (informative)

Broadcast Record Lists is a “broadcast only” functionality (independent of return channel and API). Broadcast Record Lists, or with other words "Record lists for Catch-up TV" is a method by which broadcasters may signal in the broadcast stream particular content to be acquired by an enabled NorDig PVR that support this feature. Once a user has selected a record list, a PVR will acquire and manage the content without any additional user intervention.

This functionality will enable broadcasters to promote particular content, expose users to niche programming or expose viewers to content that is commercially attractive for example. It also allows broadcasters to use spare multiplex capacity for the pre-delivery of content.

Broadcast Record Lists are lists of content where each has a consistent theme such as “the best of the last week” or “classic films”. Each list will carry metadata including a descriptive title and synopsis, along with a unique identifier in the form of a CRID. When a user selects a record list, events referenced by that list will be automatically booked and then acquired without further user intervention. The signalling will carry the metadata required for the NorDig PVR to automatically capture, store and expire recorded content.

The Broadcast Record Lists specification allows a wide range of functionality such as the creation of record lists, ability to deliver content off the schedule, the ability to deliver content in an obfuscated (“hidden”) manner and the ability to mandate embargo and expiry times.

It is belived for this function that users will subscribe to one or more Broadcast Record Lists over a longer time and therefore it is essential that PVR can automatically delete expired events and prioties recorded content to avoid PVR memory becoming full due to this feature.

The metadata required to support Broadcast Record Lists specification is made available using the TV-Anytime XML model (TS 102 822-3-1 [67]).

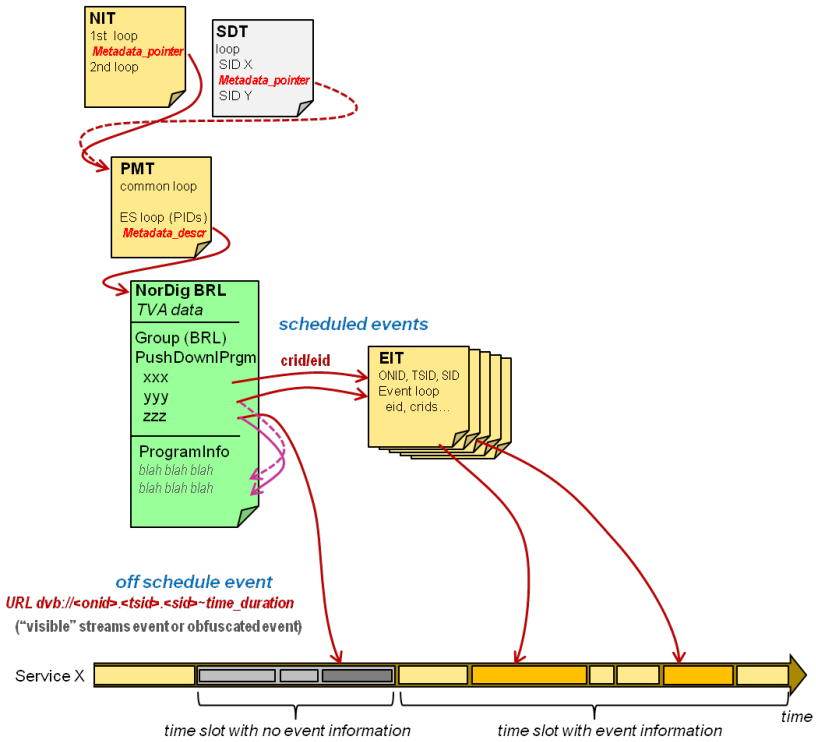



*Figure 12.1 Signalling model for NorDig Broadcast Record List (BRL).*

The root to a BRL starts either from the NIT or the SDT to a service which PMT includes a pointer to the PID carrying the BRL data including its "Push download" events. For most scheduled events the PushDownloadProgram will resolve to an event in the EIT (and from the EIT the PVR will be able to pick up the start time, duration, program title and synopsis of the event). There is also specified a mechanism for BRL events to reference without EIT, here refered to as off-scheduled events, where the event will include an TV Anytime URL DVB locator including start time and duration and for the title and synopsis the event will be delivered using a TV-Anytime ProgramInformation table.

### 12.9.2 General

This NorDig Broadcast Record List is optional for NorDig IRDs/PVRs to support, but if supported then all requirements for this NorDig Broadcast Record List feature **shall** be supported.

NorDig Broadcast Record List functionality is enabled by the use of a subset of the TV-Anytime XML specification ETSI TS 102 822-3-1 [67].

For compatibility with future updates to this functionality and to satisfy ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [69], NorDig IRD **shall** ignore unrecognised XML elements and sub-elements if the XML is otherwise well formed. XML fragments containing malformed XML may be ignored in their entirety. Receipt of unrecognised XML elements or malformed XML **shall** not cause the receiver to malfunction.

### 12.9.3 NorDig Broadcast Record List Metadata Carousel Discovery

The carousel carrying the NorDig Broadcast Record List TV-Anytime metadata **shall** be identified using a metadata pointer descriptor and a metadata descriptor as defined in ETSI TS 102 323 clause 5.3 [32]. The metadata descriptors extension will be present in both the metadata pointer descriptor and metadata descriptor.

NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** support all PSI/SI descriptors listed in section 12.9.3.1 for the BRL service.

#### 12.9.3.1 PSI/SI Descriptors for NorDig Broadcast Record Lists

| Descriptors for Record list stream | Table | See chapter |
|---|---|---|
| Metadata pointer descriptor | NIT | 12.2 |
| Metadata pointer descriptor | SDT | 12.3 |
| Metadata descriptor | PMT | 12.6 |

*Table 12.35 PSI/SI descriptors for NorDig Broadcast Record Lists*

The scope implied by the location of the metadata pointer descriptor **shall** be respected. If the metadata pointer descriptor is delivered in the NIT, the metadata **shall** be valid for the network (ie inside that original_network_id).

### 12.9.4 Content Grouping

Groups of related content (record lists) will be signaled via using TV-Anytime groups with a group type of "automaticAcquisitionThemed" or "automaticAcquisitionNonThemed".

### 12.9.5 List Hierarchies

A Recording List may contain a further reference to one or more recording lists in order to create a hierarchy. The NorDig PVR supporting BRL Broadcasters **shall** support Broadcast Record List hierarchy up to five levels (excluding the mandatory default record list described in 12.9.6).

Note: It is the broadcaster's responsibility to ensure no loops are created before the metadata is published.

### 12.9.6 Default Record List Group

The Record List acquisition functionality **shall** have a root record list that **shall** be identified by a well-known CRID which **shall** take the form:

```
crid://<authority>/default1.
```

Where <authority> is derived from the default group authority structure, see section 12.2.2.2, found in the metadata descriptors extension, see section 12.2.2.1. All groups that have this group as their root are conformant to and **shall** be treated as defined in this document.

Groups that do not have the default group at the root of their hierarchy **shall** be ignored by the NorDig PVR supporting BRL unless specifically recognised. In this case, they may be treated in a manufacturer defined manner.

### 12.9.7 Embargoed Content

The ActivationTime element may be used in the PushDownloadProgram and specifies the date and time for embargoed content. Used to signalize from what time this BRL recorded content **shall** earliest be playable for the user, see section 14.2.10.8, before this time is reached the recorded content is "embargoed".

If no embargo time is signalled for a piece of content it is assumed that content is available for viewing immediately.

### 12.9.8 Content Expiry

The ExpiresTime may be used in the PushDownloadProgram and specifies the date and time after which the associated instance of the content **shall** no longer be playable by the user and be deleted, see section 14.2.10.9. In NorDig BRL both normal scheduled events and off-scheduled events may have ExpiresTime (observe difference compared to DTG D-book).

### 12.9.9 Scheduled event

*A NorDig Record List scheduled event is a pointer using EIT, which in the Record list includes either only CRID or a URL DVB pointer with event_id to the event.*

A scheduled delivery to event in the EIT that in the EIT do not carry any CRID **shall** be identified by the presence of a ProgramURL in the PushDownloadProgram. In this case, the CRID carried by the PushDownloadProgram fragment **shall** not resolve to any event carried in any EIT. The content of the URL element **shall** provide the means to locate and acquire an instance of a broadcast event.

The signalled URL **shall** take the following forms and be interpreted as described in ETSI TS 102 323 clause 6.4 [32], as to reference an item of content by its scheduled time for broadcast:

To reference an item of content via an event_id carried in EIT:

```
dvb://<original_network_id>.[<transport_stream_id>].<service_id>;<event_id>
```

*Different configurations of URL may be used in the future to signify different methods of acquisition or event.* NorDig PVR **shall** ignore any URL format it cannot interpret and events in any location from where they cannot be acquired. A PushDownloadProgram CRID corresponds to a program CRID or event_id for a service either currently in the EIT or a program CRID that **shall** be broadcast at a later date (up to maximum 91 days in ahead).

A PushDownloadProgram ProgramURL with event_id to a specific service corresponds to an event_id for the service either currently in the EIT or an event_id for that service that **shall** be broadcast at a later date (up to maximum **10** days in ahead). (The event_id has shorter period of validity compared to the CRID, this since the event_id is re-used in the broadcast for other events typically after 30 days).

### 12.9.10 Off Schedule Event

*A record list off-schedule event is a pointer without using EIT, which includes URL DVB pointer to the service and the start time plus duration for the recording.*

An off-schedule delivery **shall** be identified by the presence of a ProgramURL in the PushDownloadProgram. In this case, the CRID carried by the PushDownloadProgram fragment **shall** not resolve to any event carried in any EIT. The content of the URL element **shall** provide the means to locate and acquire an instance of a broadcast event.

The signalled URL **shall** take the following forms and be interpreted as described in ETSI TS 102 323 clause 6.4 [32], as to reference an item of content by its scheduled time for broadcast:

To reference an item of content by its schedule time for broadcast:

```
dvb://<original_network_id>.[<transport_stream_id>].<service_id>~time_duration
```

*(According to ETSI TS 102 323 clause 6.4 [32], the format for the time_duration string **shall** be compatible with ISO8601 and observe that DVB specified using UTC time and that the start time and duration is separated by two hyphen "-" characters rather than by one solidus (forward slash) "/"character, example 20120606T094500Z—PT01H15M00S).*

*Different configurations of URL may be used in the future to signify different methods of acquisition or event.* NorDig PVR **shall** ignore any URL format it cannot interpret and events in any location from where they cannot be acquired.

Where an event is to be delivered off-schedule, the CRID carried by the PushDownloadProgram match the CRID of a ProgramInformationFragment. This ProgramInformationFragment will provide, at minimum, a title and synopsis for the off-schedule event.

Alternate instances of an off-schedule event is indicated by multiple instances of a PushDownloadProgram with the same identification CRID but different ProgramURLs. The

InstanceMetadataID element of the PushDownloadProgram is used to differentiate between these multiple instances. The value of InstanceMetadataID is unconnected to an IMI extension for a CRID in the EIT

#### 12.9.10.1 Obfuscated Events (subset of Off Scheduled Events)

Off schedule events may be delivered in an obfuscated manner in order to make them inaccessible to IRDs not supporting NorDig Broadcast Record Lists. In order to hide an event, the stream types of the service's elementary streams (video, audio, teletext, subtitles) are all set to 0x06 (PES private data) in the associated PMT. The true stream type/component types are instead signalled using the event locator URI.

An obfuscated event may be recognised by the presence of a ProgramURL element in the PushDownloadProgram fragment where the contained URI has the following form

```
dvb://<original_network_id>.[<transport_stream_>].<service_id>.fully_qualified
_component *( "&" fully_qualified_component )~timeduration
```

Where

```
fully_qualified_component = "fqc=" stream_content_and_component_type ","
component_tag *( [ "," iso639_language_code )]
```

The elements of this URI are defined in DVB draft ETSI TS 102 851 (*Uniform Resource Identifiers (URI) for DVB Systems*) [70]. The URI **shall** contain at minimum a fully_qualified_component for the video and a fully_qualified_component for the main audio. Fully_qualified_components describing Audio Description and subtitles may also be present.

The PMT loop associated with the audio stream(s) **shall** carry the regular descriptors necessary for audio in the same way as for normal non-obfuscated service events (i.e. when necessary ISO 639, AAC, AC-3, supplementary audio descriptors etc).

If subtitles (via DVB subtitling and/or EBU Teletext subtilting) are present, the PMT loop associated with the subtitles **shall** carry a subtitling descriptor (for DVB subtitling) and Teletext descriptor (for Teletext subtitling) which **shall** be interpreted in the normal way.

The stream_content_and_component_type **shall** authoritively signal the component types for each stream overriding any component descriptors in any associated EIT.

The CRID carried by the PushDownloadProgram signalling an obfuscated event **shall** match with the CRID of a ProgramInformationFragment. This ProgramInformationFragment **shall** provide, at minimum, a title and synopsis for the off-schedule event. All event information **shall** be retrieved from the associated ProgramInformation fragment, EIT information **shall** be ignored.

### 12.9.11 BRL CRID Lifecycle Management

Fundamental CRID lifecycle management for NorDig BRL remains as per the rules in NorDig Unified chapters 12.4.6 "CRID encoding and reuse" and 14.3.3 "Series recording".

### 12.9.12 Content Versioning

Updates to the version of a particular piece of content may be signalled using the ContentVersion element, indicating to the PVR to replace any earlier recorded version with this later version.

### 12.9.13 Version Changes (informative)

There are a number of places in the metadata where version changes can occur. The interaction of these changes can be summarised as in the table below.

| | |
|---|---|
| **Version number of module in DSM-CC object carousel** | One or more of the files (containers) that this module is carrying has been updated. The container or containers transported by this module should be reacquired and the container header checked for version number changes. |
| **Version change of referenced fragment in container header** | The fragment associated with the version increment has changed in some way. Note the container itself has no associated version number. |
| **Version change associated with TVAMain fragment** | The contents of the TVAMain fragment have changed in some way. A change in a normal fragment will not trigger a version change for the TVAMain fragment, only if the TVAMain fragment itself changes will a version change be necessary. |
| **Version change associated with XML for normal fragment** | The contents of this fragment have changed in some way. |

*Table 12.36 Version changing of NorDig BRL information*

### 12.9.14 Fragmentation of Record List Metadata

NorDig Broadcast Record List metadata is conveyed as a subset of a TV-Anytime metadata description (TS 102 822-3-1[67]), represented in XML. TV-Anytime XML files are fragmented as defined in TS 102 822-3-2 [69] clause 4.3.

Each fragment will have a fragment ID which will be a 6 digit hex string between 0x000001 and 0xFFFFFF (except TVA Main Fragement, see below). This fragment ID value is unique within the metadata service and are not be re-used for at least 32 days.

The value of the fragmentVersion attribute of each fragment **shall** be a 2 digit hex string. Each time the content of a fragment changes, the version number of that fragment is incremented modulo 0xFF.

Note: The broadcaster will ensure this value is unique within the metadata service and **shall** not re-use a fragment ID for at least 32 days.

#### 12.9.14.1 New Fragments

A new XML fragment are inserted into an appropriate container or a new container as appropriate.

#### 12.9.14.2 Deleted Fragments

Fragments may be removed from the metadata service. Fragments that cannot be found and are not referenced from a moved fragments structure **shall** be deemed to have been deleted.

#### 12.9.14.3 XML Declaration

The XML declaration at the beginning of an XML fragment is optional and may be omitted for reasons of efficiency. If this declaration is not present, the defaults of XML version 1.0 and UTF-8 encoding **shall** be assumed.

#### 12.9.14.4 Fragment Encoding and Termination

The XML text for each fragment carried in the binary repository of the container are encoded as UTF-8. The text of each fragment carried in a binary repository are terminated with a null character 0x00 (ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [69])

#### 12.9.14.5 Carriage of Fragment Version and ID

For efficiency, the version and ID **shall** be removed from the fragment XML as part of the containerisation process and instead these values **shall** only be carried in the encapsulation structure for that fragment.

#### 12.9.14.6 TVAMain Fragment

A NorDig BRL will contain a TVAMain fragment and is carried in its own container with the filename “tvamain”. The TVAMain fragment will have the fragment ID 0x000000 in the tvamain encapsulation structure.

A version change for the TVAMain fragment **shall** force a NorDig PVR supporting BRL to reacquire all fragments in the metadata service. The version of the TVAMain fragment signalled in the encapsulation structure should be checked, even if the PVR detects file has been updated.

### 12.9.15 Carriage of XML Fragments

The specification for carriage of TV-Anytime XML for NorDig BRL is a profiling of ETSI TS 102 323 [32] clause 8 with the distinction that binary encoding is not used.

#### 12.9.15.1 Containers

All data for the NorDig BRL TV-Anytime metadata service are carried in containers as defined in ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [32] clause 4.5.2.1.

If one or more fragments are carried in a container, then an encapsulation structure and a binary data repository will both be present. A moved fragments structure may be present if required.

The maximum size of a single container is 64Kbytes.

#### 12.9.15.2 Container Identification

Each container will have an identifier which **shall** be a value between 0x0000 and 0xFFFF. This identifier is unique within the metadata service at any one time and broadcasters **shall** ensure container IDs are not re-used for 32 days.

#### 12.9.15.3 Encapsulation

The encapsulation structure is as defined in ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [69] clause 4.6.1.1 *Encapsulation structure*.

The value of the fragment_reference_format for NorDig BRL is 0xF0. Use of this value **shall** indicate an unencoded_fragment_reference structure is to be used in the loop of the encapsulation structure.

The unencoded_fragment_reference structure is defined as follows:

| Syntax | No. of Bits | identifier |
|---|---|---|
| unencoded_fragment_reference(){ | | |
| unencoded_fragment_pointer | 16 | uimsbf |
| } | | |

*Table 12.37* Unencoded fragment reference

**unencoded_fragment_pointer**: Offset in bytes from the start of the binary repository to the first byte of the fragment.

Fragments are described in the loop of the encapsulation structure in the same order with which they are placed in the binary repository (in order of ascending fragment ID). Maintaining consistency of fragment ordering between the encapsulation and binary data repository may allow the receiver to determine the length of each fragment by using adjacent unencoded_fragment_pointer values.

#### 12.9.15.4 Moved Fragment Structure

The moved fragments structure is constructed as defined in ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [69] clause 4.6.1.2 *Moved fragments structure*.

If a fragment is moved from one container to another, the original container will carry a moved fragments structure and use it to signal the new location of the fragment. The entry in the moved fragment structure will be present for the lifetime of the moved fragment.

A container may contain only a moved fragments structure and no binary repository if necessary.

#### 12.9.15.5 Binary Data Repository

Fragments are carried in the binary data repository structure as detailed in ETSI TS 102 822-3-2 [69] clause 4.6.1.4.1 *Binary data repository*. Fragments are placed in this structure in order of ascending fragment ID.

### 12.9.16 Carriage of Containers

Containers for a single metadata service are carried as file objects in an object carousel as profiled in ETSI TS 102 323 [32] section 9.2.1 *Delivery by MHP object carousel*. All containers are located in the directory signalled by the metadata descriptor relating to this metadata service. Multiple metadata services may co-exist in the same carousel, providing each is carried in a separate directory. A single metadata service cannot be spread over multiple directories.

Each file object **shall** contain exactly 1 container.

The container‘s ID **shall** be signalled using the filename as described in ETSI TS 102 323 [32] clause 9.2.2 *Container identification*. Thus, the name of a file carrying a container **shall** consist of 4 hex digits followed by the extension “.d” (data container).

### 12.9.17 NorDig BRL’s TV-Anytime XML profile

The following section provides a profile for TV-Anytime (TVA) XML for used to support NorDig Broadcast Record List (BRL) functionality. The symbol “@” has been used to denote an attribute.

All elements and attributes in this section are mandatory for NorDig PVR supporting BRL to support and mandatory to broadcast unless specified otherwise.

The types for and definitions of all elements and attributes contained in the broadcast XML metadata are as set out in ETSI TS 102 822-3-1 [67] and the associated schema unless overridden or otherwise clarified by the profile in this NorDig section.

Some attributes are *optional to broadcast*, refereeing to they are not always included instead they are normally only included when they are needed. NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** however support when they are included and handle when they are not included.

#### 12.9.17.1 Synopsis NorDig BRL TVA XML

Where a synopsis element is present, a length attribute is included as detailed in ETSI TS 102 822-3-1 [67]. In case of parallel broadcast of different synopsis having different length, it is sufficient if the PVR store only the longest one.

Only one synopsis length **shall** be displayed at one time.

#### 12.9.17.2 Language NorDig BRL TVA XML

A 2-character code as defined by ISO 639-2 [68] **shall** be used to signal the language where appropriate. These language codes are shown with their current equivalents in Table 12..

| Language | XML 2-character language code (ISO 639-1) | NorDig language code (ISO 639-2) |
|---|---|---|
| English (default) | "en" | "eng" |
| Irish | "ga" | "gle" |
| Danish | "da" | "dan" |
| Finish | "fi" | "fin" |
| Norwegian | "no" | "nor" |
| Swedish | "sv" | "swe" |

*Table 12.38 Language codes that **shall** be supported by NorDig PVR BRL*

12.9.17.3 TVAMain Type

| TVAMain | Profile |
|---|---|
| @lang | The language attribute will always be present and will indicate the primary language for the metadata service. |
| @publisher | The publisher attribute will always be used to signal the publisher of this metadata according to TS 102 323 [32] clause 8.9. |

*Table 12.39 NorDig BRL TVA Main typeMetadataOriginationInformation Type*

| MetadataOriginationInformation | Profile |
|---|---|
| @OriginID | A value used to uniquely identify this MetadataOriginationInformation instance. An OriginID exist for every metadataOriginIDRef in the metadata. |
| Publisher | A human readable name of the publisher. The maximum length of this string is 20 characters, aligning with the Service Provider Name field in the Service Descriptor. |

*Table 12.40 NorDig BRL Metadata Origination Information TypeGroupInformation Type*

| GroupInformation | Profile |
|---|---|
| | |
| @lang | A lang attribute may be included to indicate the language used in any textual descriptions contained in this fragment and **shall** override a language set by the TVAMain fragment. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| @groupID | A unique identifier in the form of a CRID for the Record List. |
| @metadataOriginIDRef | An identifier that **shall** resolve to the originator of this Group. |
| @ordered | Set to true if child groups **shall** be ordered. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| **GroupType** | |
| @value | Groups associated with the Broadcast Record List service **shall** have the Group Types<br>"automaticAcquisitionThemed" or<br>"automaticAcquisitionNonThemed". |
| **BasicDescription** | |
| Title | Title of the Record List. The maximum length of the title **shall** be 40 characters. |
| Synopsis | A short description of the record list's content. |
| Genre | If present **shall** contain a term ID from ContentCS (TS 102 822-3-2 [69] Appendix A.8). Multiple genres may be present. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| MemberOf | Allows the creation of recording list hierarchies by holding a reference to a more general recording list. Mandatory for all groups apart from the default group. |
| @crid | A CRID referencing a more general group. *Optional to broadcast*. |

| | |
|---|---|
| @index | Used to determine ordering if the parent Group indicates ordering on child Groups. *Optional to broadcast*. |

*Table 12.41 NorDig BRL Group Information Type*

| |
|---|
| Note: the xml:lang attribute will not be used in the Title or Synopsis elements, instead this will be signaled as an attribute of GroupInformation and inherited accordingly |

12.9.17.4 PushDownloadProgram Type

| **PushDownloadProgram** | **Profile** |
|---|---|
| **Program** | |
| @CRID | This CRID indicates the event which should be resolved via the EIT and booked for automatic acquisition. If a ProgramURL with time_duration is also present, the event is to be delivered off schedule and so this CRID will not resolve to an EIT event. Instead it **shall** be matched with an entry in the ProgramInformationTable |
| ProgramURL | An alternative location for the event, provided as a URL. See 12.9.4, 12.9.9, 12.9.10 and 12.9.10.1. |
| **InstanceDescription** | |
| MemberOf | Contains one or more CRIDs identifying the group or groups to which this PushDownloadProgram belongs. Multiple instances of the MemberOf element may be present indicating the PushDownloadProgram belongs to multiple groups |
| PublishedDuration | The duration of the event. Suitable for display to the user but a more accurate duration **shall** be determined using the EIT or DVB locator. |
| ContentVersion | The version of the associated content. This value **shall** be represented as a two character hex string. The value will increment whenever the content is updated, modulo 0xFF. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| ExpiryTime | If present, this specific piece of pushed content will expire at the indicated time and may be removed from the receiver depending on user preferences, see section 12.9.8. If not present, the content is playable indefinitely as long as the recording remains in the PVR. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| ActivationTime | This value **shall** define the earliest time at which a user may view the associated content (embargo date/time), see section 12.9.7. If this element is not present then the content is viewable immediately. *Optional to broadcast*. |

*Table 12.42 NorDig BRL Push Download Program Type*

12.9.17.5 ProgramInformation Type

| **ProgramInformation** | **Profile** |
|---|---|
| @ProgramId | A CRID identifying the content to which this ProgramInformation relates. |
| @lang | A lang attribute may be included to indicate the language used in any textual descriptions contained in this fragment and **shall** override a language set by the TVAMain fragment. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| **BasicDescription** | |
| Title | Title of the program. The maximum length of the title **shall** be 40 characters. |
| Synopsis | A short description of the event. *Optional to broadcast*. |
| TVAParentalGuidance | A parental rating code for the programme, defined as an TV-Anytime extension to the MPEG-7 datatype, ParentalGuidanceType (see clause 9.2.3 of ISO/IEC 15938-5 for a detailed specification). *Optional to broadcast*<br>The Parental Guidance when used **shall** include a *MinimumAge* (a non negative integer), which minimum suitable viewing age. Used values are 0 and 3-18 years. 0 refers to suitable for all ages. (*MinimumAge* equal to DVB parental rating descriptor's *rating* minus 3).<br>ParentalGuidance's *Region* refers to *Country* in NorDig, ie MPEG7 countryCode, using the 3-character code in accordance with ISO 3166-1. ParentalGuidance's *Region* is used when there is difference of parental rating (*MinimumAge*) between coverage countries. When the *Region* is not specified, then the parental guidance applies for all countries (*ie then it is optional to broadcast Region inside the TVAParentalGuidance)*. |

*Table 12.43 NorDig BRL Program Information Type*

# 13 Navigator

### 13.1 General

The NorDig IRD **shall** implement a basic Navigator, which provides user access to system information, and allows the user to control the operation of the IRD. The Navigator is by definition part of the system software. A minimum functionality is required as specified below.

The Navigator **shall** include a service list function and a basic Event Schedule Guide (ESG), see ETSI EN 300 468 [13]. The Navigator **shall** also initiate bootloading, as described in chapter 10.

The Navigator **shall** support the Nordic and English languages.

### 13.2 Service List

#### 13.2.1 Service List Requirements

##### 13.2.1.1 Service List Requirements for IRDs, except for IP-based front-end

The NorDig IRD **shall** maintain a service list based on SI-information. The NorDig IRD identifies a service uniquely through the combination of original_network_id, transport_stream_id and service_id. (The broadcaster however **shall** make services uniquely identified in the broadcast through the combination of only original_network_id and service_id).

The service list **shall** include the services and should also include the corresponding network names. The service list can be completely updated by the user by initiating the tuning/scanning procedure(s) for the connected tuners (see section 3.1.2). The corresponding part of the service list **shall** be updated within 1 second after reception of an updated SI table; updates should be made each time the NorDig IRD is switched from active to standby and **shall** be made each time the NorDig IRD is switched from standby to active.

The IRD **shall** build up different sections inside one common service list (recommended) or build up several service lists, one for each different service category as the default IRD service list(s). Minimum three different sections/lists **shall** be supported for three different categories of service_types and they are ‘TV’, ‘Radio’ and ‘Data’/’other’ services, (see 12.1.5 for service categories).

Whenever two or more services within same category are allocated to the same logical_channel_number, the NorDig HD IRD **shall** first prioritise the advanced codec services as stated in Table 12.1 above (see chapter 12.1.4 for priority between different services within same service category).

The service list **shall** be displayed to the user. The user **shall** be able to select a service from the displayed service list. The selected service **shall** appear immediately (see section 11.4).

The IRD should provide functionality for the viewer to build up additional personal service lists with the viewer’s own preferred services (like mixed service_type) and own preferred order or manually re-order the default service list(s). If any network operator makes changes in his part of the service list, the NorDig should place new entries at the end of the corresponding part of the user service list.

The information in the descriptors specified in Table 13.1 and Table 13.2 **shall** be displayed. The original network operator name may be omitted in case only one network is available.

##### 13.2.1.2 Service List Requirements for IRDs with IP-based front-end

NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-end **shall** support the Service Discovery mechanism specified in ETSI TS 102 034 [29] and the additions specified in section 13.4.

Based upon this mechanism, NorDig IRDs with IP-based front-end **shall** be able to generate and maintain a service list of all available services at any time.

### 13.2.2 Service list functions for the Network Information Table (NIT)

The NorDig IRD **shall** (1) make use of the descriptors listed in Table 13.1 in all NIT_actual (the transport stream the NorDig IRD is tuned to) and NIT_other (other transport stream) tables available in order to update the service list (system delivery data, number of transport streams, logic channel number etc).

Note 1: NorDig IRDs with a terrestrial front-end **shall** be able to install and update the service list components even if the transport stream does not contain the terrestrial_ delivery_ system_descriptor in the NIT_actual and the NIT_other streams (NIT_actual: the transport stream the IRD is tuned to. NIT_other: other transport stream).

NorDig IRDs with a terrestrial front-end dedicated for stationary reception may receive TS including NIT_actual and NIT_other tables. Due to the nature of the terrestrial networks all the transport streams listed in the NIT_other can be impossible to be received. Therefore, before using the information in NIT_other tables, carefulness **shall** be taken.

NorDig IRDs with a terrestrial front-end dedicated for mobile and portable reception may also receive TS including NIT_actual and NIT_other tables. In that case information in NIT_other tables may have informative background use for faster service acquisition when receiver is moved from one coverage area to another coverage area.

NorDig IRDs with a IP-based front-end: Not relevant. See Annex C

A cable NorDig IRD should provide functionality for fast installation of services by typing the network_ID into the receiver. In such a case, the IRD **shall** process only that specific NIT (actual and other) table (with corresponding network_ID) from current/actual transport stream and only install/display services listed in that table's service_list_descriptors.

A Navigator **shall** never display services that the IRD is not able to receive or decode except for de-scrambling (i.e. a pure satellite IRD **shall** not display services which are described in NIT_other tables for secondary cable networks).

A NorDig IRD **shall** not install, be able to reach or display services or networks with original_network_ID and/or network_ID which are marked as 'private_temporary_use' as defined in ETSI ETR 162 [21] (i.e. an original_network_ID 0xFF00 – 0xFFFF and/or network_ID 0xFF01 – 0xFFFF). (This descriptor may be used by broadcasters to avoid confusing consumers with (shorter) test and demonstration transmissions).

Services that are not listed in NorDig Logic_channel_descriptor, **shall** be displayed in the service list(s) and **shall** be located last in the list (for that service_type).

| NIT descriptors |
|---|
| Network_name_descriptor |
| Satellite_delivery_system_descriptor |
| S2_satellite_delivery_system_descriptor |
| S2X_satellite_delivery_system_descriptor (1) |
| Cable_delivery_system_descriptor |
| Terrestrial_delivery_system_descriptor |
| T2_delivery_system_descriptor |
| Service_list_descriptor |
| (NorDig) Logic_channel_descriptor |
| Note 1: Only mandatory for satellite NorDig HEVC IRDs that support DVB-S2X |

*Table 13.1 NIT descriptors*

#### 13.2.3 Service List functions for the Service Description Table (SDT)

The IRD **shall** (1) use the descriptors listed in table 13.2 from both SDT_actual and SDT_other tables to update the service list (service names etc.).

| Note 1: Not relevant for NorDig IP IRD. See Annex C |
|---|

| SDT descriptors |
|---|
| Service_descriptor |
| CA_identifier_descriptor |

*Table 13.2 SDT descriptors*

#### 13.2.4 Network Evolution and Service Changes

The NorDig IRD **shall** (1) dynamically update the Service List whenever changes occur in the NIT and SDT tables (i.e. typically handling the version numbers of the tables).

Initiation of update in the Service List that the IRD is not able to perform in the 'background' without disturbances or user action/confirmation, **shall** (only) be made after manual power up or after user selection to an affected service/transport stream (e.g. when re-scanning is needed). Initiation of update in the Service List for services signaled as invisible should not require action/confirmation from user, (see section 12.2.9 NorDig private; Logic_Channel_descriptor (LCD) for invisible services).

| Note 1: For NorDig IP IRDs this funtion is handled by updating the Service Provider Discovery Information and the DVB-IP ServiceOffering Records. The version_number **shall** be incremented whenever the content of these records changes, hence the NorDig IP IRD **shall** continuously monitor the version_number. |
|---|

### *13.3 Event Schedule Guide (ESG)*

The Event Schedule Guide (ESG) is part of the Navigator in the IRD and presents program event information for the user about its installed services via a Graphical User Interface (GUI) as defined by the IRD manufacturer.

#### 13.3.1 ESG Requirements

##### 13.3.1.1 ESG and length

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display an ESG for the user with a minimum of eight days (1) of schedule data, defined as whole days from present day and ahead according to ETSI EN 300 468 [13]. The ESG **shall** be based on the information from the EIT tables, see section 12.4 and TSI EN 300 468 [13].

| Comment: Eight days of schedule data for the services within one NorDig network (original network) consists of typically of up to 2-4 MB of data per language. |
|---|

| Note 1: Support for EIT schedule is recommended (optional) for NorDig IRDs with IP-based Front-end |
|---|

##### 13.3.1.2 Proper handling of EIT data

The NorDig IRD **shall** maintain proper behaviour in case of the incoming event information data for the services exceeds the available free memory for the ESG and not affect the IRD's basic service decoding and navigation.

If the NorDig IRD's memory for the ESG is exceeded, then the NorDig IRD **shall** prioritize the event information nearest in time and first reduce the data most far ahead in time for all service, for example via using EIT table filtering (instead of reducing service by service). (If the user has made personalized

favourite service list consisting of a subset of available services, then the NorDig IRD should first priorities favourite services and then events most nearest in time).

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to handle situations when the EIT is not present.

#### 13.3.1.3 ESG performance

The NorDig IRD **shall** maintain the full ESG up to date and be able to display the ESG within 10 seconds after selection, even if not all EIT sections have been received (in which case gaps may occur in timeline for some services). The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to present the ESG regardless of recording status (i.e. while recording or timeshifting an event, it **shall** be possible to present the ESG).

The NorDig IRD should cache EIT data during normal service viewing to speed up time to present a full ESG after selection.

The ESG **shall** be non-discriminatory and display all services on an equal basis.

The ESG **shall** process and display the relevant content of the following tables (including start-time, end-time/duration and content of all descriptors specified below in 13.3.2 and 13.3.3).

### 13.3.2 Event Information Table (EIT)

NorDig IRD **shall** make use of the EIT p/f and schedules tables from both EIT_actual and EIT_other tables.

| Event descriptors | EIT p/f | EIT sch |
|---|---|---|
| Short_event_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Extended_event_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Component_descriptor | M | O |
| Content_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| Parental_rating_descriptor | M | M (1) |
| CA_identifier_descriptor (optional) | O | O |
| Content_identifier_descriptor | M (2) | M (2) |

*Table 13.3 EIT descriptors*

| |
|---|
| Note 1: EIT schedule is optional for NorDig IRDs with IP-based Front-end.<br>Note 2: NorDig PVR only. |

#### 13.3.2.1 Dynamic update of EIT data

The EIT data **shall** be treated as dynamic information which means that the EIT data is often updated by the broadcaster several times during a day, for example

- The description of events may be changed/updated from when the event was first "published"/broadcasted,
- Some events may be re-scheduled,
- Past events from current day may be removed from broadcast etc.

As factory default, the NorDig IRD **shall** continuously monitor and update the ESG without user request to update (for example by monitoring the tables' version ids). Information in the ESG **shall** be updated within 10 second after reception of the updated tables.

#### 13.3.2.2 Multiple languages in EIT data

Some NorDig networks transmit EIT data in multiple languages; the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display the EIT data from chosen language (according to IRD's user preferences) based on for example the subtitling language or menu language settings.

If the IRD's user preference language settings are not matching any of the languages in the incoming EIT stream, then the NorDig IRD should present EIT information from one of the incoming EIT languages. Which language to select is up to the IRD manufacturer.

#### 13.3.2.3 Time periods with no EIT data or missing EIT data

If services have gaps in the EIT data or if services have no or missing EIT data the ESG **shall** not display an error message (i.e. it **shall** not give the impression for the user that IRD or the EIT data is faulty), instead the text information field should stay empty or display informative text (like "*No event information")*, see recommendation of informative text in Annex F. A gap in the EIT data refers here to a gap in time between one event ends (start_time + duration) to the next event starts (start_time) for a service.

An example could be that when the IRD is still caching the EIT data (e.g. after startup) do not display any text information for events and services that are missing EIT data (typically due to that the IRD has yet not received that EIT data) and after a reasonable long time of caching (for example after analysing last_section_number etc) for missing EIT data then display informative text.

#### 13.3.2.4 Parental Control from EIT data

*The parental rating descriptor is used to give a rating of programme events based on age or other criteria and is used to prevent children from viewing unsuitable programme events. Parental rating may differ from one country to another, according with DVB SI Guidelines (ETSI TS 101 211 [25]). The typically case is that parental rating is dynamic and varies from one program event to another for one service.*

The NorDig IRD **shall** provide a parental rating functionality that, when enabled, blanks video and mutes sound out of the IRD whenever the incoming rating value in the parental rating descriptor of the EIT data of current viewed programme event (present event) is higher than IRD's user setting. The user **shall** be able to enable and disable the parental functionality and when enabled to configure a minimum age/level (in years). It should make use of 4 digits pin code or similar to access and change settings (a technique that prevent easy access for a child). See section 16 for factory default user preference settings.

The IRD may/should in addition offer the viewer a fast way of temporary disable blanking and muting of a service with higher rating than settings via user entering pin code or similar. This temporary disable of parental rating should continue as long as IRD stays on selected service and go back to user preference settings after change of service or re-start of IRD.

The IRD should start/(stop) its blanking video and muting audio within 1 second after reception of selected service's present event information containing parental rating higher/(lower) than its user settings but **shall** at least within 10 seconds react after reception of parental rating information in the EIT data.

For NorDig PVR see also section 14.3.9 Full Service Recording and section 14.4.5 Full service playback.

#### 13.3.2.5 ESG presentation filtering of EIT data

The NorDig IRD should provide a function which allows the user to filter events in the ESG with the same content type (from content descriptor), events belonging to the same series (from content identifier descriptor), recommended events referred to by an event and to search events using keywords (from description).

### 13.3.3 Time and Date Table (TDT) and Time Offset Table (TOT)

The ESG **shall** display correct event times as conveyed by the TDT, adjusted by the offset relayed in the TOT and using the country name selected by the user.

| Time Offset Table |
|---|
| Local_time_offset_descriptor |

*Table 13.4 TOT descriptors*

| |
|---|
| Note: TDT contains UTC time, but no descriptors. |

Additional requirements for NorDig PVRs (NorDig PVR only):

The ESG **shall** display all events using the correct time offset applicable at the event start time and date signalled in the EIT. The offset applied to the events UTC time **shall** be determined first on time of booking and subsequently updated if there is a new next_time_offset received. If there is more than one time_offset_section, ESG **shall** use the section that is applicable for event start time and date, see illustrative example in fig 13.1.

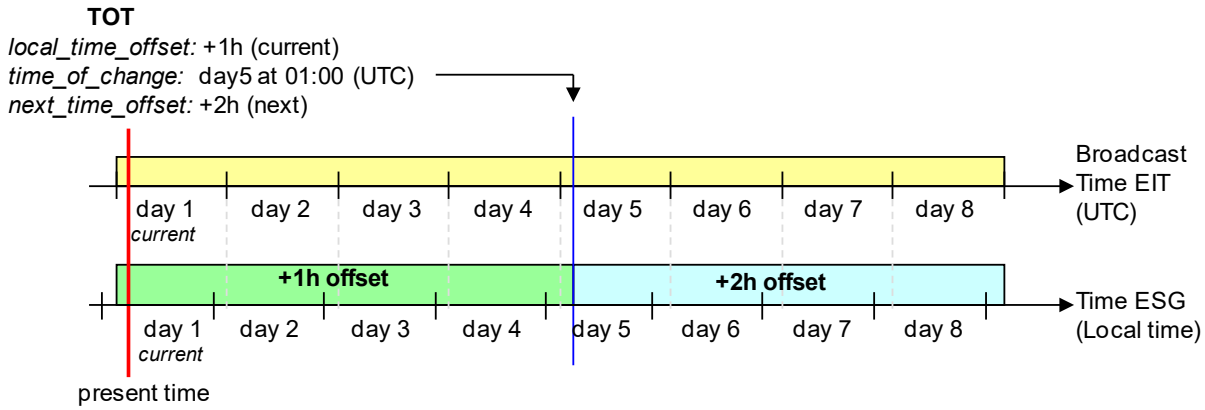



*Figure 13.1 Example of time displayed via the ESG when the broadcast time information includes a shift from one to two hours time offset*

### 13.4 Service Discovery and Selection for IRDs with IP-based front-end

| |
|---|
| Comment: NorDig has specified a set of requirements for Service Discovery and Selection for IRDs with IP-based front-ends, based on ETSI TS 102 034 [29]. This text is currently suspended, because it is not used in Nordic networks that carry IPTV signals; service selection and discovery in these networks are all based on browser technology. A revised specification for SD&S, based on use of browser technology is being considered by NorDig |

### 13.5 User ~~Interface~~Information (UI) for~~about~~ service components (audio and subtitling)

#### 13.5.1 UI for Audio information

For services with multiple audio streams (PIDs), or in case of multiple NGA Preselections (1), the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display information about available incoming audio streams / NGA Preselections (1), for the user to temporarily select one audio stream / NGA Preselection (1), (see section 6.5 and 6.11.3.4 and 6.14.2).

The NorDig IRD **shall** display at least the following information about the currently available audio streams as (listed in the PMT for the currently selected service):

- Audio Language (if available)
- Audio Type:
  - it **shall** be possible for the user to differentiate available supplementary audio stream(s) from Normal audio stream(s) even when these have the same language
  - in case of NGA (1): it shall be possible for the user to differentiate available preselections even when these have the same language; this includes preselections for accessibility services (audio description, spoken subtitles and/or dialogue enhancement)
- Incoming Audio format (stereo/multichannel)

This can for example be done via wordings and/or symbols etc. (As stated in section 6.11.6 'Receiver mixing' audio **shall** not be decoded on its own).

The NorDig IRD should also display information about:

- Incoming audio stream type (audio codec)
- In case of NGA (1), available textual descriptions about each currently available preselection (as signaled by the audio_preselection_descriptor and message descriptor).

The NorDig IRD should for currently selected audio also display information about:

- Outgoing audio format (stereo/multichannel) Outgoing Audio stream type (uncompressed or bitstream, e.g., DTS, Dolby Digital (AC-3), etc.)

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Only applicable/mandatory for Nordig HEVC IRD. |

#### 13.5.2 UI for Subtitling information

*The NorDig IRD first automatically selects subtitling stream/PID if several subtitling streams are available (DVB Subtitling stream/PID prior over EBU Teletext subtitling, see section 7.1).*

The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display information about different incoming subtitling pages within the selected subtitle stream/PID, for the user to be able to temporary select subtitling page or disable displaying subtitling. Then NorDig IRD **shall** be able to display following information about the subtitling:

- Subtitle language
- Subtitling type (it **shall** be possible for the user to differentiate available hearing impaired/hard of hearing subtitling pages from subtitling page(s) even when these have same language)

### *13.6 Accessibility menus and settings*

#### 13.6.1 Accessibility settings

The NorDig IRD should support easy access to settings for Accessibility Services by:

- Ensuring that Accessibility settings are made available using a minimum number of user interaction steps (e.g. by use of dedicated remote control buttons),
- Grouping Accessibility settings together within the IRD's user interface

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Only applicable/mandatory for Nordig HEVC IRD. |

#### 13.6.2 Talking menus (optional)

*Talking menus refers here to Text-to-Speech functionality in the IRD that use speech synthesis that typically reads the IRD's UI menus etc, this is to improve usage for blind or partially sighted users.*

The NorDig IRD is recommended to support Text-to-Speech functionality and that it is implemented according with IEC 62731 [78]. If supported, then the NorDig IRD **shall** be able to enable and disable this Text-to-Speech feature see 16.2 and see chapter 16.4 for the IRD's factory default setting.

# 14 NorDig PVR feature requirements (NorDig PVR only)

## 14.1 Introduction - PVR

This chapter (together with PVR-related requirements specified in chapter 12 and section 13.3) specifies the minimum requirements for a NorDig PVR, which may record live services (TV, radio etc) in persistent memory (like HDD) for later playback, (even if the IRD has been completely powered off between the recording and the playback).

A NorDig PVR is a recordable IRD that fulfils all mandatory requirements specified in this chapter 14 (and relevant part in chapter 12 and 13), which among other things includes support for series recording, accurate recording, split recording etc. *(A NorDig IRD with some recording capability but which do not meet all mandatory NorDig PVR requirements is just a "NorDig IRD with recording capability").*

NorDig recordable iDTVs that can not fulfil the requirements for Simultaneous Recording (section 14.3.8), is anyway recommended to support the other NorDig PVR requirements (like series recording, accurate recording, split recording, playback features etc).

Programming a recording (or booking) in the PVR refers to the user action of making a booking to record a live event, series and/or other broadcast content, either to be scheduled in the future or for immediately recording.

## 14.2 General - PVR

### 14.2.1 Recording File System

The NorDig PVR **shall** at all times keep a file system of the PVR's recordings and make them available upon request for the user to select and playback.

The user **shall** be able to list the recordings as:

- all recordings, as ordered by date&time

The user should be able to list the recordings as:

- all series (where all episodes of a series are group into same item in the list) and all non-series recordings
- all episodes of a specific series

For all recordings that have been programmed via the ESG or EPG, each recorded item in the NorDig PVR's list of recordings **shall** display for the user at least information about the recorded event's date of recording and event_name extracted from EIT data during the recording. If no event information is available for a specific recording, then the service_name **shall** be used. For manual recording that span several events (excluding split events, see below), it is recommended to use the service_name instead.

In addition, the NorDig PVR's list of recordings should display information about the item's time and duration of the recording and the description taken from the EIT (preferably all EIT data for the event, like short and extended description, etc). The description of the event (preferably from the EIT p/f data) could typically be presented when highlighting the recorded item in the list of recordings.

Due to the latency within all transmission of EIT data, it is recommended to wait 1 minute after the event's start_time or until the event's running status has become 'running' before acquire the event's EIT data (if EIT p/f is used).

The time and date in the list of recordings **shall** use the local time offset (based on the user's preferences settings), as applicable at the time of recording.

A NorDig PVR with IP front-end may use equivalent data to EIT data to display information about recorded items, if no EIT data is available inside the IP Network (as specified by the Operator).

### 14.2.2 Recording capacity

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to indicate its momentary available recording capacity. The basis for the indication **shall** be explained in the instruction manual and should be in terms of capacity (e.g. GB), percentage or time (e.g. hours). (PVRs should consider when indicating available capacity in terms of time that many services often use variable bitrate and that the capacity will vary between different services types, like SDTV, HDTV, radio etc)

The Manufacture **shall** clearly state the recording capacity for the NorDig PVR in marketing specification and in the instruction manual. It **shall** as a minimum be specified in terms of bytes (like GigaByte, GB etc).

### 14.2.3 Deletion of recordings

The user **shall** be able to manually delete any recorded event in the NorDig PVR by deleting one recording at the time. The user should be able to manually delete all recorded events in the NorDig PVR. The user should be able to manually delete all recorded events belong to the same Series in the NorDig PVR.

The NorDig PVR **shall** have a mode (set as factory default) where the NorDig PVR **shall** ask for user confirmation before deletion of recordings (i.e. the NorDig PVR may in addition have alternative mode where the NorDig PVR will delete recordings without any extra confirmation).

### 14.2.4 Failed and incomplete recordings

The NorDig PVR **shall** have a mechanism for informing the user of failed or incomplete (partial) recordings. For incomplete (partial) recordings it should inform the user how much of the booked event has not been successfully recorded.

### 14.2.5 Save only the last number of episodes

The NorDig PVR should be able to let the user set the PVR to save/keep a configurable number of the latest events (episodes) within a Series. If the user has set the NorDig PVR to keep a specific number of events in a series and the NorDig PVR has recorded more, then the NorDig PVR **shall** automatically remove the “oldest” event (without any additional user confirmation).

The criteria to decide which event is the “oldest” within a Series, **shall** be based on which event has the lowest TVA programme CRID value. If the NorDig PVR can not easily decide which event that has the lowest TVA programme CRID value (for example due to lack of digits inside the TVA programme CRID), then the PVR **shall** keep all recordings from that Series.

### 14.2.6 File system intact after update

The NorDig PVR’s file systems of recorded events **shall** be intact after

- updating of the PVR IRD’s System Software and/or
- updating of CA system and/or
- re-installation or update of installed services

### 14.2.7 Limitations in local storage, interfaces, extraction and removable media for recordings

Some of the broadcasted content is signalled as protected, for example via the CA-system, copyright and/or copy protection signalling as specified by the relevant network/CA operator.

The requirements for external interfaces of recordings, internal storage, limitation for extraction of protected content and for removable media for the NorDig PVR and other NorDig recordable IRDs are specified by the relevant network/CA operator.

For protected content (unless otherwise specified by the relevant network/Operator), it **shall** not be possible to extract or output content from the NorDig PVR and other NorDig recordable IRDs in un-protected format, therefore all recordings **shall** be stored in a protected format.

Some networks and operators require local scrambling for all recording, some other allows either local scrambling or original DVB scrambling etc.

NorDig PVRs' and other NorDig recordable IRDs using standardised removable media, such as DVD or Blu-ray for recording of protected content **shall** downscale any content with higher resolution than SD (i.e. higher than 720x576i25 or 960x540p50) to SD resolution (maximum 720x576 or 960x540) before storing it to the removable media. Content with HD resolution or higher may be recorded in its original resolution if the recording retains the original broadcast scrambling or any other local device scrambling approved by the Network/Operator. The downscaling should be made as specified in 5.11.

### 14.2.8 Disk management / de-fragmentation

The NorDig PVR **shall** have appropriate disk management (including de-fragementation handling for Hard Disk Drive based PVRs) to minimise need for re-formatting disk during its lifetime.

### 14.2.9 Safe margins

The NorDig PVR should have the possibility to add extra recording time before and after the event's scheduled time, as a safe margin. Typically, this could be done as a pre-defined default user preference setting value, configurable by the user via the user settings.

### 14.2.10 NorDig Record Lists functionality

This NorDig Broadcast Record List (BRL) is optional for NorDig IRDs/PVRs to support, but if supported then all specified requirements for this NorDig Broadcast Record List feature in this document (recording, playback, management, presentation etc) **shall** be supported.

#### 14.2.10.1 Recording capacity and disk management for Record Lists

For the avoidance of doubt, there are no additional requirements on recording capacity and disk space management specific to Broadcast Record List.

#### 14.2.10.2 Broadcast Record List Entry Point

NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** provide a static entry point for displaying the available broadcast record lists for the user, e.g. through a native User Interface menu.

#### 14.2.10.3 Presentation of Broadcast Record Lists

NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** have a means to present all Broadcast Record Lists in the default broadcast record list group (see section 12.9.6). NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** not present broadcast record lists from groups with a different root unless specifically recognised.

NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** only display broadcast record lists that are:

- included in the last received version of the metadata, and
- lists to which the user is currently subscribed, even when that list is no longer in the metadata, subject to the rules in 14.3.20.10.

It is possible that the metadata associated with a broadcast record list will change from time to time. When presenting broadcast record lists, the NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** always present the last received metadata. The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** present at least the title and synopsis of each broadcast record list.

#### 14.2.10.4 Broadcast Record List Subscription and Un-subscription

Users **shall** be able to subscribe to any broadcast record list (as profiled by section 14.2.10.3) and unsubscribe from any previously subscribed broadcast record list. Lists that are currently subscribed to **shall** be identified.

#### 14.2.10.5 Presentation of Future scheduled BRL Recordings

The NorDig PVR supporting BRL should mark events in ESG and EPG that are booked/schedule to be recorded in the future that is part of any active Records Lists the PVR currently subscribed to.

#### 14.2.10.6 Presentation of Acquired BRL Recordings

The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** have a means to present a list of available recordings acquired using the broadcast record list functionality. The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** have a means to present the title and synopsis for all such recordings. It is strongly recommended that NorDig PVR supporting BRL indicate to the user the subscribed broadcast record list(s) in which the acquired event was contained at the time of recording.

The user should be able to list the BRL recordings as:

- only all recordings of a specific Record List
- only all recordings from a BRL group

To avoid confusing viewers since for example BRL recordings may automatically be deleted (via expiry date) or embargoed, a PVR may have to different entry points for listing manual set (single or series) recordings compared to BRL recodings.

If the event has an expiry time, information regarding expiry of that recording **shall** be available. Recordings that have passed their mandatory expiry time (see 14.2.10.9) **shall** be clearly identified as expired and **shall** not be playable.

If the event has an embargo time (see 14.2.10.8), information regarding the embargo time **shall** be available, unless the embargo time has passed.

#### 14.2.10.7 Limitations for External Media

In addition to any content management signalling and what is specified in NorDig section 14.2.7, storage of broadcast record list content to optical or other removable media **shall** be permissible provided that:

- any embargo time has passed and
- the content is not signalled with a mandatory expiry time

#### 14.2.10.8 Management of Embargoed Content

For content with ActivationTime, until this date and time is reached the recorded content **shall** not be playable although associated metadata (synopsis etc.) may be displayed if required.

The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** use the broadcast time as the underlying timebase to determine whether the embargo time has passed.

For acquired recordings with ActivationTime that are (or have been) listed in multiple Record Lists that the PVR is subscribing to, the one with the latest ActivationTime **shall** be used for the embargo.

#### 14.2.10.9 Management of Content Expiry

For recorded content initiated by the Broadcast Record Lists and which includes a ExpiresTime element, (applicable for both “visible” scheduled events in EIT and for “non-visible” off-scheduled events), the ExpiresTime **shall** define the date and time after which the associated instance of the content **shall** no longer be playable by the user (ie recording **shall** be deleted), persistent memory used for the recording **shall** be released and the recorded event **shall** no longer be listed for the user be among available recordings.

The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** be able to display the time of when the recorded content will expire, either in absolute time or in relative time (like "tomorrow").

The NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** use the broadcast time as the underlying timebase to determine whether the expiry time has passed.

For acquired recordings with ExpiresTime that are (or have been) listed in multiple Record Lists that the PVR is subscribing to, the one with the earliest ExpiresTime **shall** be used to determine when the content **shall** no longer be playable by the user.

## *14.3 PVR Recording*

### 14.3.1 General PVR recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** as a minimum support recording up to 20 Mbps per (SD/576i) service and **shall** as a minimum support recording up to 30 Mbps per (HD/1080i/720p) service. The NorDig HEVC PVR **shall** in addition as a minimum support recording up to 25 Mbps per (Full HD/1080p) service and **shall** as a minimum support recording up to 45 Mbps per (UHD/2160p) service.

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to record all supported service types (TV, radio etc) and its components (as described in 14.3.9).

On-screen informational messages or menus generated by the NorDig PVR **shall** not be recorded with the programme content.

### 14.3.2 ESG/EPG recording programming

The NorDig PVR **shall** make it possible for the user to select individual events and series to be recorded from the ESG or EPG display (based on information from EIT data).

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to make a booking from the ESG/EPG and later record this event both for events that do not include any CRID (i.e. only based on service and event_id) and events that include CRID's.

The selected event(s) for recording **shall** be marked as selected for recording on the ESG and EPG display.

If the user selects an event for recording from the ESG/EPG which has the same programme CRID value as an earlier recording within the NorDig PVR list of recordings, the NorDig PVR **shall** inform the user at the time of booking that this new selected event might already have been recorded and offer the option for the user to record anyway or not (1). The NorDig PVR should display information about this earlier recording (like the event name, date of recording and description).

### 14.3.3 Series recording

All events that have the same series CRID belongs to the same Series. An individual event inside a Series is referenced here as an Episode. (For definition of CRID see section 12.4.6.2).

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to record a complete Series via the CRID.

The NorDig PVR **shall** store and track series CRIDs that are programmed for recording for up to 91 days between occurrences in EIT schedule. To allow broadcasters to reuse a series CRID for a different editorial concept, the NorDig PVR **shall** discard any series CRIDs not seen in EIT for 91 days.

The display of programmes selected for recording **shall** include an indication if the programme is included as a consequence of being one of a series.

The IRD should be aware that the default authority may be changed over time (for example a service might have default authority added in SDT), the NorDig PVR should automatically update its stored default authorities (not only during installation).

#### 14.3.3.1 Series, record all episodes

The NorDig PVR **shall** support recording of all episodes of a specific series via series CRID's in the broadcast.

It **shall** be possible from ESG/EPG to program the NorDig PVR to record a series of events. The NorDig PVR **shall** indicate in the ESG/EPG that an event is part of a series. The NorDig PVR **shall**, if the user selects to record the event that belongs to a series, request the user what to record:

1. Only the single event selected.
2. Several or All events (episodes) of the series

#### 14.3.3.2 Series, record limited number of episodes for a series

The NorDig PVR should support recording of a (limited) number of episodes of a specific series via series tagging in the broadcast. The limitation should either be a period of time or a number of episodes.

#### 14.3.3.3 Series, only one instance/copy of each episode

The NorDig PVR should support the feature to only record one instance/copy of each episode in a series for series recording (to handle re-runs).

### 14.3.4 Split recordings

A programme may consist of multiple EIT events within the same service or over several services. For example, a film might be divided into two parts/blocks interrupted by a news programme in the middle (see Figure 14.1 A) or a longer sport event might be split into several parts/blocks over several services, (see Figure 14.1 B).

Signalling carried in the SI allows the PVR to identify and record all the events containing the parts of a single programme. A "split programme" is a single piece of content which comprises of two or more EIT events having the same CRID and IMI value with the gap from the scheduled end time (start_time plus duration) to the scheduled start time of any two of those events is less than 3 hours (see section 12.4.5).

The NorDig PVR **shall** consider a split programme to be segments of a single item of content. When selecting a split programme for recording, the NorDig PVR **shall** select and record all constituent events so that the complete programme content is recorded.

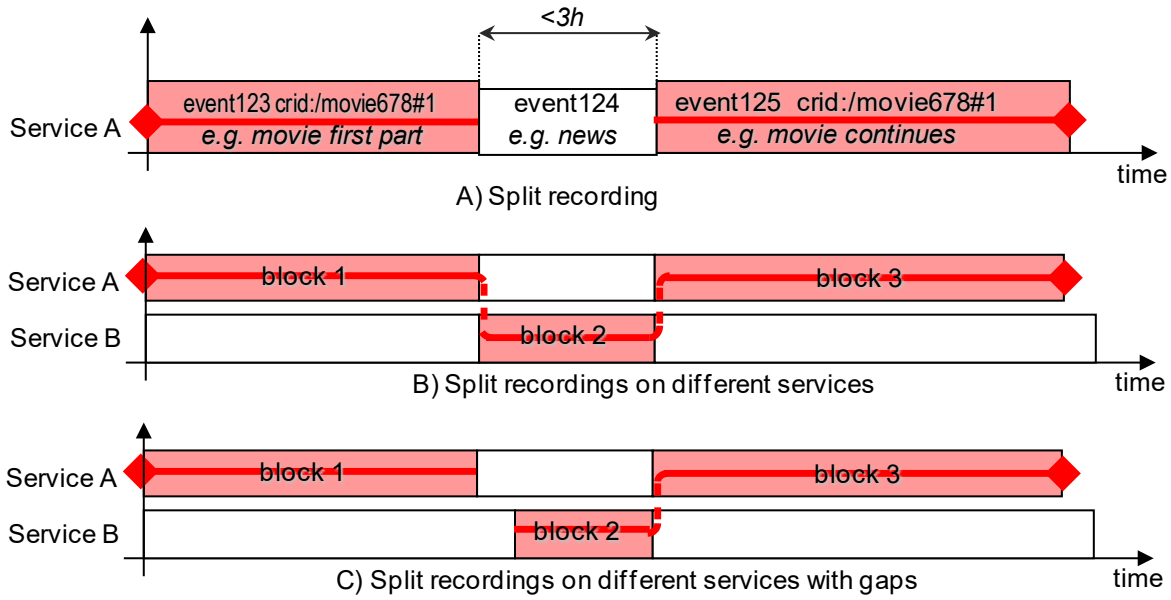


*Figure 14.1 (Illustration) Handling of split recordings for the NorDig PVR. Split programme events (events with the same CRID value that are broadcast close in time to each others)* ***shall*** *be recorded with one and the same programming by the NorDig PVR.*

*A) max gap time between events with the same programme CRID value that* ***shall*** *still be treated to belong to the same programme for recording.*
*B) Split programme over several services.*
*C) Split programme with gap and over several services*

There are cases where a NorDig PVR may during the time of programming a recording only see a single event with the booked CRID and IMI combination (for example initially only the first part/block of the split programme has so far been included in the EIT). The NorDig PVR **shall** continue to monitor the EIT for additional events with the same CRID and IMI combination and include them to the selected recording.

In case of overlap between the split events and if the NorDig PVR has limitation in recording capacity when back-to-back recording, then the NorDig PVR **shall** first finalise recording of the first part/event of the split programme (according to the events start time and duration) before starting recording the next part of the split programme, this is the same behaviour as back-to-back recordings.

During the lifecycle of EIT schedule broadcasters may change programmes from split to single or vice versa.

In the NorDig PVR split recordings **shall** clearly be marked in the list of recordings as constituent parts belonging to the same programme, for example as one and the same entity or similar (1). It **shall** be enough to select only one entity from the file list of recording to get a playback of the complete programme (including all its all constituent events).

### 14.3.5 Recommended events

When the event selected has one or more recommendation(s) associated with it (signalised from original event with crid_type 0x03), the NorDig PVR should offer the option to record the recommendations (programme or series) as well as the selected programme or series.

Once selected, the appropriate recommended event(s) **shall** also be marked as selected to be recorded on the EPG display.

The recommended event(s) may also have recommendation(s) of its own. When user chooses to select to include the recommendation(s) into the recording, the NorDig PVR **shall** not include more than the original event's recommendation(s) (i.e. the NorDig PVR **shall** not follow more than the original event's initial recommendation and a recommendation should not be used to create a linked list of events to be recorded).

### 14.3.6 Alternative instance

When scheduled recordings overlap, the NorDig PVR should use the alternate instance information (1), when provided, to record one or more of the programmes at their alternate times thereby minimising the conflict, subject to any device limitations (e.g. available space).

Where a programme is repeated in its entirety a broadcaster may assign the same programme CRID to both EIT events. The NorDig PVR should detect an alternative instance of a programme (as when two events have same programme CRID). This can be used to assist in resolution of booking conflicts. Where alternate instances belong to the same series this allows the NorDig PVR to only record a single showing of each episode, usually the first.

### 14.3.7 Accurate Recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** determine the timing of the recording through monitoring of the EITschedule and EIT present/following information.

The NorDig PVR **shall** record at least for the duration where the event ID in the EIT present table matches the event ID of the event selected from the EIT schedule to a precision of 10 Seconds, unless there is a conflict with another recording event.

The NorDig PVR may monitor the running status of the event in EIT present table and record only that part where the running status is set as running. (Note as specified in DVB SI Guidelines ETSI TS101 211 [25], 'undefined' running status in EIT present table **shall** treat the present event as running).

Where the Event ID is signalled in EIT present table early (in advance of the schedule start_time) the NorDig PVR **shall** start recording. As a minimum, the NorDig PVR **shall** handle early starts of at least 10 minutes, provided there are no other recordings in progress.

The NorDig PVR **shall** monitor the EIT schedule and EIT present/following for updates to the start time and duration such that any event will be captured should the schedule be updated no later than 2 minutes prior to the current scheduled time of broadcast.

Where the Event ID does not appear within EITp/f (in neither the present nor following tables) within the expected schedule time and duration the NorDig PVR should record according to the scheduled start time and duration. If the event id appears in the EIT following table at the scheduled start time, it means that the event is delayed and the NorDig PVR should wait with the start of the recording until the event ID appears in the EIT present table.

The duration of the recording **shall** be changed even if the EITp/f is updated after the start time has elapsed, until the event is no longer present in the EIT present table.

If the NorDig PVR starts to record at the expected scheduled start time even if the event does not appear within EITp/f, the recording **shall** be considered as incomplete.

Where there is a loss of signal or EIT present table is no longer being received, the NorDig PVR will continue to record at least until the end time of the event (defined by start_time plus duration) in the last received EITp/f. If the signal is restored the NorDig PVR will continue to record according to its normal operation.

In standby mode (where the NorDig PVR IRD is not decoding any transport stream) the NorDig PVR **shall** have the capability to power on automatically twice per day to update the EIT and scheduled recordings. There may be an option to amend the time of power on or to switch off the facility as a user option, but factory default for this **shall** be that it is on.

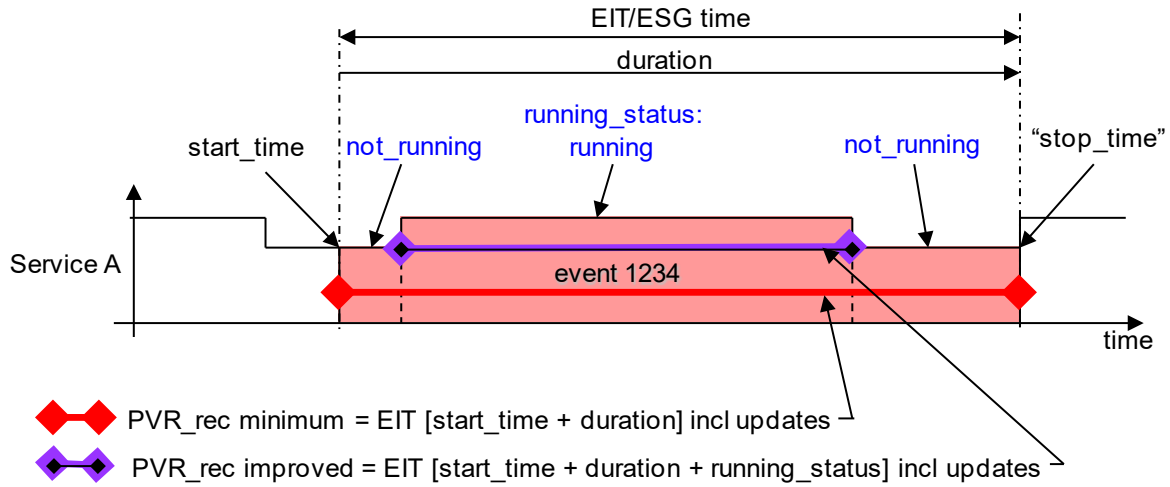



*Figure 14.2 (Illustration) Handling of accurate recording. In red the minimum requirement, record only using as long as event is present in EIT present section table. In purple the improved version, via using event is present in EIT present sections and running status is "running".*

### 14.3.8 Simultaneous recording

The NorDig PVRs **shall** be able to record one service while viewing another, independently even if the services are on different transport streams.

The NorDig PVR should be able to record a background service (that is not viewed) at the same time as timeshift record the viewing service, independently if the services are on different transport streams.

### 14.3.9 Full service recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able (factory default) for all recordings to include all supported components/PIDs for the basic TV viewing listed in the PMT of the recorded service (e.g. video, audio 1, audio 2, EBU Teletext, DVB subtitles, PCR etc) and other relevant metadata from the PSI and SI (like parental rating, signal protection/HDCP etc), excluding any HbbTV or other API related streams (Any HbbTV related streams are optional to be included in the recording).

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | For a NorDig PVR using removable media formats (such as DVD or Blu-ray) for recordings, such devices **shall** include all supported components/PIDs for that format and any subtitling **shall** (according to the user preference settings) be burnt in to the video or converted into a supported subtitling format. Observe the limitation specified above for removable media. |

### 14.3.10 Trailer booking/Promotional Linking (optional)

#### 14.3.10.1 General

The trailer booking (or promotional linking) is typically used during a promotion trailer to give the viewer the opportunity to easy and directly program/book their PVR to record the event the trailer is referring to.

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** have the ability to decode and process Related Content Signalling as defined in chapter 12.8 (RCT) and 12.6.10 (related content descriptor) in order to drive broadcast-triggered native or API based applications typical example Trailer Booking (Promotional Linking). (This refers to that in the future other usage of the RCT may be added).

The decoding and display of information referenced by descriptors carried in the RCT **shall** be supported as defined in chapter 12.8.3 (short event descriptor in RCT) and 12.8.4 (image icon descriptor).

The event name **shall** be displayed together with any promotional text at time of booking (when displaying the Trailer booking menu on screen). At the time of booking, the NorDig PVR **shall** not include any event description text from the short event descriptor.

The short event descriptor's event name (from the RCT or EIT) **shall** be used to provide information about the event in the PVR's list of booked recordings. The short event descriptor's event description text from EIT may also be used in the PVR's list of booked recordings to provide more information.

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** display all combinations of the broadcast icon and default icon in accordance with chapter 14.3.10.2 below.

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** display all combinations of the broadcast icon and default icon in accordance with chapter 14.3.10.2 below.

#### 14.3.10.2 Icon activation and deactivation

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** display and remove from display the icon according to following rules:

- a new RCT table (version number change) with a link count greater than zero **shall** cause the icon to appear
- a new RCT table (version number change) with a link count equal to zero **shall** cause the icon to disappear.

The display/removal of the on-screen icon and allocation/release of remote key for trailor booking **shall** occur within 2 seconds of the RCT table changes described above.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | "link count" is the number of links the receiver can understand and use, not the total links in the RCT. For example, a receiver without an IP connection may ignore all links that reference online content, hence, such a link by itself would not cause an icon to pop-up on screen. |

When the NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking is in normal TV viewing mode and a promotional link becomes active the green button on the remote control **shall** temporary be redirected away from its other usage (like HbbTV application). As soon the trailer link is no longer active, the trailer booking key **shall** be released.

Exceptions: If user has entered into another TV mode (e.g. entered Teletext page, HbbTV application, menu mode or similar modes) before the promotional link becomes active, the green button **shall** not be redirected. If user enters into another TV mode (e.g. entered Teletext page, MHP application, menu mode or similar modes) during an active promotional link, the green button **shall** be released from trailer booking usage. If the user re-enters back to normal TV viewing mode during an active promotional link, the NorDig PVR should redirect trailer booking key (green button) and display the trailer booking icon.

Normal TV viewing mode refers here to when user has not actively entered Teletext page viewing mode, "opened" HbbTV application, entered menu or similar modes. (Observe that the broadcaster may control in the broadcast change of HbbTV application state and allocation of remote keys. Broadcaster should be aware that trailer booking may not work properly if used keys for trailer booking on remote control are allocated for the HbbTV application).

An icon may be deactivated by pressing the receiver 's usual cancel key e.g. "back", "TV", .

It should be possible in the user preference setting to pre-defined a default alternative if NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** be active and react to broadcasted Trailer booking messages (in RCT) or not. (Factory default setting **shall** be on (active) for trailer booking).

#### 14.3.10.3 Default Icon

For NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking, the icon that is displayed on screen during an active link can be from a receiver inbuilt icon or a broadcaster signalling icon. ETSI TS 102 323 [32] in Link info structure regarding default icon signalling defines four combinations of how these icons can be used: all combinations may be used.

The default icon **shall** be a representation of the green button on the remote control – so the icon **shall** look like a green button.

The popup **shall** also contain a text in local language – telling the user to press the green button to program/book the described event (example: 'Press Green To Book')

Manufacturers should be aware that the green button on the remote control will be used to select the trailer booking and take account of other on-screen objects (such as HbbTV applications).

*Figure 14.3 Illustrative example of a trailer booking default icon*

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | For services that have both HbbTV application and trailer booking, a HbbTV IRD will typically allocate the green button for HbbTV usage and prevent this button for trailer booking control unless the HbbTV application have released the green button for its usage. It is up to the broadcaster to control and release the green button from HbbTV application usage to enable HbbTV IRD to use the green button during broadcast of trailer booking. |

#### 14.3.10.4 Image icon position

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** use the signalled position information to position the icon if no native UserInterface items are being displayed. If native UserInterface items (like zapper banner, menu) or subtitling are displayed simultaneous as image icon, then the signalled position information should be used as a guide.

#### 14.3.10.5 Subtitling and display of image icon

*Default Icon*

The NorDig PVR supporting Trailer booking **shall** be able to continue decode and display subtitling (EBU Teletext subtitling or DVB Subtitling, see chapter 7) also when displaying the image icon. (When the IRD is displaying the trailor booking menu, NorDig PVR should continue displaying subtitling).

### 14.3.11 Back-to-back recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to record back-to-back events both on same and on different services.

| | |
|---|---|
| Note: | Back-to-back events refer to two events that immediately follow each other, i.e. the following event start_time is immediately after the previous events stop time, (start_time plus duration), see figure below. |

For overlapping events see 14.3.16.2. If the first event has same or higher priority as the second event (see 14.3.16.2) and the first event will overrun, if the NorDig PVR has limitation in recording capacity, it **shall** first finalise recording of the first event (including its overrun part) before starting recording the next event. The overrun **shall** be treated as the more important part of the events, see figure below.

If the NorDig PVR has been set to add additional recording time ("safe margins") before and after recorded events' start and stop time, any overlapping "safe margins" between the back-to-back events **shall** be removed (if the NorDig PVR has limitation in recording capacity for this), see figure below.

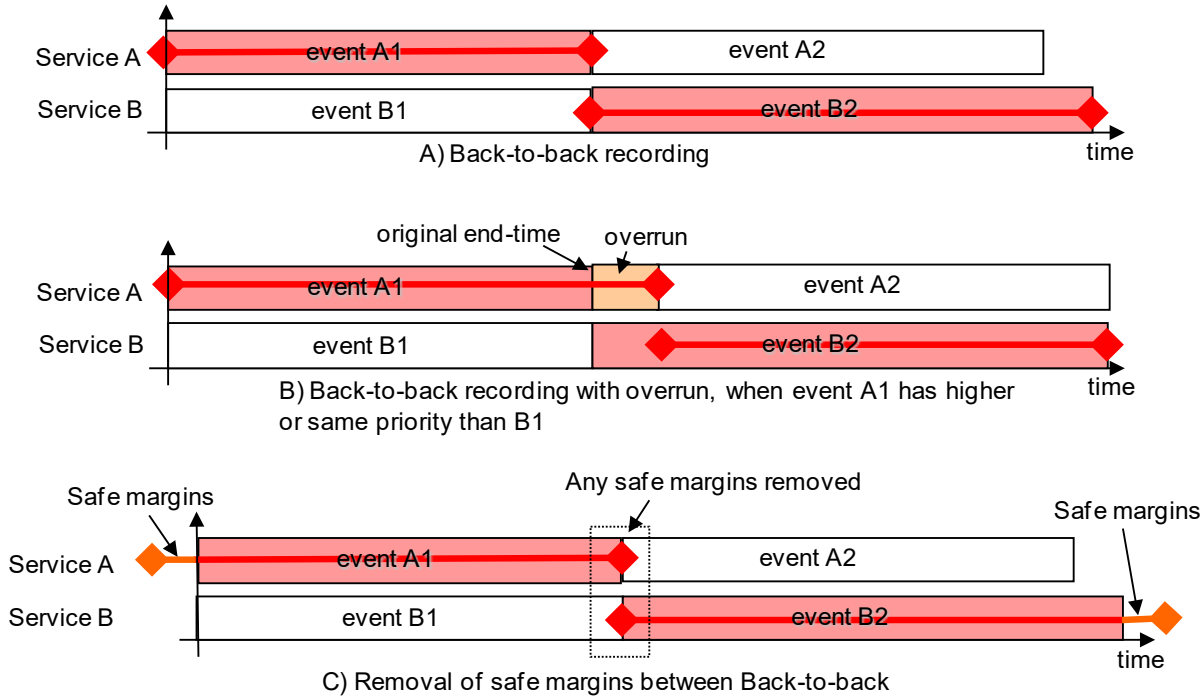



*Figure 14.4 (Illustration) Handling back-to back recordings*

### 14.3.12 Timeshift recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to pause or timeshift live TV for at least 60 minutes. It should be possible to save time-shifted events into the PVR list of recordings.

### 14.3.13 Late Recording

The NorDig PVR should support a continuous time-shift buffer for late catch-up recording. If supported, then the NorDig PVR (based on Hard Disk Drive) **shall** be able to disable the continuous time-shift buffer in settings. It should be possible to record a complete event after the event has started including any portion already in the time-shift buffer.

A late recording is when the user programs the PVR to record an event after it has started (according to the events start_time and that it is within EIT present table). If the time-shift buffer includes the start of the event, the recording is treated to be a complete late recording. If the time-shift buffer does not include the start of the event or if the PVR does not have any time-shift buffer, the recording is treated to be an incomplete late recording.

For incomplete late recording the NorDig PVR **shall** check if there is an alternative instance available within the EIT data (i.e. an event with same CRID value). If an alternative instance of the event is found within the EIT data, the NorDig PVR should offer for the user to automatically replace the incomplete recording later with a complete recording using the alternative instance (the NorDig PVR should however anyway first finalise the rest of the present incomplete recording). If there is conflict because of the alternative instance, the NorDig PVR **shall** not use alternative instance, it **shall** then keep the late incomplete recording.

If there is no alternative instance information available at the time of recording, the NorDig PVR **shall** monitor EIT tables for alternative instance until incomplete recording is removed from the NorDig PVR.

| |
|---|
| The Late recording should not include recordings from previous event, even if the continuous time-shift buffer did include that at the time of programming. |

The manufacture should inform the user in the NorDig PVR's manual about limitation in late recording, for example it could typically be that it is only possible to record/store as long to back in time for one service as the service has been selected for viewing or as long time as the timeshift buffer is.

### 14.3.14 Manual recording

The NorDig PVR **shall** make it possible for the viewer to set a manual recording, without using the EPG/ESG/EIT data, by setting the service, start-time and end-time (or duration).

The time and date for the user when programming **shall** be the local time, including any offset, at the time of recording according to the IRD's settings, and not the local time at the time of programming. This means that if there is a change in local time offset (e.g. change in daylight-saving time) between the time of programming and the time of recording, the time and date **shall** refer to the new local time at the time of recording.

It should be possible to set weakly repeated manual recording (like every Monday 19:00:00 to 20:00:00 or every weekday between 12:00:00 to 12:15:00)

### 14.3.15 One touch recording (OTR)

The NorDig PVR **shall** include a direct recording setting as a One-touch recording (OTR) function which allows the user to start a recording, while watching live TV, with one button press on the remote control.

This One-touch recording **shall** not be delayed by further requests for user interaction unless to proceed would affect a recording that is either already underway or scheduled to start before the end of the OTR recording.

The duration of the One-touch recording operation **shall** be based on either a pre-set time or current viewed event.

In addition, the NorDig PVR may have another setting alternative that when pressing the OTR button the NorDig PVR asks for user confirmation whether the direct recording **shall** be based on current viewed event (from EIT data) or on a pre-set time.

### 14.3.16 Automatic conflict handling

A conflict arises when the NorDig PVR is restricted to perform a recording due to limitation in recording capacity.

#### 14.3.16.1 Conflict during the time of programming a (individual, series or manual) recording

If a conflict is detected it **shall** be indicated immediately to the user, together with details of the cause, so that the user can take appropriate action.

When programming a recording, which comes in conflict with an earlier programmed recording and when the NorDig PVR can detect an alternative instance in one or both of them, the NorDig PVR **shall** either automatically re-program one of the to the alternative instance or propose that viewer solve the conflict by moving one of the recordings to the alternative instance and asking for confirmation.

#### 14.3.16.2 Conflict occurring after the time of programming recording(s)

If the NorDig PVR has a number of active programmed series recordings and if there occurs a request of more simultaneous recordings than the NorDig PVR is capable of handling, the NorDig PVR **shall** be able to handle this without user confirmation at the time of actual recording, i.e. the IRD may inform of the conflict via the OSD but **shall** automatically solve the conflict at the time of actual recording if the user does not manually change the conflict handling. Any information on OSD about conflict **shall** not be included in recording and **shall** have a time-out if no user reaction. All requests for user confirmation **shall** be done during the time of programming or during the setting of user preferences.

The conflict(s) **shall** be solved with higher priority recordings having preference before recordings with a lower priority. It is up to the NorDig PVR manufacture to define the PVR's priority list, however it may typically be as prioritised in Table 14.1. Conflict(s) of recording with same priority level **shall** also be automatically solved (at least one of them **shall** be recorded), but it is up to the NorDig PVR manufacture to define a mechanism. The NorDig PVR should offer for the user the ability to change the conflict priority in the user preferences.

Factory default Priority list of handling recording conflict in NorDig PVR

| Priority | Recording type |
|---|---|
| 1 (high) | Manual single recordings |
| 2 | Manual repeated recordings |
| 3 | Individual event recording (single shot) without alternative instance |
| 4 | Individual event recording (single shot) with alternative instance |
| 5 | Series recordings without alternative instance |
| 6 | Series recordings with alternative instance |
| 7 | Broadcast record list recordings without alternative instance |
| 8 | Broadcast record list recordings with alternative instance |
| 9 (low) | Automatic Keyword recordings |

*Table 14.1(Illustration) Priority list for PVR*

If a conflict occurs in a partially or completely overlapping recording after the time of programming the NorDig PVR **shall** prioritises the recording with the highest priority, as illustrated in figures below. For conflict with events with same priority, the NorDig PVR **shall** first finalise the first recording (including any late over-run) before starting with next. (See also back-to-back recording).

Any recording that may only be partially recorded (incomplete) due to overlapping of other recordings (including late over-run) should be recorded anyway (see Failed and incomplete recordings).

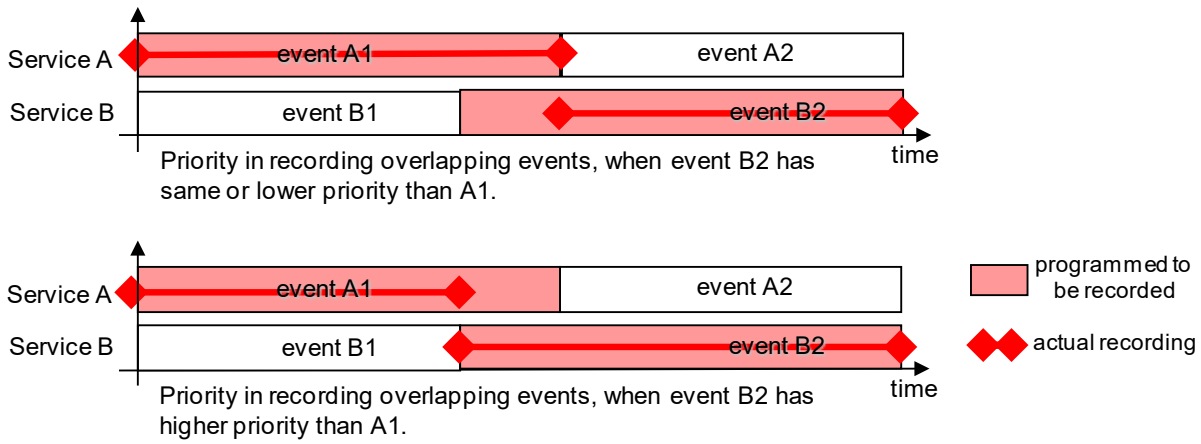



*Figure 14.5 Examples of conflict handling when PVR identifies events that have different priority*

### 14.3.17 Maximum length of recordings

If the is a failure within the transmission of the EIT and other transmission errors, the NorDig PVR **shall** stop recording 4 hours after scheduled duration of the event has passed (even if the event still appears in EIT present table).

For events that have a duration that is longer than 8 hours, the NorDig PVR may stop recording after 8 hours.

#### 14.3.18 Recording of recently removed recordings

*Recently removed programme CRID recordings* are here defined as recordings that included programme CRID data and that have been deleted and there has not passed 91 days from its recorded start_time or 31 days from its deletion time (whatever occurs last of these two).

For already booked series recordings, the NorDig PVR should not re-acquire recently removed programme CRID recordings (identified via match of programme CRID). After the time has passed for the recently removed programme CRID recording, the NorDig PVR **shall** re-acquire the event.

When the viewer/user during programming a recording, ie making a booking, (manual or series) and viewer/user selects an event or series within the received EIT data which contain an event that is a recently deleted programme CRID recording (identified via match of programme CRID), the NorDig PVR should prompt the viewer that the event has been recorded and recently deleted by the user and ask for confirmation to continue booking it for recording (ie if viewer confirms re-acquire the content, the NorDig PVR **shall** be able to record the event).

#### 14.3.19 Recording of parallel broadcast and simulcast

Some services and events are parallel broadcasted in multiple versions. In this context, a parallel broadcast of same programme event is identified that all service's events have the same programme_CRID. Examples of parallel broadcasts are services with same national content but with different regional content and services with same content but with different resolution e.g. SD and HD simulcast broadcast services. The NorDig IRD that has been programmed to record an event with a specific programme_crid or series_crid which a programme_crid is part of, **shall** only record one instance of the event from one of the services when the event is parallel broadcasted over several services at the same time.

The NorDig PVR should, by factory default, prioritise recording of the event from the service with higher service priority according to chapter 12.1.4 (service type) during simulcast broadcast with different resolutions and/or different formats of the same programme event.

The NorDig PVR may allow an end user to change the user preference setting regarding or during the time of programming offer the end user to choose which service type has a recording priority during simulcast broadcast with different resolutions and/or different formats.

#### 14.3.20 NorDig Record Lists recording functionality

This NorDig Broadcast Record List is optional for NorDig IRDs/PVRs to support, but if supported then all requirements for this NorDig Broadcast Record List feature **shall** be supported.

##### 14.3.20.1 Management of Content Grouping

A NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** receive and manage all TV-Anytime groups that are part of the Record List metadata service.

##### 14.3.20.2 Content Acquisition

A NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** automatically acquire, without user intervention, all events that correspond to PushDownloadProgram fragments which are, members of Record List groups to which the user has subscribed.

Events requiring acquisition from the schedule **shall** be acquired according to the current recording acquisition rules.

A PushDownloadProgram CRID that the program CRID is not yet part of the current EIT, **shall** only be valid for recording up to 91 days from the last Broadcast Record List it has been published (after that the NorDig PVR **shall** remove that event from its recording schedule).

A PushDownloadProgram ProgramURL to an event_id of a specific service that is not yet part of the current EIT, **shall** only be valid for recording up to 10 days from the last Broadcast Record List it has been published (after that the NorDig PVR **shall** remove that event from its recording schedule).

#### 14.3.20.3 Recording List Hierarchies

When booking a record list, the NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** book all children of that record list see 12.9.5. There is no requirement for the NorDig PVR to detect loops in any group hierarchy.

#### 14.3.20.4 Management of Content Versioning

If the version of a content that has already been acquired is seen to change, then NorDig PVR supporting BRL should re-acquire the event, replacing the old version in storage.

#### 14.3.20.5 Metadata Changes Post Broadcast

A NorDig PVR supporting BRL may monitor the metadata for changes up to 7 days from the original broadcast of the content, or up to the event's availability to the viewer (if signalled). If a change is detected to an already acquired event, then the most recently transmitted version should be applied.

#### 14.3.20.6 Unresolvable PushDownloadPrograms

If a CRID signalled in a PushDownloadProgram cannot be resolved to an EIT event, the NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** continue attempts to resolve the signalled CRID according to Section 8.7.2 rules.

#### 14.3.20.7 Use of Program Information

In the case where information is available both from EIT and programme information table, the programme information table **shall** be used.

#### 14.3.20.8 Recording Conflicts

Any user initiated activity in the NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** take precedence over recording of Broadcast Record List events.

It is strongly recommended that, in the case where a broadcast record list event could not be acquired due to a lack of resources, alternate instances of the event be located and rebooked.

The behaviour defined in this subsection may be modified through previously set user preferences.

#### 14.3.20.9 Broadcast Record List Removal

A broadcast record list that has been subscribed to **shall** be automatically unsubscribed from when it has not been received in the broadcast metadata for 91 days.

#### 14.3.20.10 Broadcast Record List Updates

A NorDig PVR supporting BRL **shall** within 10 minutes act upon updates to the received metadata.

## *14.4 Playback*

### 14.4.1 General

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to playback recordings of all supported service types (TV, radio etc) and all belonging components/PIDs (as described in 14.4.5).

Only the service related interactive applications from the current viewed service (live or playback) are required to be active, this means that during playback all interactive applications from the live service in the background may be terminated.

### 14.4.2 Replay/Playback – trick modes

The NorDig PVR **shall** support the following trick modes during playback of recorded events (incl time-shift) for all supported video formats/codecs:

- **Play** (playback at normal speed)
- **Pause**
- **Stop** (stop may be combined with pause, but must enable an easy way to stop playback and return to list of recordings and live viewing mode)
- **Fast forward** and **shall** support fast forward at minimum 3 different speeds, (like x3, x6, x15 and x30).
- **Fast reverse** and should support fast reverse at minimum 3 different speeds, (like x3, x6, x15 and x30).

The audio may be muted during trick modes (except during normal playback). The subtitling (EBU Teletext subtitling or DVB Subtitling) and other event based data application may be skipped during trick modes (except during normal playback). The NorDig PVR should make use of the AU_information according to ETSI TS 101 154 [26], if that information is available in the recorded video stream. The slower fast forward and fast reverse modes should be smoother rather than trying to keep the exact selected trick mode speed.

The NorDig PVR should support the following trick modes during playback of recorded events (incl time-shift) for all supported video formats/codecs:

- **Slow forward** (like x1/2 and x1/4 of the normal speed)
- **Slow reverse** (like x1/2 and x1/4 of the normal speed)
- **Next**, go to next recorded event within same series (i.e. to a event within same series with a newer date or “episode_id”, if the current event belongs to a series and the NorDig PVR has recorded several events) otherwise go to next recording within the list of recordings.
- **Previous**, go to a previous recorded event within same series (i.e. to a event within same series with an older date or lower episode_id, if the current event belongs to a series and the NorDig PVR has recorded several events) otherwise go to previous recording within the list of recordings.
- **Jump**, go to a specific time in the recording and/or fast jump a manufacture defined fixed time (e.g. 4 min forward).

The NorDig PVR should be able to insert indexes into the recordings to enable fast access to different parts of the recording.

### 14.4.3 Relative Synchronisation

The NorDig PVRs **shall** not introduce more relative delay (reduced “lipsync”) during playback between the audio, video and other PES packetised components (like subtitling) compared to decoding of live content, measured 5s or later after start of normal playback.

After using trick mode, the relative delay **shall** meet the requirements within 5s after resuming back to normal playback speed.

### 14.4.4 Simultaneous recording and playback

The NorDig PVR **shall** be able to record and playback simultaneously. It **shall** be possible to record one service from the live transmissions while playback another earlier recording.

The user **shall** be also able to start the playback of a recording for which the recording has not yet completed (“chase playback”).

### 14.4.5 Full service playback

During playback of recorded content, the user **shall** be able to perform the same full service selection as would have been possible during basic live viewing, such as select audio and/or subtitling language (if several components with same type are available), switch subtitling on or off, select audio format etc (with the limitation outlined in section 14.3.9). The basic live viewing refers to all streams excluding any HbbTV related streams. Dynamic changes in the services (such as a change of video aspect ratio or change of audio format) that occur during the recording **shall** be processed in the same way as during live viewing.

During playback, the NorDig PVR **shall** be able to set the same control as during live viewing, for example blanking of video and muting of sound depending on the event's parental rating values (see 14.3.2) and signal protection (HDCP) on its digital output interface (see 9.9.4). For cases where the information is coming from EIT data (like parental rating descriptor), the playback **shall** at least act on the EIT signalling at the start of the recording (see 15.2.1). For the cases where the information is coming from PMT or the elementary streams (like signal protection and aspect ratio), the playback **shall** perform the same as live viewing and following any changes therein (i.e. PMT and elementary stream header information **shall** be stored and processed during playback).

### 14.4.6 Resume Playback

When resuming back to a partially viewed recording, the NorDig PVR should resume back to the point of the recording (or a moment before that point) where the previous playback was stopped.

It should be possible to set index points of interest during playback, where later playback may be jumped to.

### 14.4.7 NorDig Record Lists management and playback functionality

The requirement for playback of NorDig Record Lists recordings are the same as for playback for other types of NorDig recordings (manual recordings, series recordings), see above. *(In addition, there are also requirements for embargo and expiry of recordings, see 14.2.10.8 and 14.2.10.9).*

# 15 IRD System Software and API

### 15.1 NorDig Basic IRD

The NorDig Basic TV IRD **shall** have a system software for interpretation and handling of the active service information and control of the local hardware/software.

### 15.2 NorDig HbbTV IRD

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** support all mandatory features and requirements of HbbTV v2.0.3 (1) as specified in ETSI TS 102 796 v1.6.1 (1) specification [27] or later version, including the most recently published errata (2) from the HbbTV Association.

NorDig HEVC iDTVs **shall** support HbbTV according to above.

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** have a broadband interface in accordance with NorDig Section 8.3 (two-way interface).

The NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** have HbbTV feature as enabled by default (see Section 16.3). It **shall** have a menu option to allow user to enable / disable the HbbTV feature as a whole and it should have a menu option to allow user to enable / disable the HbbTV feature service by service.

The implementation of the HbbTV in the NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** be verified by the manufacturer, the verification testing is based on self-testing by manufacturer (unless otherwise specified by the relevant network/Operator). Verification testing of the HbbTV parts of NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** be based on HbbTV test specification [79] and HbbTV test suite [23] (3) plus the extra HbbTV test cases defined by NorDig, for more information see NorDig Test Plan.

NorDig mandates some of the requirements that are optional in HbbTV [27], this also means that relevant test cases in the HbbTV test suite [23] also have to be performed successfully (for more information see NorDig Test Plan).

NorDig broadcast member may request to get a copy of the manufacture's HbbTV Verification Test report with test results, before approving HbbTV IRD on the market.

Note 1: Optionally NorDig HbbTV IRDs released before 1 January 2023may instead support all mandatory features and requirements of HbbTV v2.0.2 as specified in ETSI TS 102 796 v1.5.1 [80] including updates by published errata from the HbbTV Association.

Note 2: Updates and corrections in errata shall be implemented within six months for new IRDs after HbbTV organisation published Errata, in order to give IRD manufacture a reasonable time for implementation. The IRD manufacture may ask for extra time for adjusting for a correction/update in the errata that has significant impact on the time of implementation.

Note 3: NorDig HbbTV IRDs implementing HbbTV v2.0.2 [80] as permitted by the grace period defined above in note 1 also need to pass the same HbbTV test suite [23] as those implementing HbbTV 2.0.3. The test suite lists which test cases are applicable to IRDs implementing different specification versions.

Note: NorDig members will typically use Nordic and Irish languages in text strings in HbbTV and some cases use multiple languages within one and the same HbbTV application, observe that the NorDig HbbTV IRD **shall** as stated in HbbTV specification [27] support all characters in these languages and multiple languages.

# 16 User Preferences

### 16.1 General

The user **shall** be able to store preference settings in persistent memory. All user preference settings listed below **shall** remain when changing service and when re-starting the IRD. The following user preferences **shall** be implemented in the NorDig IRD, unless it is stated below as optional (should) requirement. (See section 16.4 for factory default values).

### 16.2 User Preference Settings

#### 16.2.1 General User Preference Settings

The user **shall** be able to select storable user preferences (stored as persistent settings) for following General related functions (see section 16.4 for factory default values):

- Service list as defined in section 13.2.
- Country setting based on country code [47] for pre-selection of the primary menu, primary audio language, primary subtitle language settings and channel list selection as defined in 12.2.9.3.
- Talking menus/Text-to-Speech preferences as defined in section 13.6.2, if this optional feature is supported by the IRD.
- SSU setting(s) to select whether system software upgrades are allowed or not if the IRD supports Fully Automatic mode. See chapter 10 more details and 16.4 for factory default for this.
- HbbTV setting(s) for NorDig HbbTV IRD as defined in section 15.2.

The following user preferences should be provided for NorDig IRDs:

- HDCP preferences as specified in sections 8.6.4.

#### 16.2.2 Video User Preference Settings

The user **shall** be able to select storable user preferences (stored as persistent settings) for following video related functions (see chapter 16.4 for factory default values):

- HDMI Video preferences for Output video format, as set by the user:
    1. Automatic mode, based on use of E-EDID, as specified in section 8.6.1.2
    2. Fixed format, as specified in section 8.6.1.2

#### 16.2.3 Audio User Preference Settings

The user **shall** be able to select storable user preferences (stored as persistent settings) for following audio related functions (see chapter 16.4 for factory default values):

- Primary and secondary audio language (see section 6.5.3).
- Audio format between stereo or multichannel for the digital outputs, when the outputs are equipped for multichannel audio (see section 6.3, 6.4,6.5.3, 6.5.6, 6.6 and 8.6.3).
- Audio Type (see sections 6.5.3, 6.5.6, 6.6, 6.11, 6.14, 12.6.12 and 16.2.3.1)
    - For NorDig IRDs not supporting NGA, the Audio Type selection between:
        - Normal (no AD, no SS),
        - All Supplementary Audio (i.e. both AD and SS)
    - For NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD (NorDig IRDs supporting NGA) the Audio Type selection between (1):
        - Normal (no AD, no SS),
        - Audio Description (AD), i.e. only Audio Description (no SS) ,
        - Spoken Subtitling (SS), i.e. only Spoken Subtitling (no AD) and
        - All Supplementary Audio (i.e. both AD and SS)
- Audio delay value for the digital audio output (mandatory for NorDig STB with HDMI and/or S/PDIF output, optional/recommended for iDTV, see section 6.7 and 6.7.1).

- Audio output method for HDMI output, HDMI ARC, HDMI eARC and S/PDIF (if several alternatives are supported by the IRD), e.g. pass-through of native bitstream, decoded to PCM, transcoded to DTS and AC-3, (see section 6.2.2.3, 6.2.3.3, 8.5.3 and 8.6.3).
- Mixing level between the receiver mixed supplementary audio and Normal audio, (see section 6.11.3.5).

In addition, for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD, user **shall** be able to select storable user preferences (stored as persistent settings) for following audio related functions (see chapter 16.4 for factory default values):

- Dialogue Enhancement (on/off), see section 6.10.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: NorDig IRDs that support all four audio type modes may implement this as two settings (Audio Description on/off, Spoken Subtitling on/off) or one combined setting with all four modes. |

#### 16.2.3.1 Additional User Preference Settings for Supplementary Audio

The NorDig IRD not supporting NGA should allow the Audio Type selection between:

- Normal (no AD, no SS),
- Audio Description (AD), i.e. only Audio Description (no SS),
- Spoken Subtitling (SS), i.e. only Spoken Subtitling (no AD) and
- All Supplementary Audio (i.e. both AD and SS)

The user preference settings for enabled/disable default Supplementary audio **shall** be common for Broadcast mixed (1) and the Receiver mixed alternatives.

The IRD should have additional setting for the Receiver mixed alternative, which presents the Supplementary Audio on its own on the headphones output interface, while the Normal audio is presented on its own on the main audio output, see section 6.11.7

The IRD may have additionals setting for the Receiver mixed alternative.

For the NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD, Dialogue Enhancement should include an enhancement level value in addition to an on/off setting.

| |
|---|
| Note 1: This requirement for Broadcast mixed refers to when the audio stream is signalised as supplementary audio via visual impaired and/or via other supplementary signalling in AC-3/E-AC-3/AAC descriptor and/or supplementary audio descriptor. This means that for the case when the audio stream is signalised with 'nar' language code in ISO639 descriptor and no other supplementary signalling, IRD may have different settings for, for example via primary audio language preference setting to 'narrative'. |

### 16.2.4 Subtitling User Preference Settings

The user **shall** be able to select storable user preferences (stored as persistent settings) for following subtitling related functions:

- Primary and secondary subtitling language as defined in chapter 7.

## *16.3 Deletion of service lists*

The IRD **shall** provide a function to remove all service lists (default and user defined); this function should not affect other parameters (e.g. user preferences).

| |
|---|
| Note 1: Removal of service list can be implemented as part of factory reset, see below. |

### 16.4 Reset to factory mode

The IRD **shall** provide a function to reset all parameters to factory mode, thus removing all service lists, user preferences, etc. After reset, the IRD **shall** enter installation state.

The factory mode should be set to the following:

| **Factory default settings for IRDs (where supported)** | **Setting** |
|---|---|
| RF input DC power supply source for satellite front-end: | On |
| RF input DC power supply source for terrestrial front-end: | off (1) |
| ~~RF output preset channel:~~ | ~~Channel 43 (PAL G) (2)~~ |
| RF bypass gain | Disabled |
| Menu language: | equal to country settings |
| Audio type (Normal, Audio Description, Spoken Subtitling or all Supplementary Audio) (4) | Normal (3) |
| Primary audio language: | equal to country settings |
| Dialogue Enhancement | Off |
| Audio format setting: | Stereo |
| Subtitling (normal): | On |
| Primary subtitling language: | as country settings |
| Subtitling; hard of hearing/hearing impaired: | Off |
| HbbTV Interactivity | On |
| HDMI Audio output | Automatic, using E-EDID information |
| HDMI ARC Audio output | Automatic, using CEC Short Audio Descriptor message |
| HDMI eARC Audio output | Automatic, using eARC Capability Data Structure information |
| HDMI Video output | Automatic using E-EDID information |
| HDCP | ON or as specified by the relevant network/ CA operator see section 8.6.4 (5) |
| SSU | If this menu item is supported, a value that disables Fully Automatic mode (6) |
| PVR recording priority, SD vs HD | HD |
| Talking menus (Text-to-Speech), optional | Off |
| Parental Control | Disabled |

Note 1: In the first time installation and resetting to factory default settings, the DC power supply **shall** be switched off. It is recommended that the receiver ask if the DC power supply is turned on in the first time installation and in the installation after resetting to factory settings, to speed up the initialisation procedure.

~~Note 2: Applicable for IRDs with RF PAL modulator~~

Note 3: Mode 'Normal' refers to Audio type 0x00 'Undefined' For the case of an IRD implementing audio type with two separate settings (Audio Description plus Spoken Subtitling), this mode 'Normal' refers to that Audio Description off and Spoken Subtitling off.

Note 4: Supplementary Audio (SA) refers here to both Audio Description (AD) and Spoken Subtitling and (SS).

Note 5: The IRD should provide an option to manually set the HDCP default to "ON" or "OFF", or "AUTO", see section 8.6.4.

Note 6: Settings for SSU (System Software Update) may be implemented as one combined setting or several settings for different parts. The settings required will depend on the combination of modes supported (see 10.2) but could, for example, take the form of "Enable/Disable" or "Fully Automatic / Semi Automatic".

*Table 16.1 Factory default settings for IRDs*

# Annex A: NorDig Members and Partners

The NorDig group represents ~~per January 2018~~ the following broadcasters, operators and other companies in the Nordic countries and Eire:

## 1 NorDig Full Members

**Denmark**

Danmarks Radio (DR)
Stofa
TV2 Danmark A/S
TDC A/S (~~former~~ YouSee)

**Éire**

2RN (RTÉ Transmission Network ~~Ltd~~. DAC)

**Finland**

Digita OY
Labwise Ltd.
Yleisradio (YLE)

**Norway**

Canal Digital
Norges Televisjon AS (NTV)
Norsk Rikskringkasting AS (NRK)
RiksTV AS
Tel~~co~~nor Broadcast Holding AS
TV 2 Norge AS
Elektronikkbransjen

**Sweden**

Tele2/Comhem AB
Sveriges Television AB (SVT)
Teracom AB
ElektronikBranschen

## 2 NorDig Associated Members

The NorDig group represents ~~per June 2014~~ the following associated members:

~~Altobeam~~
~~Silicon Laboratories~~
Vestel Elektronik Sanayi ve Ticaret A.S.
Koninklijke Philips N.V.

## 3 Partners

NorDig have had great support from a number of manufactures and other non-NorDig-member companies as technical expertise and with help to ensure updates of our specifications. NorDig would like to express our great appreciation to the following companies for their support in NorDig:

C More
Digital TV Labs
Dolby Europe Ltd
Fraunhofer
June
Levira
LG Electronics
MTV
Panasonic
Samsung Electronics
Silema
Sofiadigital
Sony Europe Ltd
TP Vision
Viaplay

# Annex B: Background and options for IRDs with a terrestrial front-end

## 1 Terminology and Definitions for Single Frequency Networks Performance Parameters

Although it might be believed that the delay spread of the channel can be assumed to stay within the length of the guard interval used, this is not always the case in practice. In single frequency networks, there will normally be all sorts of delayed components and significant components having a delay far greater than the guard interval will often exist, although normally at a low but not insignificant level, and have a significant impact on the coverage area. In many cases delayed components will be significantly stronger than the earliest component.

In order to have good performance in single frequency networks it is therefore very important that:

1. the receiver is able to time synchronise in a quasi-optimum way in order to minimise the intersymbol interference that will exist when pre- and/or post echoes are longer than the guard interval.
2. the receiver is able to correctly equalise also in channels with echoes longer than the guard interval. It should be noted that the optimum way of frequency interpolation is dependent on the actual FFT time window position.

The required EPT depends on the system parameters and on the characteristics of the echoes inside and outside the guard interval, which determine the *criticality* of the channel (its frequency selectivity).

- For fixed reception, the Ricean channel ($F_1$, see ETSI EN 300 744 [18]) is used for the main transmitter contribution. The *EPT* depends on the amplitude of the artificial echoes from the other transmitters, and can vary from $C/N|_F$ (single transmitter, Ricean channel ($F_1$) for low artificial echoes to $C/N|_P$ (single transmitter, Rayleigh channel ($P_1$), for high artificial echoes. The number and the delay of artificial echoes within the guard interval does not affect significantly the system performance, but their total power compared to the power of the main path has an important effect on the channel *criticality*. A parameter, $K_A$, has been identified as the "channel criticality due to artificial echoes" and is the ratio (in dB) between the power received from the main transmitter and the total power of the artificial echoes inside the interval of correct equalisation $T_F$. It should be noted that $K_A$ = 0 dB corresponds to the most critical case.
- For portable reception, the channel (Rayleigh) is adopted for each transmitter contribution (natural echoes), and the computer simulations have indicated that *EPT* is not significantly affected by the presence of the other SFN transmitters (in fact the channel model is of Rayleigh type also with a single transmitter).

Neglecting other interference sources, the equivalent total available *C/(N+I)* [dB] in a given location of the service area can be estimated by using formula (A.3).

$$W_i = \begin{cases} \left(\frac{T_u + \tau}{T_u}\right)^2 & if - T_u \leq \tau \leq 0 \ \& \ \tau \in T_F \\ 1 & if \quad 0 < \tau \leq T_g \ \& \ \tau \in T_F \\ \left(\frac{T_u - \tau + T_g}{T_u}\right)^2 & if \quad T_g < \tau \leq T_u \ \& \ \tau \in T_F \\ 0 & otherwise \end{cases} \tag{A.3}$$

$$C = \sum_i w_i C_i$$

$$I = \sum_i (1 - w_i) C_i$$

where:

$C_i$ is the power contribution from the i-th echo (natural or artificial) at the receiver input.

$C$ is the total power of the effective useful signal.

$I$ is the total effective interfering power.

$w_i$ is the weighting coefficient for the i-th component.

$T_F$ is the *interval* (i.e. not a numerical value) of correct equalisation. The theoretical maximum length of $T_F$ is for DVB-T equal to 1/3 $T_U$ for conventional channel estimation and for DVB-T2 equal to $T_U$ /$D_x$, with $D_x$ being dependent on the particular pilot pattern used.

Note: The $T_F$ interval does not have to start from zero but could start from any negative or positive value, depending on the distribution of pre- and post-echoes.

The system can operate satisfactorily in a given location when the aggregate available *C/(N+I)* is larger or equal to the required effective protection target *EPT*:

$$C/N+I \Big|_{\text{Available}} \equiv \frac{1}{(C/N)^{-1} + (C/I)^{-1}} \geq EPT \tag{A.4}$$

The required Effective Protection Target is given by (all the items are expressed in dB):

$$EPT = \begin{cases} C/N\big|_F + \left(C/N\big|_P - C/N\big|_F\right)\left(\frac{0.5}{\left(C/N\big|_P - C/N\big|_F\right)}\right)^{\frac{K_A}{10}} & \text{for fixed reception} \\ C/N\big|_P & \text{for portable reception} \end{cases} \tag{A.5}$$

where:

| | |
|---|---|
| *EPT* | is the required system effective protection target in a particular SFN echo environment |
| $C/N\|_F$ | is the carrier to noise ratio required by the system on the $F_1$ channel (single transmitter, Rice channel). |
| $C/N\|_P$ | is the carrier to noise ratio required by the system on the $P_1$ channel (single transmitter, Rayleigh channel). |

$K_A$ *"channel criticality due to artificial echoes"* is the ratio (in dB) between the power received from the main transmitter and the total power of the artificial echoes inside the interval of correct equalisation $T_F$; (if $K_A$<0 dB, then $K_A$ is forced to 0 dB)

# 2 List of DVB-T/T2 centre frequencies

| Band | Channel id | Centre Frequency | Signal Bandwidth |
|---|---|---|---|
| *VHF I* | *K2* | | |
| | *K3* | | |
| | *K4* | | |
| (VHF) S I | *S1* | *107.5* | *7* |
| | D1 | 114.0 | 8 |
| | S2 | 114.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | S3 | 121.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D2 | 122.0 | 8 |
| | S4 | 128.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D3 | 130.0 | 8 |
| | S5 | 135.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D4 | 138.0 | 8 |
| | S6 | 142.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D5 | 146.0 | 8 |
| | S7 | 149.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D6 | 154.0 | 8 |
| | S8 | 156.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D7 | 162.0 | 8 |
| | S9 | 163.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D8 | 170.0 | 8 |
| | S10 | 170.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| VHF III | 5 (K5) | 177.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D9 | 178.0 | 8 |
| | K6 | 184.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D10 | 186.0 | 8 |
| | K7 | 191.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D11 | 194.0 | 8 |
| | K8 | 198.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D12 | 202.0 | 8 |
| | K9 | 205.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D13 | 210.0 | 8 |
| | K10 | 212.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D14 | 218.0 | 8 |
| | K11 | 219.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D15 | 226.0 | 8 |
| | K12 | 226.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| (VHF) S II | S11 | 233.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D16 | 234.0 | 8 |
| | S12 | 240.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D17 | 242.0 | 8 |
| | S13 | 247.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D18 | 250.0 | 8 |
| | S14 | 254.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D19 | 258.0 | 8 |
| | S15 | 261.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D20 | 266.0 | 8 |
| | S16 | 268.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D21 | 274.0 | 8 |
| | S17 | 275.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D22 | 282.0 | 8 |
| | S18 | 282.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | S19 | 289.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D23 | 290.0 | 8 |
| | S20 | 296.5 | 7 alt 8 |
| | D24 | 298.0 | 8 |

| Band | Channel id | Centre Frequency |
|---|---|---|
| (UHF) S III | S21 | 306 |
| | S22 | 314 |
| | S23 | 322 |
| | S24 | 330 |
| | S25 | 338 |
| | S26 | 346 |
| | S27 | 354 |
| | S28 | 362 |
| | S29 | 370 |
| | S30 | 378 |
| | S31 | 386 |
| | S32 | 394 |
| | S33 | 402 |
| | S34 | 410 |
| | S35 | 418 |
| | S36 | 426 |
| | S37 | 434 |
| | S38 | 442 |
| | S39 | 450 |
| | S40 | 458 |
| | S41 | 466 |

| Band | Channel id | Centre Frequency |
|---|---|---|
| UHF IV | K21 | 474 |
| | K22 | 482 |
| | K23 | 490 |
| | K24 | 498 |
| | K25 | 506 |
| | K26 | 514 |
| | K27 | 522 |
| | K28 | 530 |
| | K29 | 538 |
| | K30 | 546 |
| | K31 | 554 |
| | K32 | 562 |
| | K33 | 570 |
| | K34 | 578 |
| UHF V | K35 | 586 |
| | K36 | 594 |
| | K37 | 602 |
| | K38 | 610 |
| | K39 | 618 |
| | K40 | 626 |
| | K41 | 634 |
| | K42 | 642 |
| | K43 | 650 |
| | K44 | 658 |
| | K45 | 666 |
| | K46 | 674 |
| | K47 | 682 |
| | K48 | 690 |
| | K49 | 698 |
| | K50 | 706 |
| | K51 | 714 |
| | K52 | 722 |
| | K53 | 730 |
| | K54 | 738 |
| | K55 | 746 |
| | K56 | 754 |
| | K57 | 762 |
| | K58 | 770 |
| | K59 | 778 |
| | K60 | 786 |
| | K61 | 794 |
| | K62 | 802 |
| | K63 | 810 |
| | K64 | 818 |
| | K65 | 826 |
| | K66 | 834 |
| | K67 | 842 |
| | K68 | 850 |
| | K69 | 858 |

All Center Frequencies and Signal Bandwidth are listed in MHz. Names for channel_ids are proposed.

| T2 block number | Centre frequency (MHz) | Frequency range* (MHz) |
|---|---|---|
| 5A | 174.928 | 174.0-181.0 |
| 5B | 176.640 | |
| 5C | 178.352 | |
| 5D | 180.064 | |
| 6A | 181.936 | 181.0-188.0 |
| 6B | 183.648 | |
| 6C | 185.360 | |
| 6D | 187.072 | |
| 7A | 188.928 | 188.0-195.0 |
| 7B | 190.640 | |
| 7C | 192.352 | |
| 7D | 194.064 | |
| 8A | 195.936 | 195.0-202.0 |
| 8B | 197.648 | |
| 8C | 199.360 | |
| 8D | 201.072 | |
| 9A | 202.928 | 202.0-209.0 |
| 9B | 204.640 | |
| 9C | 206.352 | |
| 9D | 208.064 | |
| 10A | 209.936 | 209.0-216.0 |
| 10B | 211.648 | |
| 10C | 213.360 | |
| 10D | 215.072 | |
| 11A | 216.928 | 216.0-223.0 |
| 11B | 218.640 | |
| 11C | 220.352 | |
| 11D | 222.064 | |
| 12A | 223.936 | 223.0-230.0 |
| 12B | 225.648 | |
| 12C | 227.360 | |
| 12D | 229.072 | |
| 13A | 230.784 | 230.0-240.0 |
| 13B | 232.496 | |
| 13C | 234.208 | |
| 13D | 235.776 | |
| 13E | 237.488 | |
| 13F | 239.200 | |

Centre frequencies for 1.7 MHz frequency raster

# 3 Hierarchical mode reception

The NorDig IRD should be able to receive the hierarchical modes in the DVB-T specification: QPSK in 16QAM and QPSK in 64 QAM with the constellation proportion parameter α= 1,2 and 4. The NorDig IRD **shall** be able to use both the Low Priority (LP) and High Priority bit stream (HP) to receive a MPEG transport stream.

The carrier-to-noise (C/N) ratio values in tables1 and 2 are specified for channel Profile 1.

Profile 1: Gaussian noise (N) is applied together with the wanted carrier (C) in a signal bandwidth.

No echo is applied.

| | α = 1 | | α = 2 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Code rate | HP QPSK | LP 64QAM | HP QPSK | LP 64QAM |
| ½ | 10.9 | 16.7 | 8.5 | 18.5 |
| 2/3 | 14.1 | 19.1 | 11 | 21.2 |
| ¾ | 15.7 | 20.9 | 12.8 | 23.6 |

*Table 1 Required C/N (dB) for a QEF receiption for channel Profile 1 for hierarchical reception QPSK in 64QAM.*

| | α = 2 | | α = 4 | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| Code rate | HP QPSK | LP 16QAM | HP QPSK | LP 16QAM |
| ½ | 6.8 | 15 | 5.8 | 19.5 |
| 2/3 | 9.1 | 17.2 | 7.9 | 21.4 |
| ¾ | 10.4 | 18.4 | 9.1 | 22.5 |

*Table 2 Required C/N (dB) for a QEF receiption for channel Profile 1 for hierarchical reception QPSK in 16QAM.*

# Annex C: Placeholder for changes in 13.4 for IP-based IRDs.

# Annex D: Implementations Guidelines for best service selection in automatic channel search in terrestrial networks

Ref section "3.4.4.4 Installation mode: Automatic Search, best service". A specified procedure is required in order to select, the best received service if a service is able to be received simultaneously from several transmitters. A service is defined equal if ON_id, TS_id and S_id is the same[2]. Section 3.4.4.4 specifies that the selection **shall** be based on reception quality (i.e. received signal strength and signal quality) at the receiver input.

Regarding signal quality: The carrier to noise ratios (CNR) of the received signals provide information about the margins of the received signals (margin before the received signal begins to degrade). The estimate of these margins requires that the theoretically required CNR values must be known for the different DVB-T modes. Unfortunately, the received signal CNR doesn't provide enough information about the signal quality itself at low CNR values due the different required CNR in different reception path conditions e.g. in MFN and SFN. Therefore, in addition to received CNR, the received signal bit error rate (BER) (over a suitable integration time) must be taken into account in order to determine the received signal quality more precisely.

The signal quality alone doesn't provide enough information about the received signal margins. Therefore, in addition to signal quality, the signal strength must be taken in account in order to define the reception quality.

Defining reception quality for best service selection, as a function of signal strength and signal quality, is therefore essential for proper selection. Normally the selection is straightforward, but a difficulty may occur when selecting the best service between higher signal strength and worse signal quality and lower signal strength and better signal quality. A high difference between signal input strength can result to better margin before the received signal is degraded too much due to the variations in live reception and therefore could be better choice if the signal quality differences are little. If the signal quality difference is instead high, a choice of the lower signal strength may have a benefit at least when the signal input strengths are within a range of good margin and the difference is not too high.

An example of the flowchart in case of two received signals A and B is illustrated in figure 1. The IRD has to make a selection for a better service from two equal services. The following list describes the result of the selection algorithm in different conditions according to flowchart in figure 1.

1. signal quality and signal strength of A is better than B
2. signal quality of A is much better than B and signal strength of B is higher than A
3. signal quality of A is slightly better than B and signal strength of B is slightly higher than A
4. signal quality of A is slightly better than B and signal strength of B is much higher than A

---

[2] A service is uniquely identified by its DVB triplet (original_network_id, transport_stream_id and service_id) in all NorDig compliant terrestrial networks, except for the Norwegian terrestrial network, where only original_network_id and service_id is used to identify a service.

5. signal quality and signal strength of B is better than A
6. signal quality of B is much better than A and signal strength of A is higher than B
7. signal quality of B is slightly better than A and signal strength of A is slightly higher than B
8. signal quality of B is slightly better than A and signal strength of A is much higher than B

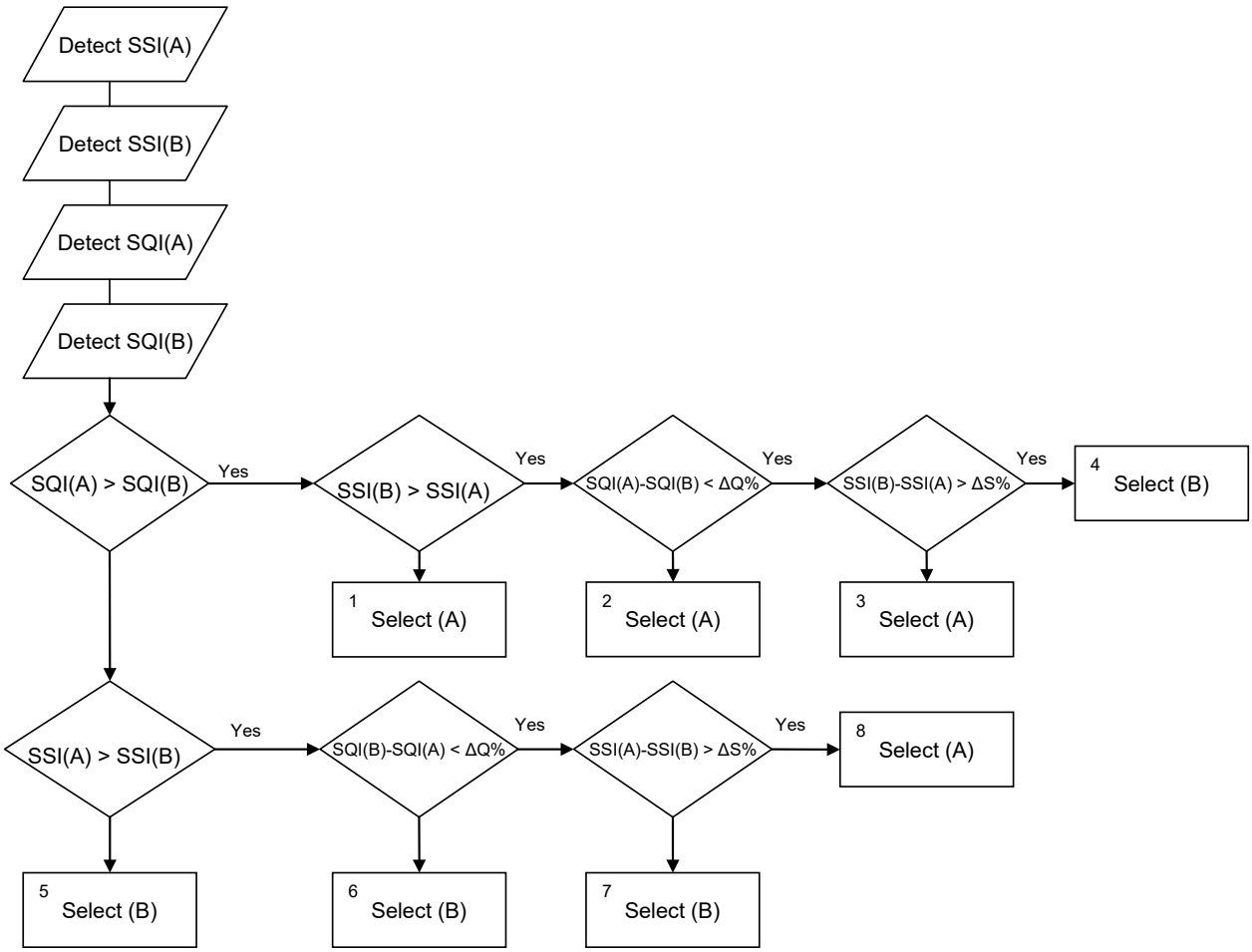



*Figure 1: A flowchart for best service selection algorithm in case when two transmitters A and B transmit equal service and both of them are able to be received. ΔS and ΔQ refer to difference in SSI and SQI values and are defined as ΔS=10% and ΔQ=20%.*

# Annex E: Raw carrier to noise values, $(C/N)_{RAW}$

Comment: The raw carrier to noise values, $(C/N)_{RAW}$, are used to calculate required C/N for BER $10^{-6}$, after BCH decoding.

| Modulation | Code rate | (C/N) raw (dB)Profile 1 Gaussian Channel | (C/N) raw ( dB) Profile 2: 0 dB echo |
|---|---|---|---|
| QPSK | 1/2 | 1.0 | 2.7 |
| QPSK | 3/5 | 2.2 | 4.3 |
| QPSK | 2/3 | 3.1 | 5.9 |
| QPSK | 3/4 | 4.1 | 7.3 |
| QPSK | 4/5 | 4.7 | 8.4 |
| QPSK | 5/6 | 5.2 | 9.5 |
| 16-QAM | 1/2 | 6.2 | 8.4 |
| 16-QAM | 3/5 | 7.6 | 10.2 |
| 16-QAM | 2/3 | 8.9 | 11.8 |
| 16-QAM | 3/4 | 10.0 | 13.7 |
| 16-QAM | 4/5 | 10.8 | 15.2 |
| 16-QAM | 5/6 | 11.3 | 16.3 |
| 64-QAM | 1/2 | 10.5 | 13.4 |
| 64-QAM | 3/5 | 12.3 | 15.4 |
| 64-QAM | 2/3 | 13.6 | 17.0 |
| 64-QAM | 3/4 | 15.1 | 19.2 |
| 64-QAM | 4/5 | 16.1 | 21.0 |
| 64-QAM | 5/6 | 16.7 | 22.3 |
| 256-QAM | 1/2 | 14.4 | 17.9 |
| 256-QAM | 3/5 | 16.7 | 20.2 |
| 256-QAM | 2/3 | 18.1 | 22.0 |
| 256-QAM | 3/4 | 20.0 | 24.3 |
| 256-QAM | 4/5 | 21.3 | 26.3 |
| 256-QAM | 5/6 | 22.0 | 27.8 |

# Annex F: Recommendation for menu wordings and translations

Here follows guidelines/recommendation of wordings to be used in menus etc in the IRD for a number of functions with translation to NorDig's different native languages. This as a help to the IRD manufacture, to easier communicate and explain for the users/viewers the usage of a function, both from broadcasters and IRD manufacture point of view. The list of receommended wordings to functions is yet not complete and mainly includes functions that earlier experience has shown are most in need of advice (empty fields is intended to include in future releases).

In some cases, guidelines include Helping text in different languages that may be used to explain function in more detail, typically when user highlight/mark this function before selecting/changing this function's setting(s).

## Subtitling

| **Normal Subtitles (subtitles)** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | 'Subtitles'<br>*or*<br>'Normal subtitles' | Normal subtitles that include translation of the spoken language into one or several languages for the viewer, in the case this subtitling is coming as a separate stream. |
| Swedish | | |
| Norwegian | Teksting | Teksting på norsk av utenlandsk tale. |
| Danish | Tekstning | Tekstning på dansk af udenlandsk tale. |
| Finnish | Tekstitys | Vieraskielisten ohjelmien tekstitys. |
| Sami | Teaksta | Hállan tekstejuvvon sámegillii. |
| Irish | Fotheidil nó Fotheideal teilitéacs | Fotheideal teilitéacs dúnta. |

*Table - Annex F:1 Normal subtitles (see section 7 Subtitling) recommended wordings for IRD menus. (Normal subtitlies includes typically textual translation of audio with foreign language for normal viewers. For Hard of hearing subtitling see below).*

## Accessibility

| **Audio Description (audio)** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Wording in language** | **Helping text /description in language** |
| English | 'Audio Description'<br>*or sometimes*<br>'Video description'<br>*or sometimes*<br>'Narrative description' | A voice describes what is happening in the picture. It is intended for those who have visual impirments. |
| Swedish | 'Ljudbeskrivning'<br>*or*<br>'Syntolkning' | En röst beskriver händelser i bilden för de som har svårigheter att se. |
| Norwegian | 'Synstolkning' | Talebeskrivelse av visuelle sanseinntrykk for de som har problem med å se. |
| Danish | 'Synstolkning' | Synstolkning er et særligt lydspor, som sendes samtidig med billedsiden til et tv-program som beskriver hvad der sker i billede. |
| Finnish | 'Kuvailutulkkaus' | Puhuttu kuvailuääni kertoo mitä ohjelmassa tapahtuu. |

| | | |
|---|---|---|
| Sami | Gova tulkon | Njálmmálaččat muitaluvvo čalmmehemiide dat, mii govas oidno. |
| Irish | Reacaireachta nó Físeán reacaireachta | |

*Table - Annex F:2 Accessibility - Audio - Audio Description (see section 6.11 Supplementary audio) recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

| **Spoken Subtitles (audio)** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | 'Spoken subtitles' | A voice reads the subtitles for you. It is intended for those who have visual impairments. |
| Swedish | 'Uppläst' | En röst läser upp textremsan för de som har svårigheter att läsa textremsan. |
| Norwegian | 'Lydteksting' | En stemme som leser tekstingen for de som har synsproblemer. |
| Danish | 'Oplæste undertekster' | Oplæste undertekster, oplæster automatisk underteksterne på fremmed-sprogede programmer. |
| Finnish | 'Puhetekstitys' | Käännöstekstitys kuuluu puheena yhdessä ohjelmaäänen kanssa. |
| Sami | Teaksta lohkkojuvvo | Teksten lohkkojuvvo čalmmehemiide. |
| Irish | Fotheideal labhartha | |

*Table - Annex F:3 Accessibility - Audio – Spoken Subtitles (see section 6.11 Supplementary audio) recommended wordings for IRD menus. This is in the case the IRD has settings to differentiate normal Audio Description from spoken subtitling. If the IRD has one and the same setting for both normal Audio Description and spoken subtitling, then recommend using the wordings for Audio Description above.*

| **Supplementary Audio Mixing Level (relative volume control of audio receiver mixing)** | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | 'Supplementary Audio Mixing Level'<br>*or*<br>'Audio mixing' | Select the balance between supplementary audio and normal audio. |
| Swedish | 'Ljudmixning' | Bestäm balansen mellan kompletterande ljud och vanligt ljud |
| Norwegian | 'Lydnivå på lydteksting og synstolking' | Bestemme ballanse mellom lydteksting eller synstolking og originallyd |
| Danish | | |
| Finnish | 'Lisä-äänen voimakkuus' | Pää- ja lisä-äänen välisen voimakkuuden säätö. |
| Sami | Jietnatekstema ja govvadulkoma jietnadássi | Jietnatekstema dahje govvadulkoma ja originálajienaid dássádallan |
| Irish | Measadh fuaime nó Measadh leibhéal | |

*Table - Annex F:4 Accessibility - Audio - relative volume control of audio receiver mixing (see section 6.11.3.5 in Supplementary audio) recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

| Sign language (video) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | 'Sign language' | For those who have hearing impairments |
| Swedish | 'Teckenspråkstolkning' | För de som har svårigheter att höra. |
| Norwegian | 'Tegnspråk' | Tegnspråktolking for de som har hørselsproblemer |
| Danish | 'Tegnsprogstolkning' | Tegnsprog er et tilbud til døve, der ellers ikke kan følge med i udsendelser |
| Finnish | 'Viittomakieli' | |
| Sami | Seavagiella | Seavagillii dulkojuvvo bealjehemiide. |
| Irish | Teanga chomharthaíochta | |

*Table - Annex F:5 Accessibility, Video, Sign Language recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

| Subtitles for Hard Of Hearing (subtitles) | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | 'Subtitles for Hard Of Hearing' | |
| Swedish | 'Textremsa för hörselnedsatta' *or* 'Undertext för hörselnedsatta' | |
| Norwegian | 'Teksting for hørselshemmede' | Teksting av norsk tale |
| Danish | 'Tekstet' | Undertekster af dansk tale |
| Finnish | 'Tekstitys huonokuuloisille' | |
| Sami | Teksten bealjehemiide | Njálmmálaš dárogiella tekstejuvvo |
| Irish | Fotheidil | |

*Table - Annex F:6 Subtitling – Hard of hearing subtitles (see section 7 Subtitling) recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

## SI – recommendation wordings

| Country name in native | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Country (in English)** | **ISO 3166 country code** | **Languge** | **Wording in language (translation to be used)** |
| SWEDEN | SWE | Swedish | 'Sverige' |
| DENMARK | DNK | Danish | 'Danmark' |
| IRELAND | IRL | Irish | 'Éire' |
| FINLAND | FIN | Finnish | 'Suomi' |
| NORWAY | NOR | Norwegian | 'Norge' |

*Table - Annex F:7 SI - country name (see section 12.1.8) recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

| Language name in native | | | |
|---|---|---|---|
| **Language (in English)** | **ISO 639-2 language code** | **Languge** | **Wording in language (translation to be used)** |
| Danish | dan | Danish | 'Dansk' |
| English | eng | English | 'English' |
| Finnish | fin | Finnish | 'Suomi' |
| Irish / Gaelic | iri | Irish / Gaelic | 'Gaeilge' |
| Irish / Gaelic | gle | Irish / Gaelic | 'Gaeilge' |
| Norwegian | nor | Norwegian | 'Norsk' |
| Narrative | nar | English | 'Narrative' |
| Original language | qaa | Danish | 'Original' |
| Original language | qaa | English | 'Original' |
| Original language | qaa | Finnish | 'Alkuperäinen' |
| Original language | qaa | Irish / Gaelic | 'Bunaidh' |
| Original language | qaa | Norwegian | 'Original' |
| Original language | qaa | Swedish | 'Original' |
| Sami | smi | Sami | 'Sámegiella' |
| Swedish | swe | Svenska | 'Svenska' |
| Undefined | und | Danish | 'Udefineret' |
| Undefined | und | English | 'Undefined' |
| Undefined | und | Finnish | 'Määrittelemätön' |
| Undefined | und | Irish / Gaelic | 'Neamhshainithe' |
| Undefined | und | Norwegian | 'Undefined' |
| Undefined | und | Swedish | 'Odefinierat' |

*Table - Annex F:8 SI - Language name (see section 12.1.8) recommended wordings for IRD menus.*

| SI EIT/Navigator, time slots with no event information | | |
|---|---|---|
| **Language** | **Function wording** | **Helping text /description** |
| English | '*No event information*' | |
| Swedish | '*Ingen information*' | |
| Norwegian | '*Ingen programinformasjon*' | |
| Danish | '*Ingen programinformation*' | |
| Finnish | '*Ei ohjelmatietoja*' | |
| Irish | | |

*Table - Annex F:9 SI/Navigator – SI – EIT – in ESG/EPG for time slots with no event information available (see section 13.3.2.3).*

:

# Annex G: Guidelines for NorDig IRD audio selection

**Example table when more than one audio stream is received**

This table is given by the property rules of table 6.1. The table covers many possible cases, although not every possible one.

| Supported available input stream types and audio formats as signaled by note 1 in table 16.2 (examples) | Output on S/PDIF and HDMI (incl. HDMI Audio Return Channel) (Note 4) | | Output on 2 ch analogue output(s) and/or built in loudspeaker(s) (see note 5) | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | When Stereo mode is selected (default) | When multichannel mode is selected | When Stereo mode is selected (default) | When multichannel mode is selected |
| MPEG-1 layer II & AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from MPEG-1 layer II) | AC-3 (from AC-3 multichannel) (see note 1) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II | Decoded downmixed AC-3 |
| MPEG-1 layer II & E-AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from MPEG-1 layer II) | E-AC-3 on HDMI (from E-AC-3 multichannel) (see note 2)<br>E-AC-3 transcoded to AC-3 on S/PDIF (from E-AC-3 multichannel) (see note 1) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II | Decoded downmixed E-AC-3 |
| MPEG-1 layer II & HE-AAC multichannel | PCM (from MPEG-1 layer II) | HE-AAC multichannel on HDMI (from HE-AAC multichannel) (see note 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC multichannel) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II | Decoded downmixed HE-AAC |
| HE-AAC stereo & AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from HE-AAC stereo) | AC-3 (from AC-3 multichannel) (see note 1) | Decoded HE-AAC | Decoded downmixed AC-3 |
| HE-AAC stereo & E-AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from HE-AAC stereo) | E-AC-3 on HDMI (from E-AC-3 multichannel) (see note 2)<br>E-AC-3 transcoded to AC-3 on S/PDIF (from E-AC-3 multichannel) (see note 1) | Decoded HE-AAC | Decoded downmixed E-AC-3 |
| HE-AAC stereo & HE-AAC multichannel | PCM (from HE-AAC stereo) | HE-AAC multichannel on HDMI (from HE-AAC multichannel) (see note 1 + 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC multichannel) | Decoded HE-AAC stereo | Decoded downmixed HE-AAC multichannel |

| | | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| AC-3 stereo & AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from AC-3 stereo) | AC-3 (from AC-3 multichannel) (see note 1) | Decoded AC-3 stereo | Decoded downmixed AC-3 multichannel |
| HE-AAC multichannel & AC-3 multichannel | PCM (from downmixed HE-AAC) | HE-AAC multichannel on HDMI (from HE-AAC multichannel) (see note 1 + 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC multichannel) | Decoded downmixed HE-AAC | Decoded downmixed HE-AAC |
| MPEG-1 layer II & AC-3 stereo | PCM (from MPEG-1 layer II) | AC-3 (from AC-3 stereo) (see note 1) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II | Decoded AC-3 |
| MPEG-1 layer II & HE-AAC stereo | PCM (from MPEG-1 layer II) | HE-AAC on HDMI (from HE-AAC) (see note 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC multichannel) | Decoded MPEG-1 Layer II | Decoded HE-AAC |
| HE-AAC stereo & AC-3 stereo | PCM (from HE-AAC stereo) | HE-AAC on HDMI (from HE-AAC) (see note 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC) | Decoded HE-AAC | Decoded HE-AAC |

Example table. Examples of possible simulcast situations and signals on analogue and digital outputs dependent on user settings with equal languages and normal audio types. For IDTVs, this **shall** apply when External Audio System (if supported) is selected as audio output.

Note 1: The S/PDIF output **shall** in any case comply with the content of the table above. For HDMI however, the following feature should be implemented:

When an HDMI Sink device indicates in its E-EDID structure that it only supports Basic Audio (i.e. two-channel L-PCM from the original stereo signal or from a stereo down-mix from the multichannel signal), then the HDMI output will provide Basic Audio. This feature would then take precedence over the requirement of AC-3, E-AC-3, HE-AAC multichannel and DTS in the table above whenever the Sink device indicates that only Basic Audio is supported. Observe however that the HDMI output could be different from S/PDIF output, since S/PDIF still has to comply with multichannel format requirements as in the table above.

Note 2: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that AC-3 decoding is supported, but E-AC-3 decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode E-AC-3 streams to AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 3: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that AC-3 or DTS is supported, but HE-AAC decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode HE-AAC streams to AC-3 or DTS prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 4: For IDTVs, this **shall** apply when optional External Audio System is selected as audio output. If built-in loudspeakers are selected for audio output, the minimum requirement is to have PCM output signal in the digital output.

Note 5: When External Audio System is selected as main audio output, IDTVs may optionally mute the TV speakers.

**Example table when legacy and NGA audio streams is received by an NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD**

This table is given by the rules defined in section 6.5 and its sub sections. In the table below, HE-AAC is used as an example of legacy codecs. The same logic will apply if other legacy codecs are used in combination with AC-4.

| **Supported available input stream types and audio formats as signaled by note 1 in table 16.3 (examples)** | **Output on S/PDIF and HDMI (incl. HDMI Audio Return Channel) (Note 4)** | | **Output on 2 ch analogue output(s) and/or built in loudspeaker(s) (see note 5)** | |
|---|---|---|---|---|
| | **When Stereo mode is selected (default)** | **When multichannel mode is selected** | **When Stereo mode is selected (default)** | **When multichannel mode is selected** |
| HE-AAC stereo & AC-4 immersive audio<br><br>Both streams have the same language | PCM<br>(downmix from AC-4) | AC-4 rendered to 5.1 transcoded to AC-3 on S/PDIF<br>(see note 1)<br><br>AC-4 decoded to 5.1 or 5.1.2 re-encoded to E-AC-3 on HDMI<br>(see note 2 and 8)<br><br>AC-4 decoded to PCM with metadad and transported on HDMI<br>(see note 6) | Decode downmix AC-4 | Decode downmix AC-4 |
| HE-AAC stereo & AC-4 immersive audio<br><br>The two streams have different languages<br>HE-AAC stream match the language preference set in the IRD, the AC-4 stream does not match. | PCM<br>(from HE-AAC stereo) | HE-AAC on HDMI<br>(from HE-AAC)<br>(see note 3)<br><br>HE-AAC transcoded to AC-3 or DTS on S/PDIF (from HE-AAC) | Decoded HE-AAC | Decoded HE-AAC |

Note 1: The S/PDIF output **shall** in any case comply with the content of the table above. For HDMI however, the following feature should be implemented:

When an HDMI Sink device indicates in its E-EDID structure that it only supports Basic Audio (i.e. two-channel L-PCM from the original stereo signal or from a stereo down-mix from the multichannel signal), then the HDMI output will provide Basic Audio. This feature would then take precedence over the requirement of AC-3, E-AC-3, HE-AAC multichannel and DTS in the table above whenever the Sink device indicates that only Basic Audio is supported. Observe however that the HDMI output could be different from S/PDIF output, since S/PDIF still has to comply with multichannel format requirements as in the table above.

Note 2: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that AC-3 decoding is supported, but E-AC-3 decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode E-AC-3 streams to AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 3: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that AC-3 or DTS is supported, but HE-AAC decoding is not supported, the IRD **shall** transcode HE-AAC streams to AC-3 or DTS prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 4: For IDTVs, this **shall** apply when External Audio System (if supported) is selected as audio output. If built-in loudspeakers are selected for audio output the minimum requirement is to have PCM output signal in the digital output.

Note 5: When external audio system (if supported) is selected as main audio output, IDTVs may optionally mute the TV speakers.

Note 6: If the IRD supports PCM multichannel over HDMI or HDMI eARC (not applicable for HDMI ARC).

Note 7: If content is stereo, output **shall** be PCM stereo also in case of multichannel mode.

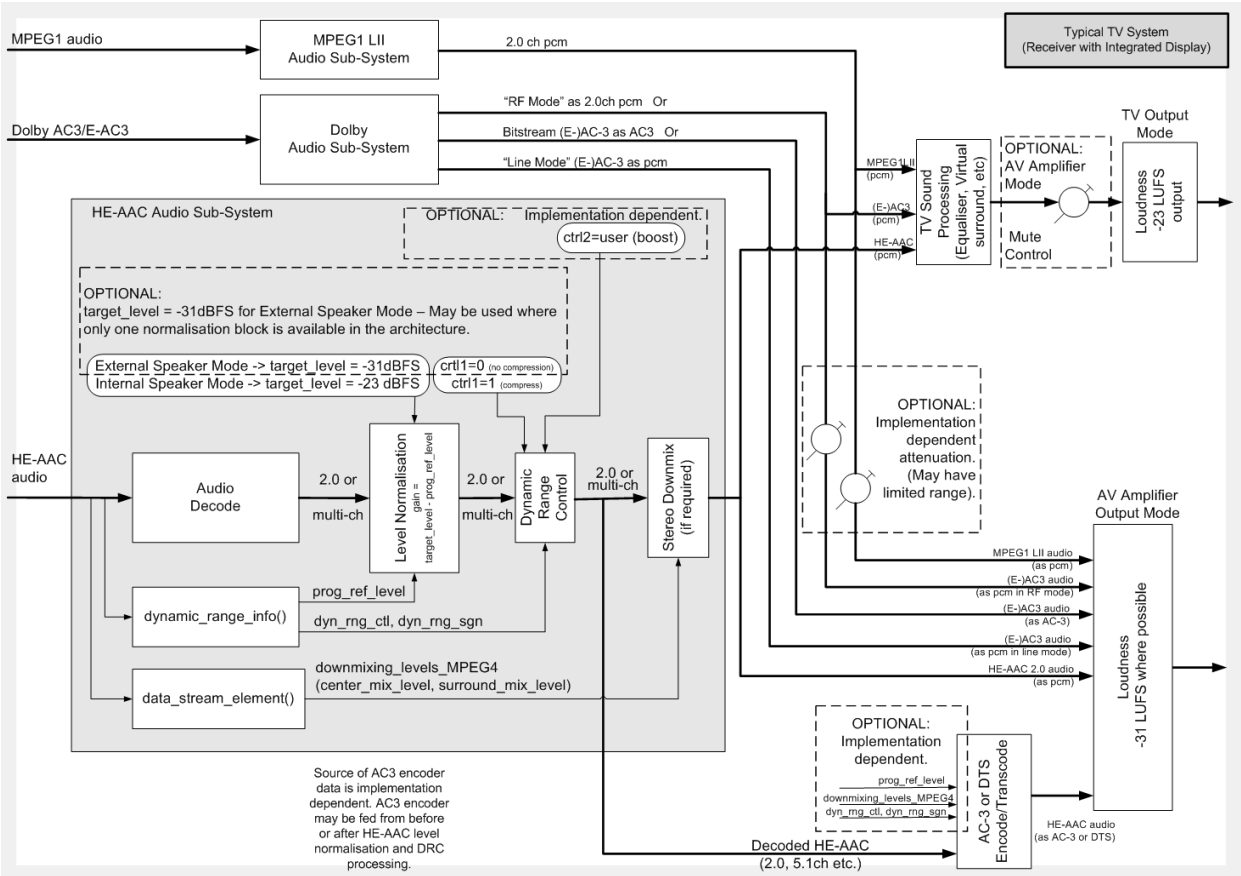
Note 8: If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that E-AC-3 decoding is supported, but AC-4 decoding is not supported, the IRD shall transcode AC-4 streams to E-AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission. If an HDMI, HDMI ARC (or HDMI eARC) receiving device indicates that AC-3 decoding is supported, but neither of E-AC-3 or AC-4 decoding is supported, the IRD shall transcode AC-4 streams to AC-3 prior to HDMI transmission.

Note 9: NorDig recognises that HDMI eARC will enable delivery of multichannel audio between suitably equipped iDTVs and A/V decoders. Revisions of this document, will consider including recommendations/requirements regarding this output method. For example MAT[99]~~[100]~~.

# Annex H: Loudness levels – Typical IDTV Audio Block diagram

The following diagram represents a typical IDTV IRD audio implementation. The implementation though will vary from manufacturer to manufacturer and chassis to chassis depending on feature level and cost. For technical reasons, such as processing power, memory and general architecture, it is common for the functionality offered by some of the operational blocks shown to be mutually exclusive. e.g. only one decode process at a time may be supported.

The output levels shown are those suggested by recent publications by EBU (R128 [72] and Tech 3344 [73]). It is expected that the industry will move towards following the levels shown here, though it must be expected that changes to architectures required to support these levels depend on IC and chassis design lead times so must be still considered as guidance only.




Note: Informative. Diagram is based on diagram in UK D-Book 7A [65], and shared by kind permission of the DTG. This **shall** be interpreted as informative only.

The outputs shown are labeled 'TV Output Mode' and 'AV Amplifier Output Mode'; these terms are intended to denote output to TV speakers and external AV Amplifier/System respectively.

Due to system architecture limitations, it is common for PCM outputs to external AV systems to follow the same levels as outputs to internal TV speakers. Architectures often mute the TV speakers in order to process audio in formats specifically suitable for external AV systems (e.g. -31 LUFS dialogue level with increased dymanic range).

The general concept of loudness levels at different outputs are:

– Programme reference level at analogue outputs should be -23 dBFS (as measured on a digital signal).

– Programme reference level at digital outputs (S/PDIF and HDMI) should be -31 dBFS.

In this way, users with lower quality of speaker systems will experience a dynamic range which is appropriate for these systems. Users with (usually external) higher quality systems will be able to experience larger (original) dynamic range.

As guidance, these standards and documents are to be considered:

- EBU Recommendation R 128, Loudness normalisation and permitted maximum level of audio levels [72]
- EBU Technical Recommendation R 68-2000, Alignment level in digital audio production equipment and in digital audio recorders [74].
- EBU Tech 3341, Loudness Metering: “EBU mode” metering to supplement loudness normalisation in accordance with EBU R 128 [71]
- EBU Tech 3344, Loudness normalisation in distribution
- ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.1770-2 (March 2011), Algorithms to measure audio programme loudness and true-peak audio level [76]
- ITU Recommendation ITU-R BS.1771, Requirements for loudness and true-peak indicating meters [77]

# Annex I: Examples of Signalling to be used for audio property

**Example table of priority between audio signalling alternatives related to audio property.** This table is given by the property rules of section 6.5.4 and shows which signalling (descriptor or stream type) **shall** be used for each audio property of the audio stream during the selection of audio stream. The table covers a number of relevant cases, although not every possible one is listed. For services with multiple audio streams, the NorDig IRD has to parse the signalling inside the PMT for the audio streams to select the appropriate audio stream(s) to decode in accordance with the IRD user preference settings. After the selection of audio stream and during the actual audio decoding, the IRD **shall** primary rely on signalling inside the PES stream for the audio format. (Example for an audio that dynamically changes between stereo and multichannel, the audio format in the PMT is signalized as multichannel while the signalling inside the PES stream signalize stereo).

| codec | | | | Signalling in incoming stream | | | | | IRD,<br>Signalling to be used during the selection of audio stream for each audio property. | | | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| MPEG -1 L.II | HE-AAC | AC-3 | E-AC-3 | PMT stream type | Supplementary audio descriptor (SAD) | | *[1]*<br>[1]<br>AAC/ AC-3/ E-AC-3 descriptor | *[2]*<br>[2]<br>ISO639 descriptor (lang, type) | Lang | Type | Format | stream type |
| | | | | | mix type, edit class | ISO639 lang | | | | | | |
| X | X | | | X | | | | | | (“normal”) | (stereo) | stream type |
| X | X | | | X | | | | X | [2] | [2] | (stereo) | stream type |
| | X | X | X | X | | | X | | | [1] | [1] | [1] |
| | X | X | X | X | | | X | X | [2] | [1] | [1] | [1] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | | X | X | [2] | SAD | [1] | [1] |
| X | X | | | X | X | | | X | [2] | SAD | (stereo) | stream type |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | SAD | SAD | [1] | [1] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | | SAD | SAD | [1] | [1] |

X (codec): applicable case for these audio codecs,
X (signalling); signalling/descriptor included in incoming MPEG-2 TS for the audio stream
SAD: Supplementary Audio Descriptor
(“normal”): Audio Type is not includedin signalling, IRD shall then assume that the audio stream is of a Normal type.
(Stereo): Audio Format is not includedin signalling, IRD shall then assume that the audio stream has stereo format.

*Example table. Examples of signalling alternatives for the audio property and priority the IRD **shall** have between the incoming signalling.*

The table below provides examples of the descriptors that need to be evaluated for prioritisation schema selection according to section 6.5.2 by NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs if the AC-4 NGA codec is used together with a legacy codec.

| codec | | | | | Signalling in incoming stream | | | | | | IRD, Signalling to be used during the selection of NGA audio stream based on language and codec. | |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | | | | | Supplementary audio descriptor (SAD) | | | | | | |
| MPEG -1 L.II | HE-AAC | AC-3 | E-AC-3 | AC-4 | PMT stream type | mix type, edit class | ISO639 lang | **[1]** AAC/ AC-3/ E-AC-3/ AC-4 descriptor | **[2]** ISO639 descript or (lang, type) | **[3]** Audio Pre-selection descriptor | Language (IRDs that do <u>not</u> support the audio_ preselection _descriptor) | Language (IRDs that do support the audio_ preselection _descriptor) |
| X | X | | | X | X | | | X | | | AC-4 | AC-4 |
| X | X | | | X | X | | | X | X | | [2] | [2] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | | | X | | | AC-4 | AC-4 |
| | X | X | X | X | X | | | X | X | | [2] | [2] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | | X | X | | [2] | [2] |
| X | X | | | X | X | X | | X | X | | [2] | [2] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | | SAD (lang) | SAD (lang) |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | | | SAD (lang) | SAD (lang) |
| X | X | | | X | X | | | X | | X | AC-4 | [3] |
| X | X | | | X | X | | | X | X | X | [2] | [3] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | | | X | | X | AC-4 | [3] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | | | X | X | X | [2] | [3] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | | X | X | X | [2] | [3] |
| X | X | | | X | X | X | | X | X | X | [2] | [3] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | SAD | [3] |
| | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | X | | X | SAD | [3] |

X (codec): applicable case for these audio codecs,
X (signalling); signalling/descriptor included in incoming MPEG-2 TS for the audio stream
SAD (lang): Supplementary Audio Descriptor, use language property only
AC-4: If no language information is available, the AC-4 codec shall be prioritized over legacy codecs.

*Example table. Examples of signalling alternatives the IRD needs to consider for prioritisation schema selection of NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRDs.*

# Annex J: Flowchart describing Audio Prioritisation for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD

## 1 Introduction

Find below a flowchart that describes the PID selection as detailed in section 6.5.2 Audio Prioritisation for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD.

PID Selection for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD:

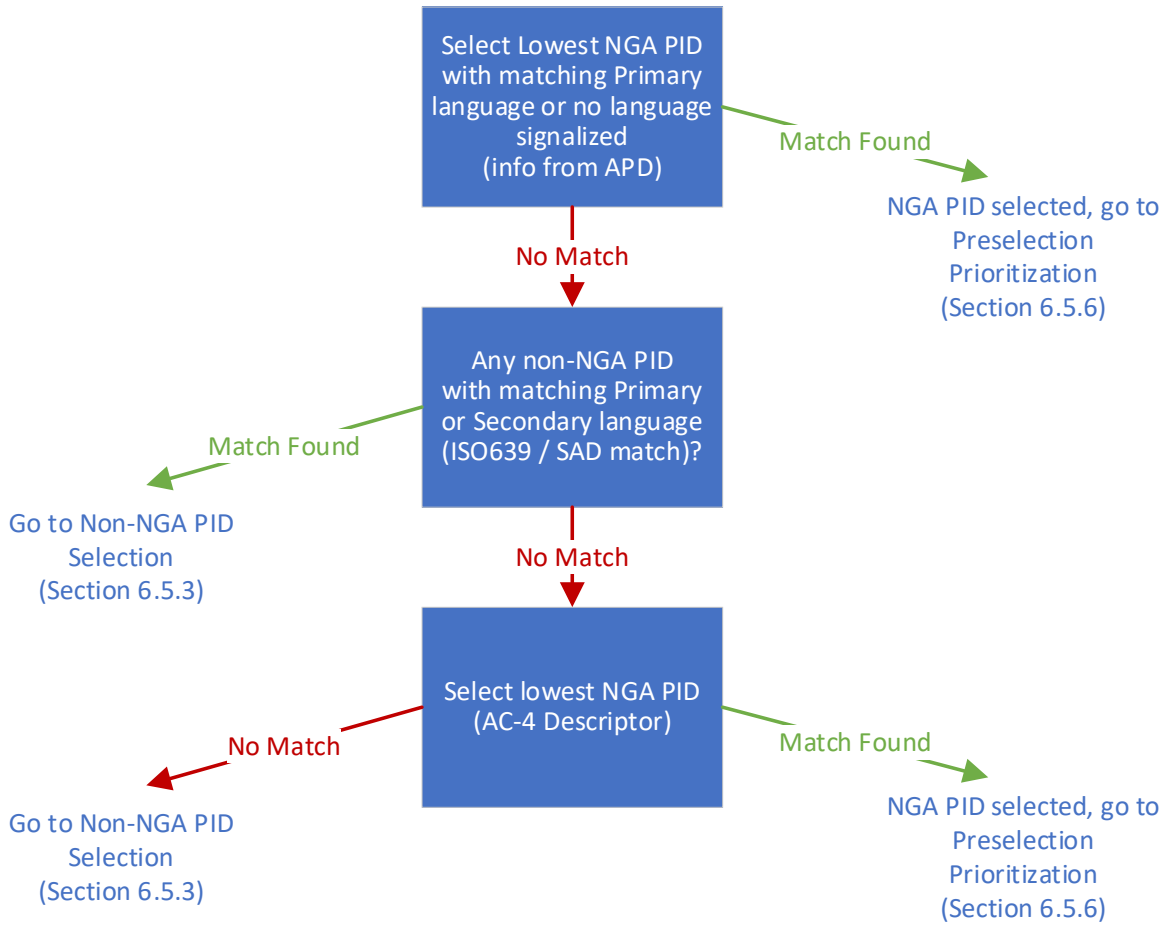



*Figure 1: PID Selection for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD*

# Annex K: Comparison of NorDig profiles

## 1 Introduction

This annex gives a comparison between the NorDig specification profiles; Basic IRD, HEVC IRD, HbbTV IRD and PVR.

The following list indicates the requirement status (mandatory, optional or descriptive) of the various specification sections for the NorDig specification profiles.
No mandatory requirements are defined in this Annex. The table refers to specification sections within which the mandatory requirements are defined.

## 2 Legend

The profiles are referred to as **ND-B** (NorDig Basic IRD)**, ND-HEVC** (NorDig HEVC IRD), **ND-HbbTV** (NorDig HbbTV IRD) and **ND-PVR (**NorDig PVR).

----: no mandatory requirement included in this part/section (may refer to a heading, while requirement is specified in text below).

**M:** Mandatory requirement for all NorDig profiles (identical text).
**M-B, M-HEVC, M-H, M-PVR:**
Mandatory requirements as specified for NorDig Basic IRD, NorDig HEVC IRD, NorDig HbbTV IRD and
NorDig PVR (requirement/text differs between profiles).

**O**: Optional or recommended, not mandatory.

Note that:

- O, M, etc only refer to the specification paragraph. The actual requirements can only be found by looking up the actual text in the relevant paragraph of the specification.
- M marked for a full chapter/section with subparagraphs indicates that the section function is mandatory and that all corresponding requirements are identical, unless subparagraphs are shown with deviations.
- Differences between STBs and iDTV-sets are stated in the comment column.

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 1 | Introduction | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.1 | Scope | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.2 | Document History | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.3 | Terminology | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.4 | Definitions | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.5 | References | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 1.6 | List of Abbreviations | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2 | General Features of the NorDig IRD | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.1 | Introduction | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2 | IRD Hardware and Firmware | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.1 | Overview | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.2 | RF Interface and Tuner/Demodulator | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.3 | Rfin-Rfout Bypass (option) | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.4 | Two-way Interface | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 2.2.5 | Demultiplexer | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.6 | Video/Audio Decoding | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.7 | Graphics processor | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.8 | IRD Controller Unit and Bootloader | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.9 | Common Interface and Plug-in CA Module | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.10 | Smart Card Interface(s) and Smart Card Reader(s) | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.11 | Remote Control | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| ~~2.2.12~~ | ~~Scart Interfaces~~ | ~~---~~ | ~~---~~ | | | ~~---~~ | ~~---~~ | ~~---~~ | ~~---~~ | |
| 2.2.13 | Audio Output Interfaces (option) | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.14 | Main hardware/firmware functions-Overview per configuration | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.2.15 | Additional hardware/firmware for the PVR features | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3 | System Software and API | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3.1 | Introduction | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3.2 | Principal Software Architecture | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3.3 | System Software | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3.4 | NorDig APIs | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.3.5 | PVR related software | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.4 | General Product Requirement | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 2.4.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 2.4.2 | Energy Efficiency | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 2.4.3 | Requirements that are optional for a time period (grace period) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| | **PART A: Hardware and Firmware** | | | | | | | | | |
| 3 | The Front-end of the NorDig IRD | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.1 | Common Features | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.1.1 | General Features | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.1.2 | Common Scanning Procedures | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.1.3 | Quality Reception Detector | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2 | Satellite Tuner and Demodulator | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.2.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.2 | RF/IF Characteristics | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.3 | Input Frequency Range/Tuning Range | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.4 | Demodulation and Error Correction | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.5 | Control Signals | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.6 | Tuning/ Scanning Procedures | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.7 | Satellite Tuner Interface and Signal Levels | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.2.8 | Performance | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3 | Cable Tuner and Demodulator | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.3.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3.2 | RF Characteristics | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3.3 | Bypass RFin to RF out | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3.4 | Tuning/Scanning Procedure | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3.5 | Performance Data | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.3.6 | Spurious Emission | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4 | Terrestrial Tuner and Demodulator | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.4.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.2 | Frequencies and Signal Bandwidths | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.3 | Modes | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.4 | Reception quality/Tuning/Scanning Procedures | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.5 | Changes In Modulation Parameters | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.6 | RF Input Connector | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 3.4.7 | RF Output Connector (option) | O | O | | | O | O | O | O | |
| 3.4.8 | Time Interleaving | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.9 | Input/Output Data Formats | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.4.10 | Performance | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.5 | IP-based Front-End | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 3.5.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.5.2 | Network Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.5.3 | Protocol Suite | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.5.4 | Dynamic Address Allocation | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 3.5.5 | Service Selection | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 4 | MPEG-2 Demultiplexer | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 4.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 4.2 | DVB Descrambler Performance | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 4.3 | System Clock Recovery | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5 | Video | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 5.1 | General requirements | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.1.1 | Reference Model for Video Decoder | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.2 | Supported resolutions and frame rates | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.3 | Up-sampling/Up-converting | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.4 | Colorimetry | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.5 | Dynamic changes in the video stream | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.6 | AVC still picture | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.7 | Minimum video bandwidth | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.8 | Frame Cropping | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.9 | Overscan | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.9.1 | Safe area for overscan | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.10 | High Definition Video Output and Display | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.11 | Down-conversion of High Definition Video for Standard Definition output | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.12 | Display Format for other Aspect Ratios | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 5.13 | Rescaling for HbbTV application | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 6 | AUDIO | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.1 | General | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.1.1 | Audio User Preference Settings | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.1.2 | Audio terminology | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.2 | Audio Decoding | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.2.1 | MPEG-1 Layer II: Requirements on Audio Handling | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.2.2 | E-AC-3 and AC-3: Requirements on Audio Handling | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.2.3 | HE-AAC: Requirements on Audio Handling | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.2.4 | AC-4: Requirements on Audio Handling | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.3 | multichannel Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.3.1 | Immersive Audio | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.4 | Stereo Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5 | Audio Prioritisation | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.1 | General | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.2 | Audio Prioritisation for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.5.3 | Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation for non-NGA streams | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.3.1 | Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation, Type (Normal or supplementary) | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.3.2 | Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation, Languages | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 6.5.3.3 | Audio PID/Stream Prioritisation, Format (multichannel or stereo) | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.4 | Signalling to be used for audio property | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.5 | Examples of priority | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.5.6 | Audio Prioritisation inside the NGA Audio PID/stream | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.6 | Audio Output Formats | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.7 | Audio Video Synchronisation | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.7.1 | Adjustment of Audio/Video delay | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | Optional for IDTV´s. |
| 6.8 | Audio Output Signals | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.8.1 | Analogue Audio Output (~~SCART~~, RCA) | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | |
| 6.8.2 | Digital Audio Output (HDMI, HDMI ARC and S/PDIF) | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.9 | Dynamic Changes | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.10 | Dialogue Enhancement | O | O | M | M | O | O | O | O | |
| 6.11 | Supplementary Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.1 | Informative for Supplementary Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.2 | General requirements for supplementary audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.3 | IRD settings for Supplementary Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.4 | Selection of audio streams | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.5 | Signalling for Supplementary Audio | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.6 | Receiver mixing | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.11.7 | Receiver mixed on its own on for headphones output | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | |
| 6.11.8 | Broadcast mixed | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.12 | IRD Internal Reference Level | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.13 | Loudness Levels, - Dynamic Range Control and Downmixing | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.13.1 | HE-AAC Audio Input and AC-3/E-AC-3 Audio Input | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.13.2 | MPEG-1 Layer II Audio Input | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.13.3 | Audio Output Levels | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 6.14 | NGA Accessibility Services | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.14.1 | IRD Settings for NGA Accessibility Services | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.14.2 | Display of available NGA Accessibility Services | --- | --- | O | O | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.14.3 | NGA Accessibility signalling | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 6.14.4 | NGA Preselection with Audio Description over headphones output | --- | --- | O | O | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 7 | TELETEXT AND SUBTITLING | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 7.1 | General | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 7.1.1 | Subtitling user preferences | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 7.1.2 | Only display subtitling if match language in user preferences | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.1.3 | Temporary changes to subtitling settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.1.4 | Subtitling mode (Normal and Hard of hearing subtitling) | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 7.1.5 | Simultaneous EBU and DVB subtitling | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.1.6 | Simultaneous EBU Teletext and HbbTV Digital Teletext | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.1.7 | Simultaneous Subtitling and HbbTV | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.2 | EBU Teletext | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.2.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 7.2.2 | Additional requirements for Analogue video Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.3 | DVB Subtitling | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.3.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 7.3.2 | Subtitling subset | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8 | Interfaces and Signal Levels | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 8.1 | Introduction | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 8.2 | RF- bypass (option) | O | O | | | O | O | O | O | |
| 8.3 | Two-way Interface | O | O | | | O | O | O | O | |
| ~~8.4~~ | ~~SCART Interfaces (Option)~~ | ~~O~~ | ~~O~~ | | | ~~O~~ | ~~O~~ | ~~O~~ | ~~O~~ | |
| 8.5 | Audio Output Interfaces (Option) | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| ~~8.5.1~~ | ~~VCR SCART connector for analogue audio~~ | ~~M~~ | ~~—~~ | | | ~~M~~ | ~~—~~ | ~~M~~ | ~~—~~ | |
| 8.5.2 | RCA connector for analogue audio | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | |
| 8.5.3 | S/PDIF connector for digital audio | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | |
| 8.5.4 | Headphone connector for analogue audio | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | O | |
| 8.6 | HDMI Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.6.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.6.2 | Video Output and Display | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.6.3 | Audio Output | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.6.4 | Signal protection | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.6.5 | Additional analogue interfaces for NorDig IRD signals (option) | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.7 | Remote Control Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.7.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 8.7.2 | Functions | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9 | Interfaces for Conditional Access | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 9.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.2 | Use of the Common Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.2.1 | General | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 9.2.2 | Minimum requirements for the Common Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.2.3 | Minimum requirements for the NorDig CA-Module | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.3 | Use of Smart Card Reader | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 9.3.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.3.2 | The Smart Card Interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.3.3 | ECM and EMM Filtering | M | - | | | M | - | M | - | |
| 9.3.4 | Descrambling of selected services | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 9.3.5 | Application Level Interface for Conditional Access. | --- | --- | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10 | THE SYSTEM SOFTWARE UPDATE | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 10.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.1.1 | User control of SSU | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.1.2 | SSU procedure | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.1.3 | User notification for SSU | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.1.4 | Security requirements for SSU | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.1.5 | Previous user settings and installation after SSU | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 10.1.6 | Rejection and Reminder for SSU | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.2 | Download via broadcast channels | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.2.1 | SSU alternatives and functionality | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.2.2 | IRDs with access to multiple SSU services | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.3 | Download via local interface or IP-based interface | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 10.4 | Network Management and Provisioning | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.5 | The System Download Mechanism via broadcast channels | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.5.1 | SSU Signalling | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.5.2 | Update Notification Table (UNT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.5.3 | Data carriage | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 10.6 | CIP-CAM software updates | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 11 | Performance | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 11.1 | Introduction | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 11.2 | Video Performance of RGB ~~and PAL~~ Signals | O | O | | | O | O | O | O | |
| 11.3 | Audio Performance of the Decoded Digital Signal | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 11.4 | Zapping Time for TV Services | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| **Part B: The system software with application** | | | | | | | | | | |
| 12 | Service Information | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 12.1 | General | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 12.1.1 | General Requirements | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.2 | PSI/SI classification | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.3 | Private data specifier value | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.4 | Service Types | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.5 | Service Categories | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.6 | Used PSI/SI descriptors | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.7 | Character sets in text strings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.1.8 | Country and Language Codes within PSI/SI | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2 | Network Information Table (NIT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.1 | The Network information Table Descriptors | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.2 | Metadata Pointer Descriptor (NorDig PVR only, Broadcast Record Lists) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.2.3 | Cable Delivery System Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.4 | Terrestrial Delivery System Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.5 | T2 Delivery System Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.6 | Linkage Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.7 | Frequency List Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.2.8 | Default authority descriptor (in NIT) (NorDig PVR only) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.2.9 | NorDig private; Logic_Channel_descriptor (LCD) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3 | Service Description Table (SDT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.1 | The Service Descriptor Table Descriptors | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.2 | Service Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.3 | CA Identifier Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.4 | Linkage Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.5 | Default authority descriptor (in SDT) (NorDig PVR only) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.3.6 | Component Descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4 | Event Information Table | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.2 | The Event Information Table Descriptors | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.3 | CA Identifier Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.4 | Content Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.5 | Content Identifier Descriptor (NorDig PVR only) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 12.4.6 | CRID encoding and reuse (NorDig PVR only) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.4.7 | Event Information Table Schedule | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.5 | Time and Date Table and Time Offset Table | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.5.1 | Time Offset Table Desriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6 | Conditional Access and Program Map Tables | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.1 | Conditional Access Table Descriptors | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.2 | Program Map Table Descriptors | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.3 | Component priority multiple video or audio streams | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.4 | ISO 639 language descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.5 | AC-3 descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.6 | Enhanced AC-3 descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.7 | AAC descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.8 | Supplementary_audio_descriptor | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.9 | Metadata descriptor (NorDig PVR only, Broadcast Record Lists) | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.6.10 | Content_Protection_descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.6.11 | Related Content Descriptor (NorDig PVR only) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.6.12 | Audio Preselction Descriptor (NGA Services only) | --- | --- | O | O | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 12.6.13 | AC-4 Descriptor | --- | --- | M | M | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 12.7 | SSU UNT Descriptors | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 12.7.1 | Descriptor Overview | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.2 | Scheduling descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.3 | Update_descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.4 | SSU_location descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.5 | SSU_subgroup_assosiation_table | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.6 | private_data_specifier_descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.7 | target_smartcard_descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.8 | target_serial_number_descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.7.9 | Message descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.8 | Related Content Table (NorDig PVR only) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.8.1 | Related Content Table Desriptors | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.8.2 | Description of RCT | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.8.3 | Short Event Descriptor (when used in RCT) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.8.4 | Image Icon Descriptor | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 12.9 | NorDig Broadcast Record List syntax (NorDig PVR only | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.1 | Introduction (informative) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.2 | General | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.3 | NorDig Broadcast Record List Metadata Carousel Discovery | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.4 | Content Grouping | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.5 | List Hierarchies | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.6 | Default Record List Group | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.7 | Embargoed Content | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.8 | Content Expiry | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.9 | Scheduled event | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 12.9.10 | Off Schedule Event | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.11 | BRL CRID Lifecycle Management | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.12 | Content Versioning | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.13 | Version Changes (informative) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.14 | Fragmentation of Record List Metadata | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.15 | Carriage of XML Fragments | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.16 | Carriage of Containers | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 12.9.17 | NorDig BRL's TV-Anytime XML profile | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 13 | Navigator | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 13.1 | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.2 | Service List | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.2.1 | Service List Requirements | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.2.2 | Service list functions for the Network Information Table (NIT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.2.3 | Service List functions for the Service Description Table (SDT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.2.4 | Network Evolution and Service Changes | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.3 | Event Schedule Guide (ESG) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.3.1 | ESG Requirements | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.3.2 | Event Information Table (EIT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.3.3 | Time and Date Table (TDT) and Time Offset Table (TOT) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.4 | Service Discovery and Selection for IRDs with IP-based front-end | M-IP | M-IP | | | M-IP | M-IP | M-IP | M-IP | |
| 13.5 | User Interface ~~Information~~ (UI) about service components (audio and subtitling) | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.5.1 | UI for Audio information | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.5.2 | UI for Subtitling information | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.6 | Accessibility menus and settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.6.1 | Accessibility settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 13.6.2 | Talking menus (optional) | O | O | | | O | O | O | O | |
| 14 | NorDig PVR feature requirements (NorDig PVR only) | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 14.1 | Introduction- PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2 | General- PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.1 | Recording File System | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.2 | Recording capacity | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.3 | Deletion of recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.4 | Failed and incomplete recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.5 | Save only the last number of episodes | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.6 | File system intact after update | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.7 | Limitations in local storage, interfaces, extraction and removable media for recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.8 | Disk management / de-fragmentation | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 14.2.9 | Safe margins | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.2.10 | NorDig Record Lists functionality | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3 | PVR Recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.1 | General PVR recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.2 | ESG/EPG recording programming | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.3 | Series recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.4 | Split recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.5 | Recommended events | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.6 | Alternative instance | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.7 | Accurate Recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.8 | Simultaneous recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.9 | Complete recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.10 | Trailer booking/Promotional Linking (optional) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.11 | Back-to-back recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.12 | Timeshift recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.13 | Late Recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.14 | Manual recording | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.15 | One touch recording (OTR) | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.16 | Automatic conflict handling | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.17 | Maximum length of recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.18 | Recording of recently removed recordings | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.19 | Recording of parallel broadcast and simulcast | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.3.20 | NorDig Record Lists recording functionality | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4 | Playback | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.1 | General | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.2 | Replay/Playback - trick modes | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.3 | Relative Synchronisation | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.4 | Simultaneous recording and playback | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.5 | Complete service playback | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.6 | Resume Playback | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 14.4.7 | NorDig Record Lists management and playback functionality | M-PVR | M-PVR | | | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | M-PVR | |
| 15 | IRD System Software and API | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 15.1 | NorDig Basic IRD | M | M | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 15.2 | NorDig HbbTV IRD | M-HbbTV | M-HbbTV | M-HbbTV | M | M | M | O | O | |

| Chapter/Section | | ND-Basic IRD | | ND-HEVC | | ND-HbbTV | | ND- PVR | | Comment |
|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|---|
| | | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | STB | IDTV | |
| 16 | User preferences | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| 16.1. | General | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.2 | User Preference Settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.2.1 | General User Preference Settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.2.2 | Video User Preference Settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.2.3 | Audio User Preference Settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.2.4 | Subtitling User Preference Settings | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.3 | Deletion of service lists | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| 16.4 | Reset to factory mode | M | M | | | M | M | M | M | |
| | Annex A: NorDig members and acknowledgement | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex B: Background and options for IRDs with a terrestrial front-end | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | 1 Terminology and Definitions for Single Frequency Networks Performance Parameters | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | 2 List of DVB-T/T2 centre frequencies | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | 3 Hierarchical mode reception | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex C: Bootloading and Service Lists in IP-based and other networks | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex D: Implementations Guidelines for best service selection in automatic channel search in terrestrial networks | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex E: Raw carrier to noise values, (C/N) RAW | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex F: Recommendations for menu wordings and translations | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex G: Guidelines for NorDig audio selection | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex H: Loudness levels, - typical IDTV audio block diagram | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex I: Examples of signalling to be used for audio property | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |
| | Annex J: Flowchart describing Audio Prioritisation for NGA capable NorDig HEVC IRD | | | | | | | | | |
| | Annex K: Comparison of NorDig profiles | --- | --- | | | --- | --- | --- | --- | |